

OPERATION MANUAL

SK380SRLc

APPLICABLE No.

SK380SRLc

LR01000101~



READ, UNDERSTAND AND FOLLOW ALL SAFETY PRECAUTIONS AND INSTRUCTIONS FOUND IN THIS MANUAL BEFORE OPERATING THE MACHINE.

Book Code No. **S2LR00003ZE03**

2022.02
Destination : ANZ

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

PREFACE	0-3
STORE OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUALS ON THE MACHINE	0-4
SAFETY INFORMATION IN MESSAGES OR LABELS IN THIS MANUAL AND ON THE MACHINE	0-5
SAFETY LABELS	0-6
SUMMARY OF THE MACHINE	0-7
QUALIFICATION FOR OPERATING THE MACHINE	0-9
CAB WITH ROPS (ROLL-OVER PROTECTIVE STRUCTURE)/ FALLING OBJECTS PROTECTIVE STRUCTURE	0-10
ORDERING PARTS AND SERVICE	0-11
WARRANTY	0-12
IMPORTANT NOTIFICATION	0-13

1. SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

1.1 SAFETY LABELS & DECALS	1-3
1.1.1 ALWAYS MAKE SURE ALL OF THE SAFETY LABELS ARE LEGIBLE AND NOT DAMAGED	1-3
1.1.2 "DO NOT OPERATE" TAG	1-3
1.1.3 LOCATION OF SAFETY LABELS & DECALS	1-4
1.1.4 SAFETY LABELS	1-7
1.2 PRE-START SAFETY	1-13
1.2.1 OPERATION RULES	1-13
1.2.2 PROTECTION TOOLS	1-14
1.2.3 ABNORMAL AND EMERGENCY CONDITION	1-15
1.2.4 POTENTIAL HAZARDS WHEN OPERATING	1-16
1.2.5 FIRE PREVENTION	1-19
1.2.6 GETTING ON AND OFF THE MACHINE	1-20
1.2.7 PRE-START UP INSPECTION ON THE MACHINE	1-21
1.3 SECURE VISIBILITY	1-23
1.3.1 BE AWARE OF YOUR SURROUNDINGS	1-23
1.4 PRECAUTIONS FOR OPERATION	1-24
1.4.1 STARTING	1-24
1.4.2 TRAVELING	1-28
1.4.3 PROHIBITED OPERATIONS	1-30
1.4.4 SAFETY CHECK ON THE PARKING MACHINE	1-35
1.5 AT THE END OF EACH SHIFT	1-37
1.6 PRECAUTIONS OF INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE	1-38
1.6.1 PERIODIC INSPECTIONS	1-38
1.6.2 BEFORE INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE	1-39
1.6.3 DURING INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE	1-40
1.6.4 CAUTION WHEN WELDING	1-44
1.6.5 AFTER COMPLETION OF MAINTENANCE	1-45
1.7 PRECAUTIONS FOR BATTERY	1-46
1.7.1 HANDLING THE BATTERY	1-46
1.8 HANDLING OF THE ACCUMULATOR OR GAS SPRING	1-47

2. MACHINE FAMILIARIZATION

[CONTENTS]

2.1	BASIC COMPONENTS OF THE MACHINE	2-3
2.2	OPERATOR'S STATION NOMENCLATURE	2-5
2.3	GAUGE CLUSTER.....	2-7
2.3.1	MULTI-DISPLAY	2-8
2.3.2	ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE METER	2-8
2.3.3	FUEL LEVEL METER.....	2-8
2.3.4	SOOT DEPOSITION METER.....	2-9
2.3.5	DEF/ADBLUE LEVEL GAUGE	2-9
2.3.6	HOUR METER.....	2-10
2.3.7	SCREEN CHANGE SWITCH	2-10
2.3.8	BUZZER STOP SWITCH.....	2-11
2.3.9	WORK MODE SELECT SWITCH	2-14
2.3.10	WASHER SWITCH.....	2-15
2.3.11	WIPER SWITCH	2-15
2.3.12	TRAVEL SPEED SELECT SWITCH	2-16
2.3.13	AUTO ACCELERATION SWITCH	2-17
2.3.14	ATTACHMENT MODE SELECT SWITCH	2-18
2.3.15	MENU SWITCH	2-19
2.3.16	USER MENU SETTING	2-20
2.3.17	DISPLAY FOR MAINTENANCE	2-31
2.3.18	WARNING DISPLAY SCREEN.....	2-32
2.3.19	CLOGGING DETECTOR OF HYDRAULIC OIL FILTER	2-36
2.4	HANDLING OF SWITCHES AND METERS	2-37
2.4.1	STARTER SWITCH.....	2-37
2.4.2	ENGINE THROTTLE.....	2-37
2.4.3	WORKING LIGHT (BOOM AND DECK).....	2-38
2.4.4	WORKING LIGHT SWITCH (CAB LIGHT)	2-38
2.4.5	DPF MANUAL REGENERATION SWITCH	2-38
2.4.6	HEAVY LIFT SWITCH	2-39
2.4.7	PRESSURE RELEASE SWITCH	2-39
2.4.8	CAP (OPTION SWITCH)	2-40
2.4.9	HORN SWITCH	2-40
2.4.10	POWER BOOST SWITCH	2-40
2.4.11	ENGINE THROTTLE FOR REDUNDANT MODE.....	2-41
2.4.12	SWING PARKING BRAKE RELEASE SWITCH.....	2-42
2.4.13	KPSS RELEASE SWITCH	2-42
2.4.14	ENGINE STOP SWITCH	2-43
2.4.15	12 V POWER SUPPLY	2-43
2.4.16	USB PORT/EXTERNAL INPUT TERMINAL (AUX)	2-44
2.4.17	Level Gauge	2-44
2.5	HANDLING OF LEVERS AND PEDALS.....	2-45
2.5.1	LOCATION OF LEVERS AND PEDALS	2-45
2.5.2	CONTROL LOCK LEVER	2-46
2.5.3	OPERATOR CONTROL LEVERS	2-47
2.5.4	TRAVEL LEVER & PEDAL.....	2-48
2.6	HANDLING OF FUSE & RELAY BOX	2-49
2.6.1	ABOUT FUSE & RELAY BOX	2-49

2.6.2	REPLACING FUSES	2-49
2.6.3	FUSE CAPACITY AND CIRCUIT NAME	2-50
2.7	HANDLING OF FUSIBLE LINK (FOR STARTER)	2-51
2.7.1	FUSIBLE LINK INSPECTION/REPLACEMENT	2-51
2.8	CONTROLLER	2-52
2.9	HANDLING OF RADIO TUNER.....	2-53
2.9.1	NAME OF EACH PART	2-53
2.9.2	ON-AIR (NORMAL CONDITION)	2-54
2.9.3	SWITCHING SOURCE	2-55
2.9.4	FM/AM	2-56
2.9.5	BLUETOOTH AUDIO FUNCTION, AND EXTERNAL INPUT TERMINAL	2-61
2.9.6	PAIRING (REGISTRATION OF DEVICES).....	2-62
2.9.7	TELEPHONE FUNCTION.....	2-64
2.9.8	FILE PLAYING FUNCTION.....	2-66
2.9.9	VOLUME CONTROL.....	2-67
2.9.10	SOUND ADJUSTMENT	2-68
2.9.11	CLOCK ADJUSTMENT.....	2-72
2.10	AIR CONDITIONER.....	2-73
2.10.1	GRILLE (AIR OUTLET).....	2-73
2.10.2	AIR CONDITIONER CONTROL PANEL.....	2-74
2.10.3	AIR CONDITIONER OPERATION PANEL.....	2-75
2.10.4	HOW TO USE AIR CONDITIONER	2-78
2.10.5	SELF-DIAGNOSIS FUNCTION IN DISPLAY MONITOR.....	2-80
2.10.6	HANDLING AT IN-SEASON/OFF-SEASON	2-81
2.11	HANDLING OF SEAT BELT.....	2-82
2.11.1	HOW TO FASTEN SEAT BELT	2-82
2.11.2	HOW TO UNFASTEN SEAT BELT	2-82
2.12	HANDLING OF OPERATOR'S SEAT	2-83
2.12.1	HEIGHT AND TILT ADJUSTMENT	2-83
2.12.2	RECLINING ADJUSTMENT	2-83
2.12.3	FRONT/REAR SEAT ADJUSTMENT	2-83
2.12.4	ARM REST ADJUSTMENT	2-84
2.12.5	HEAD REST ADJUSTMENT	2-84
2.12.6	SUSPENSION ADJUSTMENT	2-84
2.13	HANDLING PARTS INSIDE CAB.....	2-85
2.13.1	CAB DOOR LOCK.....	2-85
2.13.2	OPENING DOOR FROM INSIDE OF CAB	2-85
2.13.3	OPENING/CLOSING FRONT WINDOW (UPPER).....	2-86
2.13.4	RETRACTING FRONT WINDOW (LOWER)	2-87
2.13.5	CAB ROOM LAMP	2-87
2.14	EMERGENCY ESCAPE FROM OPERATOR'S STATION	2-88
2.15	OTHER ACCESSORIES.....	2-89
2.15.1	TOOL BOX	2-89
2.15.2	GREASE GUN HOLDER	2-89
2.15.3	CUP HOLDER	2-89
2.15.4	GUARD/SIDE DOOR (WITH LOCK)	2-90
2.16	BATTERY POWER-OFF SWITCH.....	2-92

[CONTENTS]

3. MACHINE OPERATION

3.1	DAILY MAINTENANCE CHECKS	3-3
3.1.1	LOCK LEVER	3-3
3.2	CHECK BEFORE STARTING ENGINE	3-5
3.2.1	CHECKING COOLANT LEVEL AND REFILLING	3-5
3.2.2	CHECKING ENGINE OIL LEVEL OF ENGINE OIL PAN AND REFILLING	3-6
3.2.3	CHECKING FUEL LEVEL AND REFUELING	3-7
3.2.4	DRAINING FUEL PRE-FILTER	3-8
3.2.5	CHECKING OIL LEVEL OF HYDRAULIC OIL TANK	3-9
3.2.6	CHECKING FAN BELT AND AIR CONDITIONING COMPRESSOR BELT	3-11
3.2.7	CHECKING DEF/ADBLUE LEVEL AND REFILLING	3-12
3.2.8	ADJUSTMENT OF OPERATOR'S SEAT	3-13
3.2.9	ADJUSTMENT OF MIRRORS	3-14
3.2.10	CHECKING MULTI-DISPLAY	3-18
3.2.11	CHECKING WORKING LIGHT	3-18
3.2.12	CHECKING OF AIR CLEANER INLET	3-18
3.3	STARTING ENGINE	3-19
3.3.1	START-UP UNDER NORMAL TEMPERATURE CONDITIONS	3-19
3.3.2	START UP IN COLD CONDITIONS	3-20
3.3.3	USING JUMPER CABLES	3-21
3.4	STOPPING MACHINE ENGINE	3-23
3.5	CHECK AFTER STARTING ENGINE	3-24
3.5.1	PILOT CONTROL SHUT-OFF LEVER	3-24
3.5.2	CHECKING ENGINE AND MULTI-DISPLAY OPERATION	3-25
3.6	WARMING-UP	3-26
3.6.1	ENGINE WARMING-UP	3-26
3.6.2	WARMING-UP HYDRAULIC OIL	3-27
3.7	AUTO IDLING STOP FUNCTION	3-28
3.7.1	RESTART AFTER AUTO IDLE STOP	3-28
3.8	SELECTION OF WORK MODE	3-29
3.9	SWITCHING ATTACHMENT MODE	3-30
3.10	MACHINE OPERATION	3-31
3.10.1	PRECAUTIONS OF MACHINE OPERATION	3-31
3.10.2	TRAVEL PROCEDURES	3-32
3.10.3	CHANGING TRAVEL SPEED (1ST AND 2ND)	3-34
3.10.4	MACHINE OPERATION IN WATER OR ON SOFT GROUND	3-35
3.10.5	GETTING OUT OF SOFT GROUND	3-36
3.10.6	SWING AND ATTACHMENT/EQUIPMENT OPERATIONS	3-37
3.11	MACHINE OPERATION	3-39
3.12	WORK PROCEDURES OF MACHINE	3-40
3.12.1	DIGGING WORK	3-40
3.12.2	LOADING WORK	3-40
3.13	ALWAYS PARK MACHINE PROPERLY	3-41
3.13.1	PARKING MACHINE ON SLOPE	3-41
3.14	INSPECTION AND CHECK AFTER OPERATION	3-43
3.15	MACHINE OPERATION IN ADVERSE CONDITIONS	3-44
3.15.1	OPERATION IN COLD CONDITION	3-44

3.15.2	OPERATION AT SEASHORE.....	3-45
3.15.3	OPERATION IN SANDY AND DUSTY AREAS.....	3-45
3.16	PRECAUTIONS FOR LONG-TERM STORAGE	3-46
3.16.1	WASHING MACHINE	3-46
3.16.2	REFILLING OIL/GREASING	3-46
3.16.3	BATTERY	3-46
3.16.4	COOLANT	3-46
3.16.5	PREVENTION OF DUST AND MOISTURE	3-47
3.16.6	PERIODICAL LUBRICATING OPERATION (DURING STORAGE)	3-48
3.16.7	TREATMENT AFTER LONG-TERM STORAGE.....	3-48

4. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE

4.1	GENERAL	4-3
4.2	INSPECTING AND MAINTAINING MACHINE	4-4
4.2.1	PERIODIC INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE.....	4-4
4.2.2	PRECAUTIONS OF INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE	4-4
4.2.3	LOCK LEVER	4-5
4.3	DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF)	4-6
4.3.1	ABOUT DPF	4-6
4.3.2	ABOUT AUTOMATIC REGENERATION	4-7
4.3.3	ABOUT MANUAL REGENERATION.....	4-8
4.3.4	SOOT DEPOSITION METER AND WARNING DISPLAY	4-10
4.3.5	INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE.....	4-10
4.3.6	PRECAUTIONS OF USING DPF.....	4-11
4.4	SCR SYSTEM AND DEF/ADBLUE	4-12
4.4.1	SCR.....	4-12
4.4.2	DEF/AdBlue.....	4-12
4.4.3	DEF/AdBlue CIRCUIT AND BATTERY.....	4-12
4.4.4	STORING DEF/ADBLUE	4-12
4.4.5	PURCHASING DEF/ADBLUE	4-12
4.4.6	LOW DEF/ADBLUE LEVEL	4-13
4.4.7	QUALITY PROBLEMS OF DEF/ADBLUE	4-13
4.4.8	DRAINING DEF/ADBLUE	4-14
4.4.9	FAILURE OF EXHAUST GAS CLEANING DEVICE	4-15
4.4.10	EMERGENCY EVACUATION MODE.....	4-16
4.4.11	SCR INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE	4-16
4.5	LUBRICANT, FUEL & COOLANT SPECIFICATIONS	4-17
4.6	ABOUT USE OF BIO-OIL (BIODEGRADABLE HYDRAULIC OIL).....	4-19
4.6.1	GREASE AND OIL FOR USE	4-19
4.6.2	PRECAUTIONS FOR BIO-OIL	4-19
4.6.3	REPLACEMENT INTERVAL OF BIO-OIL.....	4-19
4.6.4	FLUSHING PROCEDURES OF BIO-OIL	4-19
4.7	MAINTENANCE PARTS	4-20
4.8	TIGHTENING TORQUES FOR BOLTS & NUTS (SPECIFIC POSITIONS)	4-21
4.9	TIGHTENING TORQUES FOR BOLTS & NUTS.....	4-23
4.10	TIGHTENING TORQUES FOR JOINTS & HYDRAULIC HOSES	4-25

[CONTENTS]

4.11	INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE CHART	4-27
4.12	MAINTENANCE WHEN REQUIRED	4-32
4.12.1	CLEANING RADIATOR, OIL COOLER CORE AND SCREEN	4-32
4.12.2	CHECKING AND REPLACING WIPER BLADES	4-33
4.12.3	WASHER FLUID INSPECTION	4-34
4.12.4	BLEEDING AIR FROM FUEL PIPING	4-34
4.12.5	RELEASING INTERNAL PRESSURE IN HYDRAULIC SYSTEM	4-35
4.12.6	GREASING ATTACHMENT/EQUIPMENT	4-36
4.12.7	GREASING ATTACHMENT/EQUIPMENT (2 POSITION BOOM)	4-37
4.13	8 HOUR (DAILY) INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES	4-38
4.13.1	GREASING ATTACHMENT	4-38
4.14	50 HOUR INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES	4-40
4.14.1	INSPECTING AND MAINTAINING BATTERY	4-40
4.14.2	DRAINING WATER AND SEDIMENT IN FUEL TANK	4-43
4.14.3	ADJUSTING CRAWLER TENSION	4-44
4.15	100 HOUR INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES	4-46
4.15.1	CHECKING OIL LEVEL OF SWING REDUCTION UNIT	4-46
4.15.2	CHECKING OIL LEVEL OF TRAVEL REDUCTION UNIT	4-47
4.15.3	CHECKING INTAKE SYSTEM RUBBER HOSE	4-48
4.16	250 HOUR (3-MONTH) INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES	4-50
4.16.1	ADJUSTING FAN BELT AND AIR CONDITIONING COMPRESSOR BELT	4-50
4.16.2	CHECKING RADIATOR HOSES	4-54
4.16.3	CLEANING OR REPLACING AIR CONDITIONER FILTERS	4-56
4.16.4	INSPECTING, CLEANING, OR REPLACING AIR CLEANER ELEMENT	4-58
4.16.5	CLEANING OR REPLACING CAP	4-60
4.16.6	INSPECTING SCR SYSTEM	4-61
4.17	500 HOUR (6-MONTH) INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES	4-62
4.17.1	REPLACING ENGINE OIL AND ENGINE OIL FILTER	4-62
4.17.2	REPLACING FUEL PRE-FILTER	4-64
4.17.3	REPLACING FUEL FILTER	4-66
4.17.4	GREASING SWING BEARING	4-67
4.17.5	CHECKING SWING BEARING MOUNTING BOLT FOR LOOSENESS	4-68
4.17.6	CLEANING FUEL TANK CAP AND STRAINER	4-68
4.17.7	LUBRICATING PUSH ROD OF CONTROL LEVER	4-69
4.17.8	CHECKING AIR CONDITIONER REFRIGERANT	4-70
4.18	1000 HOUR (12-MONTH) INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES	4-72
4.18.1	REPLACING RETURN FILTER	4-72
4.18.2	REPLACING AIR BREATHER ELEMENT	4-74
4.18.3	CHECKING ENGINE MOUNTING BRACKET FOR TIGHTENING CONDITION	4-75
4.18.4	CHECKING BATTERY VOLTAGE	4-76
4.19	2000 HOUR INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES	4-77
4.19.1	REPLACING COOLANT	4-77
4.19.2	REPLACING OIL IN SWING REDUCTION UNIT	4-79
4.19.3	REPLACING OIL IN TRAVEL REDUCTION UNITS	4-80
4.19.4	CLEANING SUCTION STRAINER	4-81
4.19.5	GREASING SWING REDUCTION UNIT	4-82
4.19.6	CHECKING GREASE IN SWING GREASE BATH	4-83

4.19.7	CLEANING PILOT LINE FILTER	4-84
4.19.8	REPLACEMENT OF AIR SEPARATOR FILTER (FUEL FILTER) ELEMENT	4-85
4.20	5000 HOUR INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES	4-87
4.20.1	REPLACING HYDRAULIC OIL.....	4-87
4.20.2	REPLACING DEF/AdBlue SUPPLY MODULE FILTER.....	4-90
5.	TRANSPORTATION	
5.1	TRANSPORTATION.....	5-3
5.1.1	STRICTLY OBSERVE TRANSPORTATION RELATED LAWS AND REGULATIONS.....	5-3
5.2	LOADING/UNLOADING THE MACHINE.....	5-4
5.2.1	LOADING	5-5
5.2.2	FIXING THE MACHINE	5-7
5.2.3	UNLOADING	5-8
5.3	MACHINE LIFTING	5-9
5.3.1	LIFTING PROCEDURES.....	5-10
5.4	INSTALLING AND REMOVING MIRROR.....	5-11
5.5	TOWING THE MACHINE.....	5-12
5.5.1	TOWING METHOD OF THE MACHINE	5-12
6.	SPECIFICATION	
6.1	GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS.....	6-3
6.1.1	SK380SRLC	6-3
6.2	SHOE TYPES AND USES	6-5
6.2.1	SK380SRLC	6-5
6.3	WORKING RANGES.....	6-6
6.3.1	BACKHOE ATTACHMENT.....	6-6
6.4	ATTACHMENT TYPE AND COMBINATION	6-8
6.4.1	FRONT VARIATION	6-8
7.	MACHINE OPERATION MANAGEMENT SYSTEM	
7.1	MACHINE OPERATION MANAGEMENT SYSTEM	7-3
7.2	REMOTE DOWNLOAD SYSTEM.....	7-4
8.	OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT	
8.1	OPERATION OF HYDRAULIC NIBBLER (CRUSHER) AND BREAKER.....	8-3
8.1.1	SELECTION OF NIBBLER (CRUSHER) AND BREAKER	8-3
8.1.2	INSTALLATION OF NIBBLER (CRUSHER) OR BREAKER	8-3
8.1.3	POTENTIAL HAZARDS WHEN OPERATING	8-3
8.1.4	PRECAUTIONS IN USE OF BREAKER.....	8-5
8.1.5	PRECAUTIONS IN USE OF NIBBLER (CRUSHER).....	8-10
8.2	SELECTION OF ATTACHMENT MODE AND SELECTOR VALVE	8-15
8.2.1	SELECTION OF ATTACHMENT MODE.....	8-15
8.2.2	SWITCHING SELECTOR VALVE	8-17
8.3	SWITCHING STOP VALVE	8-18
8.4	FLOW RATE ADJUSTMENT.....	8-19

[CONTENTS]

8.5	CONTROL OF PROPORTIONAL HAND CONTROL ROTATION, NIBBLER (CRUSHER), BREAKER	8-20
8.5.1	ROTATION HAND CONTROL	8-21
8.5.2	HORN SWITCH	8-21
8.5.3	NIBBLER (CRUSHER) OPERATION	8-21
8.5.4	BREAKER OPERATION	8-22
8.5.5	POWER BOOST SWITCH	8-22
8.6	CONTROL OF PROPORTIONAL HAND CONTROL NIBBLER (CRUSHER), BREAKER	8-23
8.6.1	HORN SWITCH	8-24
8.6.2	NIBBLER (CRUSHER) OPERATION	8-24
8.6.3	BREAKER OPERATION	8-25
8.6.4	POWER BOOST SWITCH	8-25
8.7	PERIODIC INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE OF NIBBLER (CRUSHER) AND BREAKER	8-26
8.7.1	PERIODIC INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE CHART OF NIBBLER (CRUSHER) AND BREAKER	8-26
8.7.2	REINFORCEMENT OF ATTACHMENT	8-26
8.8	PRECAUTIONS FROM BREAKER MANUFACTURERS	8-27
8.9	MULTI-CONTROL VALVE	8-28
8.10	QUICK HITCH	8-30
8.10.1	PROHIBITED WORKS	8-30
8.10.2	PRECAUTIONS FOR USE	8-31
8.10.3	REMOVING FRONT ATTACHMENT	8-32
8.10.4	INSTALLING FRONT ATTACHMENT	8-33
8.10.5	MANUAL SWITCHING OF PRESSURE REDUCING VALVE FOR QUICK HITCH	8-34
8.11	DUAL MONITOR	8-35
8.11.1	NAME OF EACH PART	8-35
8.11.2	MENU SCREEN	8-35
8.11.3	MAIN MENU	8-36
8.11.4	PICTURE ADJUSTMENT (PICTURE)	8-36
8.11.5	SETTING OF CAMERA RELATED ITEMS (CAMERA)	8-37
8.11.6	SWITCHING OF DIMMER (LIGHT ADJUSTMENT) (DIMMER)	8-38

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

PREFACE

- Read, understand and follow the safety messages and instructions in this manual and the safety messages on the machine. If these safety messages are not followed, serious injury or death could occur.
- Always be aware of your surroundings when operating this machine and understand the capabilities of this machine and the attachment/equipment.
- Always use caution to safely operate this machine.



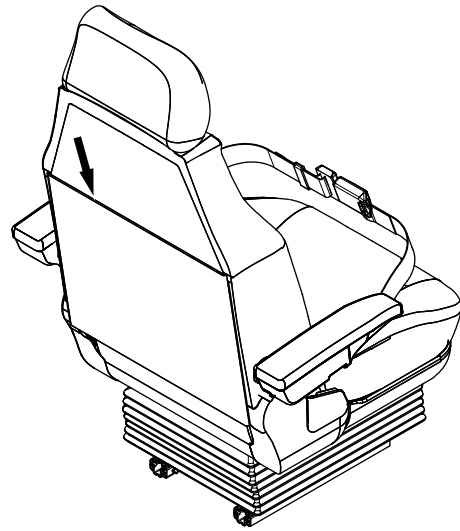
Use of this machine and this manual

- Improper operation, inspection, maintenance or repair of this machine may cause serious injury, death or damage to the machine.
- If a license or other special qualification is required to operate a hydraulic excavator in the country where this machine will be operated, all operators of this machine must meet those requirements and have a valid (not expired) license or qualification.
- Do not operate this machine for the first time or perform any inspection, maintenance or repair on this machine, until you have carefully read and understand the operation, inspection, maintenance, and repair information in this manual.
 - Operation related activities include setting up, rectifying malfunctions and the disposal of materials.
 - Maintenance related activities include lubrication, maintenance, inspection and repair work.
 - Transportation related activities include loading and unloading the machine.
- For machines equipped with KOBELCO approved attachments, read the section related to the specialized attachments in this manual and any additional manuals for the specialized attachment. Use of the unapproved attachment/equipment voids KOBELCO's liability for the machine.
- Do not remove this manual from this machine.
- If this manual is lost, damaged or unreadable, order a replacement from your KOBELCO authorized dealer.
- This manual is a part of this machine and should be transferred with the machine to new users or owners.
- Always use genuine KOBELCO parts. Do not use aftermarket or non-KOBELCO parts on your machine.
- Manufacturers cannot anticipate every possible scenario and potential hazard that may arise during operation, inspection and maintenance activities. Therefore, the warnings in this manual and on the product may not communicate all of the possible safety precautions for your situation. When performing any operation, inspection, maintenance and repair activities that are not contained in this manual, proceed at your own risk and do not perform any unsafe acts. You should also ensure the machine will not be damaged or create an unsafe condition by your actions. Always follow the safety procedures in this manual and for your worksite. Never perform any task or operation prohibited by this manual.
- If a tool, procedure, work method or operating technique not specifically recommended by KOBELCO is used, you must evaluate that it is safe for yourself and others to proceed. You should also ensure the machine will not be damaged or create an unsafe condition by the operation, maintenance and/or repair procedures you choose. Never perform any task or operation prohibited by this manual.
- The information, specification, and illustrations in this manual are based on information available at the time it was written. KOBELCO is committed to continuous improvement of the safety systems and features of its products, and may change the specifications, torques, pressures, measurements, adjustments, illustrations, and other content at anytime without any obligation to notify the users/owners of these changes. Your KOBELCO authorized dealer will have the most current information available.
- Should there be questions, errors, omissions or other issues that need to be communicated to the manufacturer, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.
- KOBELCO provides machines produced in accordance with regulations and standards of a country in which the machine is sold to the first owner. If you have a machine purchased in a foreign country or from a person or company in another country, your machine may lack safety devices or machine components or not meet a safety standard required in your country. Please contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer to ask whether your machine's specifications meet the regulations and the standards in your country.

The copyright of this manual belongs to KOBELCO CONSTRUCTION MACHINERY CO., LTD. Copy, reproduction, distribution, and delivery (including these actions on the Internet) of all or part of this manual are prohibited without permission of KOBELCO CONSTRUCTION MACHINERY CO., LTD.

STORE OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUALS ON THE MACHINE

Always store all manuals for this machine and any attachments, including this manual and the related manuals, in the pocket located at the rear side of the operator's seat. Check the manuals are in this location as a part of your pre-start inspection. If the manuals are not present during your pre-start inspection, inform your supervisor and order replacement manuals from your KOBELCO authorized dealer.



SAFETY INFORMATION IN MESSAGES OR LABELS IN THIS MANUAL AND ON THE MACHINE

“Many accidents are the result of not following basic safety precautions and could have been avoided by recognizing potentially hazardous situations.”

Proper risk assessment can prevent many accidents from occurring. During operation, always pay attention to the potential hazards near the machine and at your worksite.

- Improper operation, inspection, maintenance and repair could cause serious injury, death or property damage. Before operating, inspecting and maintaining this machine, carefully read and understand this manual, the related manuals, and any attachment manuals that may be provided to you.
- Only allow trained and experienced personnel to operate, to inspect and to maintain this machine. These individuals must also comply with all applicable employment, industry, and governmental rules, standards, and regulations.



This safety alert symbol identifies important safety messages in this manual. When you see this symbol, be alert, your safety is involved, carefully read the message that follows, and inform other operators.

Many safety messages in this manual or on the labels on this machine contain signal words. Signal words are used to identify safety messages and property damage messages and designate a level of hazard seriousness. Many of these safety messages may also contain avoidance information to hazardous events.

The three signal words are DANGER, WARNING and CAUTION. Each alerts the viewer to the existence and relative seriousness of a hazard. They are reserved for personal injury hazards.

Safety signs identified by DANGER shall be used sparingly and only for those situations presenting the most serious hazards. Hazards identified by WARNING present a lesser degree of risk of injury or death than those identified by DANGER.



DANGER indicates a hazard with a high level of risk which, if not avoided, will result in death or serious injury.



WARNING indicates a hazard with a medium level of risk which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

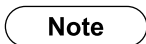


CAUTION indicates a hazard with a low level of risk which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury.

Other than the above-mentioned signal words, the following words identify important information which must be kept for the protection of the machine and may be helpful for the operator.



Notice indicates information considered important, but not hazard related .
(e.g., messages related to property damage)



Note indicates information that may be helpful for the operator.

SAFETY LABELS

Safety labels are affixed to machine to alert the operator and surrounding personnel of hazardous situations during operation, inspection or maintenance.

There are two types of "safety labels" on this machine. One is "SAFETY LABEL INCLUDING SIGNAL WORDS" and the other is "PICTORIAL ONLY SAFETY LABELS".

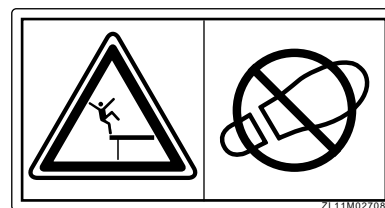
Example of the safety label including signal words



Example of a pictorial only safety label

The pictorial only safety label is used to alert the operator and surrounding personnel of potentially hazardous situations.

For pictorial only safety label, the hazard pictorial is in the upper or left box, and the avoidance information is in the lower or right box.



SUMMARY OF THE MACHINE

APPLICABLE WORKS

Use this machine in the following applications:

- Digging
- Trenching
- Loading
- Leveling
- Demolishing
- Breaker work

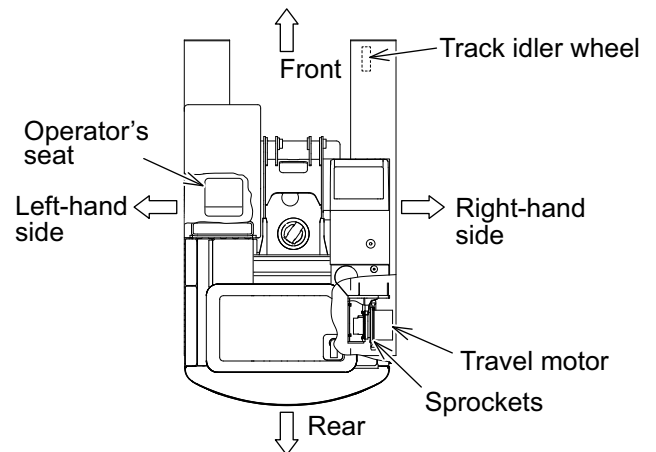
Never use the machine for any purpose other than the above applications.

If you use the attachment which KOBELCO did not supply, read, understand and follow the safety messages and instructions in the applicable manual described by the attachment manufacturer.

For details of work procedures, please refer to "MACHINE OPERATION" in Chapter 3 and "OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT" in Chapter 8.

FRONT, REAR, RIGHT & LEFT OF THE MACHINE

This manual refers to the front, rear, right & left of this machine as seen when sitting in the operator's seat with the machine in the normal travel position. The normal travel position is when the idler wheels are positioned at the front under the cab and the drive sprockets are positioned at the rear.



OPERATING CONDITION

This machine is intended to be operated in the ambient temperature of -20 degrees C to 40 degrees C (-4 degrees F to 104 degrees F) with the well-maintained condition.

Outside this temperature range, sufficient machine performance may not be obtained.

BREAK-IN OPERATION

Prior to shipment, this machine was inspected and adjusted by KOBELCO. Future performance and service life of this machine depends on how the machine is operated during the break-in period.

Hour Meter	Load Status
Less than 10 hours	About 60%
Less than 100 hours	About 80%
100 hours and more	Full load

During the break-in period

- Always sufficiently warm-up the engine and the hydraulic oil.
- Do not operate with loads that exceed the recommended load status for each phase shown in the table or operate at high speeds.
- Do not perform a sudden start, sudden acceleration, or other sudden changes in engine speed.
- Avoid unnecessary sudden stops or sudden changes in driving direction.
- Do not operate the engine at high speed for extended periods of time.

QUALIFICATION FOR OPERATING THE MACHINE

If a license or other special qualification is required to operate a hydraulic excavator in the country where this machine will be operated, all operators of this machine must meet those requirements and have a valid (not expired) license or qualification.

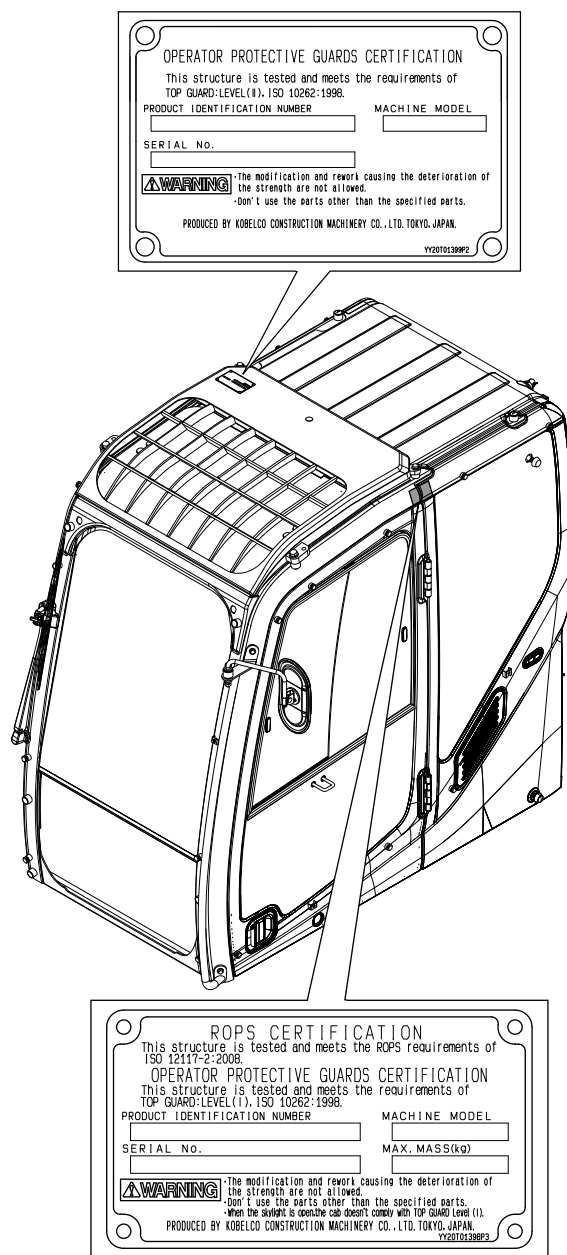
Instruct that only skilled trained operators may operate the machine. The operator shall:

- Receive training in the proper operation of this machine;
- Understand the capabilities and limitations of this machine;
- Become familiar with the construction of this machine and the hazards involved based on training and experience;
- Confirm that the machine is properly maintained and is in good condition;

Read and properly understand the warnings, instructions, and operating procedures in this manual.

CAB WITH ROPS (ROLL-OVER PROTECTIVE STRUCTURE)/ FALLING OBJECTS PROTECTIVE STRUCTURE

- The machine cab is equipped with ROPS (roll-over protective structure) and top guard. The ROPS and top guard, fitting supports, and fastening elements on the machine are integral parts of the structure.
- When the machine is used at the work site where falling objects may hit the cab, always have the top guard installed and inspect them on a periodic basis to ensure the top guard have not been damaged. The impact from objects striking the top of the cab could result in a potential crush hazard and result in serious injury or death.
- Any damage to the protective structures or the cab caused by collision, corrosion or fire are required to be inspected carefully by appropriate personnel. All damaged parts must be replaced with genuine KOBELCO parts to ensure the protective structures will be restored to their original specifications. Before making any changes to the cab, replacing the whole structure, or replacing the ROPS or top guard, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.
- To prevent serious injury or death, do not attempt to weld, to drill, to straighten or to repair the protective structures. Never attach any devices to lift the cab on the protective structure. Any type of modification may affect the structural integrity of the protective system and result in a complete loss of protective capability. Consult your KOBELCO authorized dealer to determine this structure's limitations without voiding its certification. Failures to contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer may void your warranty.
- Pay attention to the operating mass. If the operating mass exceeds MAX. MASS (maximum operating mass) described on ROPS CERTIFICATION with the special attachment or others installed, it will cause insufficient function, resulting in serious injury or death, should the machine tips/rolls over.

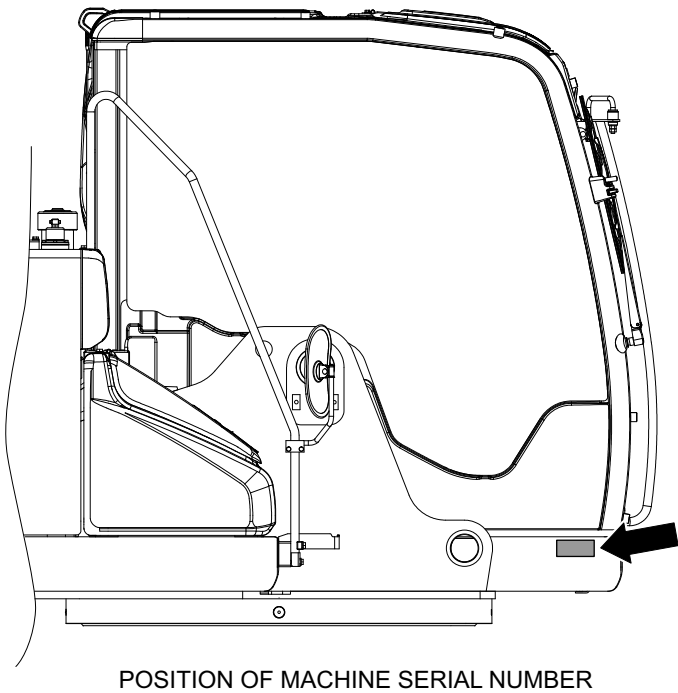
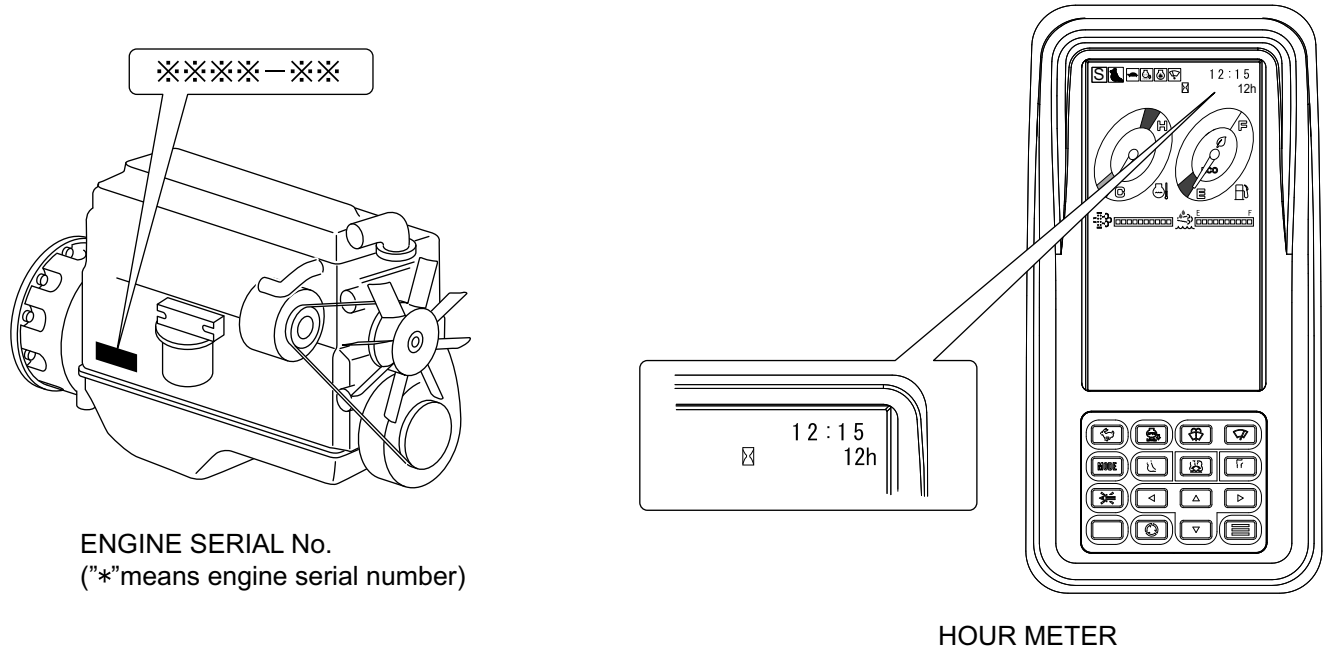


ORDERING PARTS AND SERVICE

When ordering parts and service, have the machine serial number, the engine serial number and the current hours of operation available for your KOBELCO authorized dealer.

The machine serial number and the engine serial number are stamped in the locations shown below. For future reference, confirm and record these numbers in the spaces below.

MACHINE TYPE	MACHINE SERIAL No.	ENGINE SERIAL No.	HOUR METER



POSITION OF MACHINE SERIAL NUMBER

WARRANTY

This machine is warranted as per the standard warranty. In case of any failures are proved to be KOBELCO's responsibility, KOBELCO will repair or replace any parts or components for free of charge to the extent specified in the standard warranty. KOBELCO shall not be liable for any improper operation, maintenance, modification, and alteration etc., other than described in this manual.

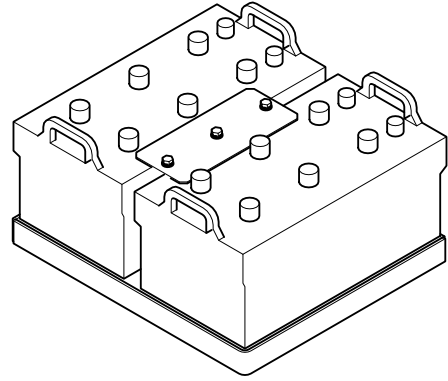
IMPORTANT NOTIFICATION

To show additional detail of parts and components or show motion of this machine, some illustrations may show the machine with safety related parts and components, including guards, doors, covers and shields, either removed or not in place. To prevent serious injury, death, or property damage, all of the safety related parts and components must be properly installed and secured, before starting this machine.

In addition, some illustrations may show features or functions that differ from your machine. questions, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.

Example

This illustration shows the battery with the cover removed.



1. SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

1.1 SAFETY LABELS & DECALS



READ THE OPERATOR'S MANUAL

Read, understand and follow the safety messages and instructions in this manual. If these safety messages are not followed, serious injury or death could occur.

SAFETY MESSAGES

Several labels for specific safety messages are attached to this machine. The exact location and description of the hazards are reviewed in this section.

Please read and understand all safety messages in this manual and on the machine.

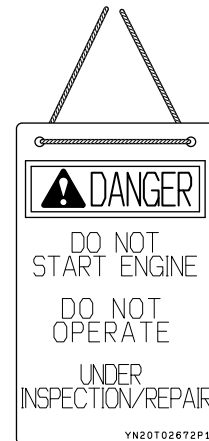
1.1.1 ALWAYS MAKE SURE ALL OF THE SAFETY LABELS ARE LEGIBLE AND NOT DAMAGED

- Clean the safety labels or replace the safety labels if you can not read the words or see the illustrations. To clean the safety labels, only use a cloth, water and soap. Do not use any solvent, gasoline or other harsh chemicals to clean the safety labels. Solvents, gasoline or harsh chemicals could loosen the adhesive that secures the safety labels and allow the label to fall off the machine.
- Always replace any safety label that is damaged or missing. If a safety label is attached to a part that is replaced, you will need to install a safety label on the replacement part. Your KOBELCO authorized dealer can provide new safety labels.
- Never remove any safety labels attached to this machine. For all other labels on the machine, clean and replace as needed in accordance with the instructions above.

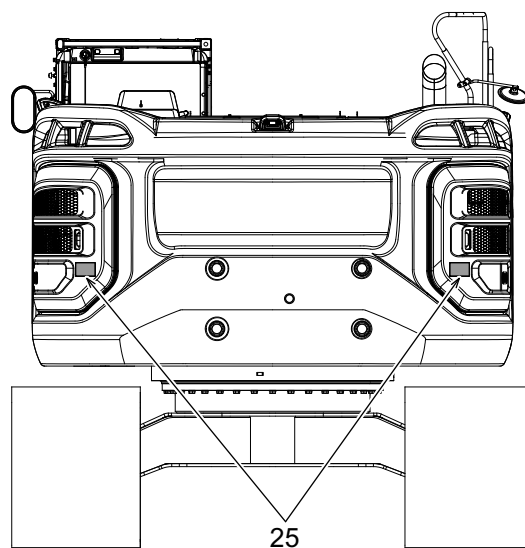
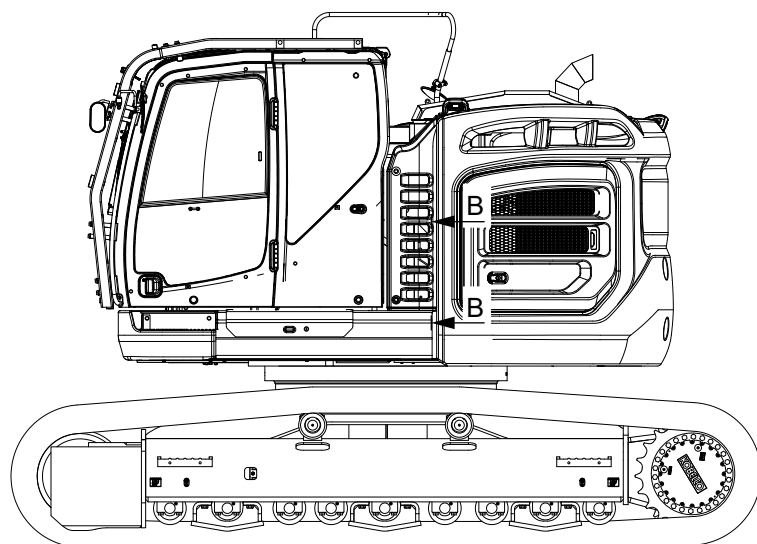
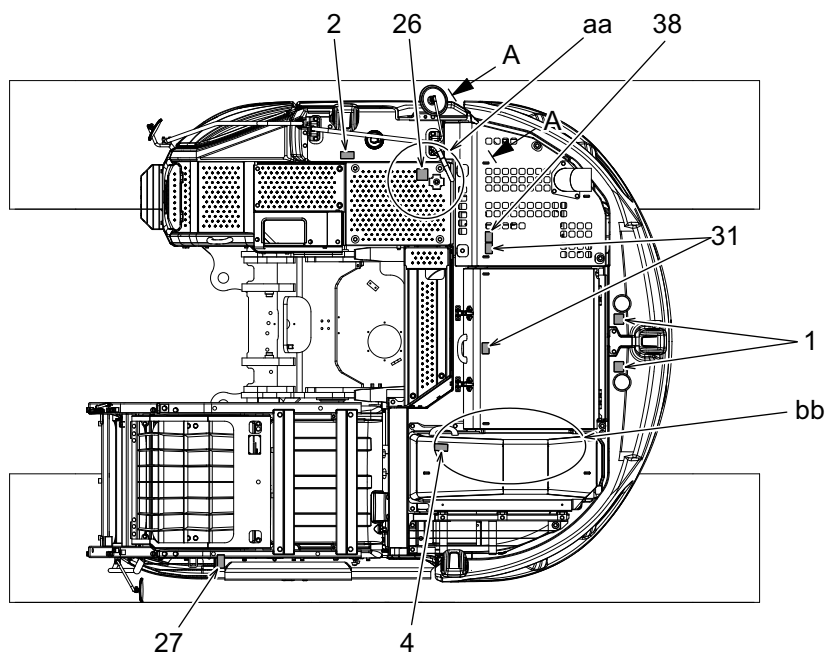
1.1.2 "DO NOT OPERATE" TAG

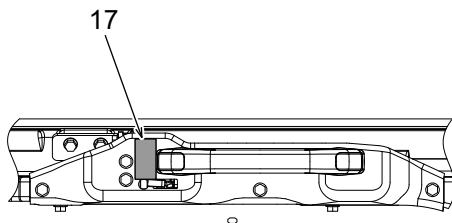
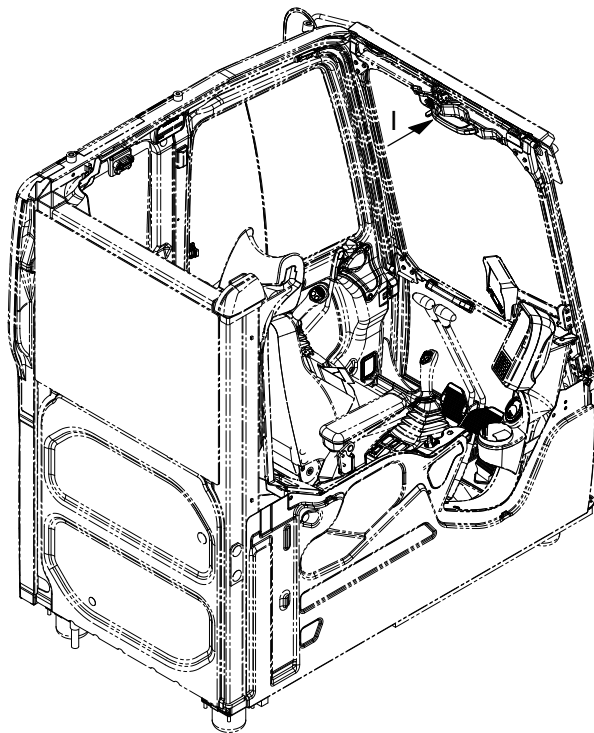
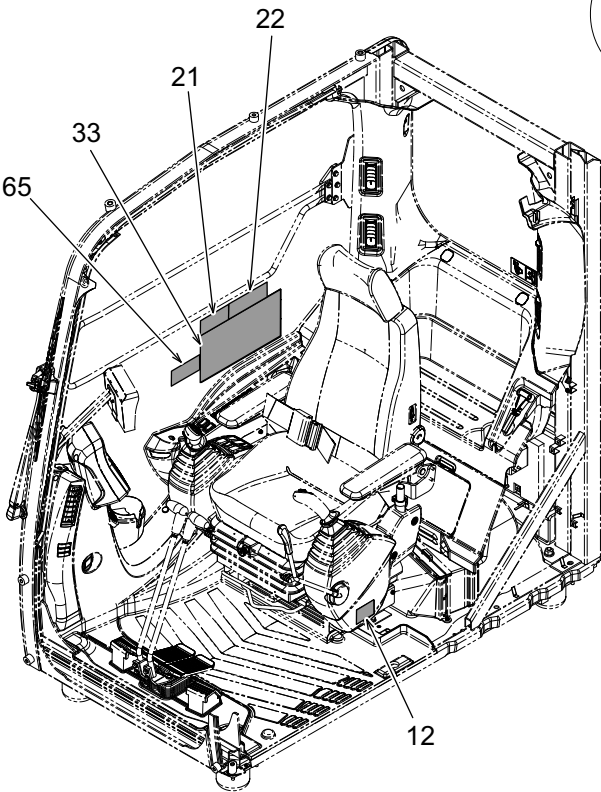
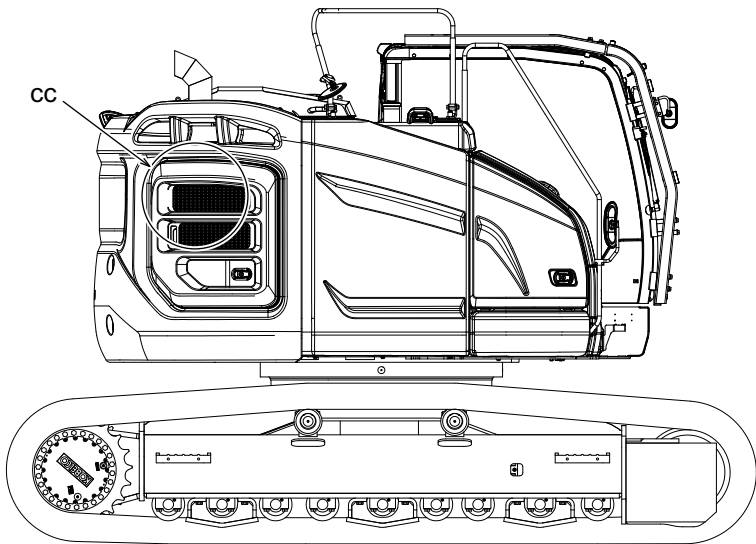
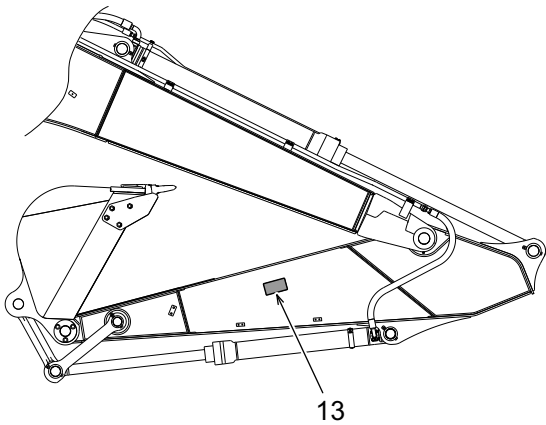
Part Number: YN20T02672P1

Use a temporary hang tag to communicate that the machine is out of service. You may need to use more than one temporary hang tag depending on the inspection and maintenance activities to be performed.



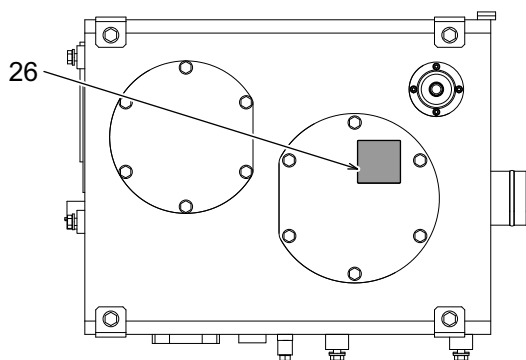
1.1.3 LOCATION OF SAFETY LABELS & DECALS



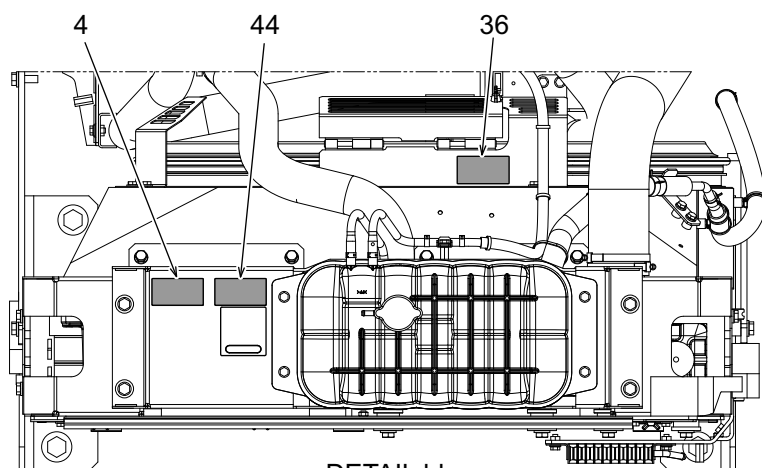


VIEW I

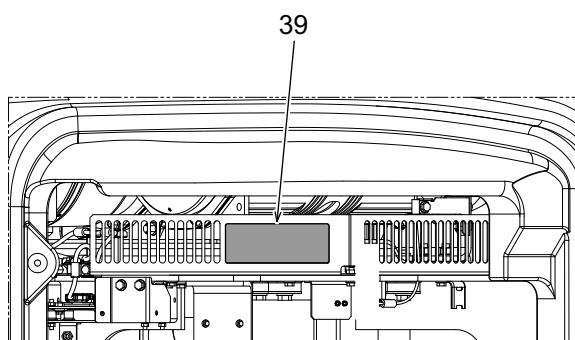
[1. SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS]



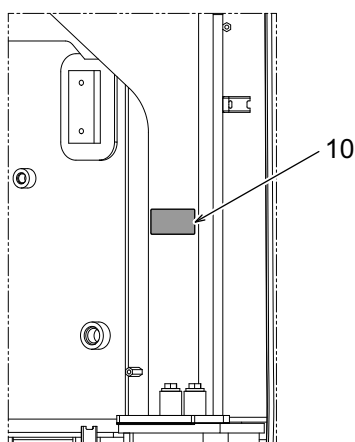
DETAIL aa
SHOW INSIDE OF PANEL



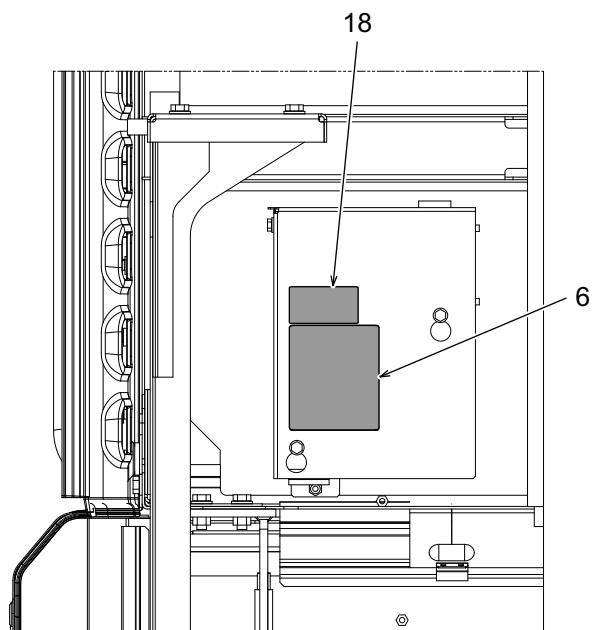
DETAIL bb
SHOW INSIDE OF PANEL



DETAIL cc
SHOW INSIDE OF PANEL



SECTION AA



SECTION BB

1.1.4 SAFETY LABELS

DO NOT USE COUNTERWEIGHT LIFTING EYES

Location:1

Part Number:YN20T02741P1



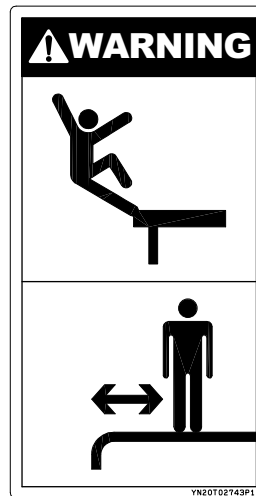
WORKING ABOVE GROUND

Location:2

Part Number:YN20T02743P1

There is a danger of falling when working on areas above ground.

- Do not approach edges.
- Use the appropriate equipment, such as ladders or platform when working above ground. In addition, strap yourself to the proper equipment accordingly.
- Avoid spillage of any oil or grease.
- Clean all slippery substances such as grease, oil, hydraulic oil, mud, ice, and others attached to the steps, handrails, crawlers, ladders, and platforms.
- Do not leave any tools around the working area.
- Use extreme caution to avoid slipping while walking.
- Do not jump on or from the machine. Use the steps and handrails and securely maintain a three point contact while mounting or dismounting at all times.



WORKING ABOVE GROUND

Location:4

Part Number:YN20T02745P1

There is a danger of falling when working on areas above ground.

- Do not approach edges.
- Use the appropriate equipment, such as ladders or platform when working above ground. In addition, strap yourself to the proper equipment accordingly.
- Avoid spillage of any oil or grease.
- Clean all slippery substances such as grease, oil, hydraulic oil, mud, ice, and others attached to the steps, handrails, crawlers, ladders, and platforms.
- Do not leave any tools around the working area.
- Use extreme caution to avoid slipping while walking.
- Do not jump on or from the machine. Use the steps and handrails and securely maintain a three point contact while mounting or dismounting at all times.



[1. SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS]

HANDLING BATTERY

Location:6

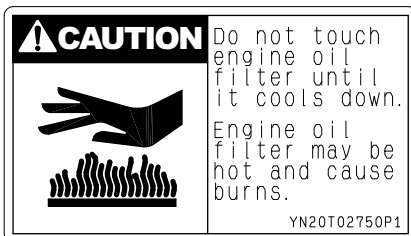
Part Number:YN20T02746P1



HOT PARTS

Location:10

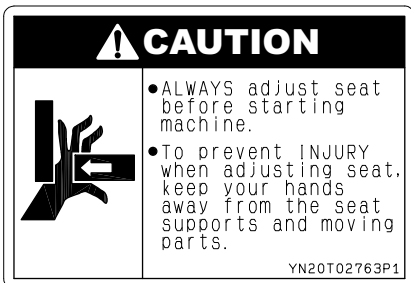
Part Number:YN20T02750P1



DO NOT INSERT HAND IN THE MOVING PART

Location:12

Part Number:YN20T02763P1



KEEP CLEAR WORKING AREA

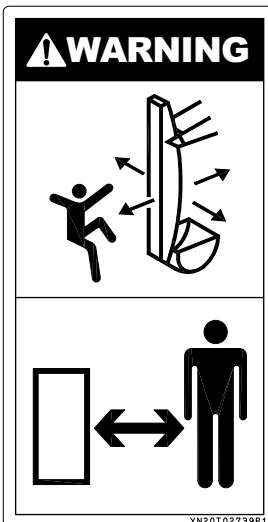
Location:13

Part Number:YN20T02739P1

Make sure the area is clear of obstacles and persons before beginning the operation of the machine.

Always look around before you start the swing operation.

Make sure everyone is cleared in your worksite. Sound horn before beginning swing operation.

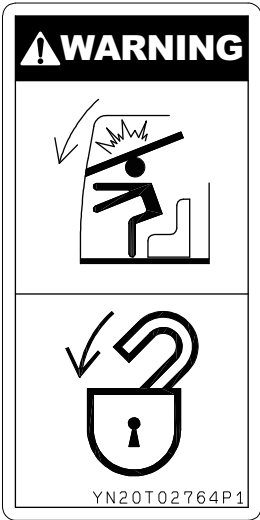


LOCK THE FRONT WINDOW AT THE OPENING POSITION

Location:17

Part Number:YN20T02764P1

Lock the front window at the opening position securely, or it may slip down and may personal injury.



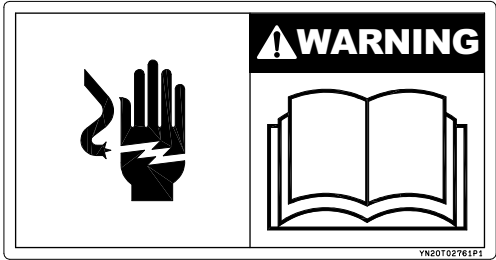
BATTERY CABLE

Location:18

Part Number:YN20T02761P1

Electric hazard may cause injury when mishandling the cable.

Read operator manual for safe and proper handling.



HANDLING THE QUICK HITCH

Location:21

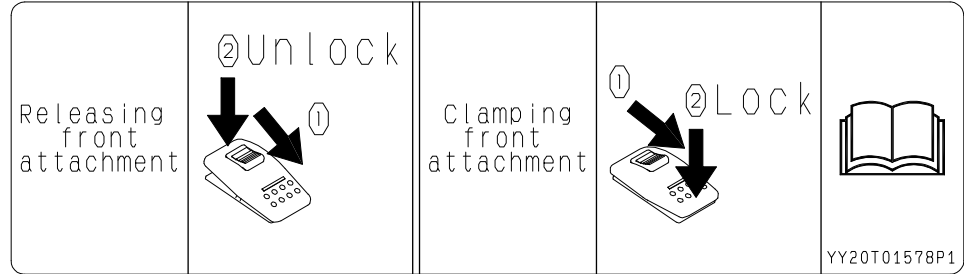
Part Number:YY20T01577P1



PRECAUTIONS OF HANDLING QUICK HITCH

Location:22

Part Number:YY20T01578P1



[1. SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS]

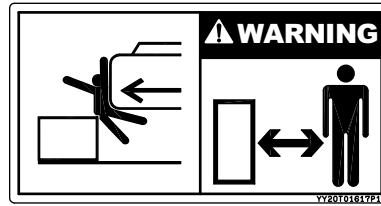
SWING

Location:25

Part Number:YY20T01617P1

Do not enter in the swing area.

Stay away from the machine during operation to prevent you from contacting with or being crushed between machine components.



PRESSURIZED HOT OIL

Location:26

Part Number:YN20T02802P1

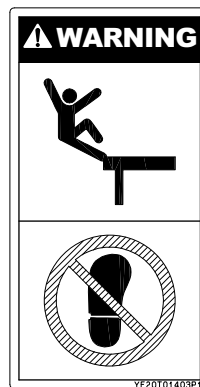


WORKING ABOVE GROUND

Location:27

Part Number:YF20T01403P1

When getting on the step, hold the handrail.



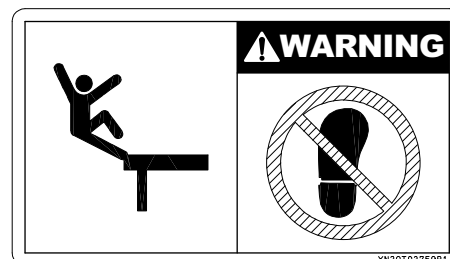
WORKING ABOVE GROUND

Location:31

Part Number:YN20T02759P1

There is a danger of falling when working on areas above ground.

- Do not approach edges.
- Use the appropriate equipment, such as ladders or platform when working above ground. In addition, strap yourself to the proper equipment accordingly.
- Avoid spillage of any oil or grease.
- Clean all slippery substances such as grease, oil, hydraulic oil, mud, ice, and others attached to the steps, handrails, crawlers, ladders, and platforms.
- Do not leave any tools around the working area.
- Use extreme caution to avoid slipping while walking.
- Do not jump on or from the machine. Use the steps and handrails and securely maintain a three point contact while mounting or dismounting at all times.



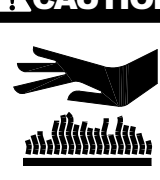
SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

Location:33
Part Number:YF20T01442P1

 <p>⚠ DANGER ELECTROCUTION HAZARD<ul style="list-style-type: none">•KEEP the machine and attachments a safe distance from electrical power lines.•MAINTAIN maximum possible distance from power lines and NEVER violate minimum clearance.•ALWAYS READ and UNDERSTAND operation manuals.</p>	 <p>⚠ WARNING To prevent SERIOUS INJURY, DEATH or PROPERTY DAMAGE, before operating machine:<ul style="list-style-type: none">•CHECK that no one is on, under, and around the machine.•CHECK there are not other machines or obstacles in the area surrounding the machine.•MAKE SURE control lock lever is "LOCKED" and all control levers and pedals have returned to neutral before starting engine.•ALWAYS sound horn to alert people in the vicinity of the machine before moving or starting swing motion.•READ and UNDERSTAND operation manuals.</p>	 <p>⚠ WARNING FALL HAZARD ALWAYS set travel speed select switch to "LOW" when descending slopes or loading and unloading machine.</p>
<p>⚠ WARNING To prevent SERIOUS INJURY, DEATH or PROPERTY DAMAGE: READ and UNDERSTAND operation manuals before operating, maintaining, disassembling, assembling or transporting machine. Observe all local laws and regulations as your own responsibility.</p>	 <p>⚠ WARNING CRUSH HAZARD<ul style="list-style-type: none">•CHECK FOR INTERFERENCE•ALWAYS check clearance between attachment and cab before operation.•ALWAYS keep the attachment away from the cab during operation.</p>	 <p>⚠ WARNING CRUSH HAZARD<ul style="list-style-type: none">•ALWAYS check clearance between attachment and cab before operation.•ALWAYS keep the attachment away from the cab during operation.</p>
<p>⚠ WARNING BEFORE operating always check each lever and each pedal matches the operating pattern to prevent SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH from unintended machine movement. Confirm the operating pattern with card displayed in the cab.</p>	 <p>⚠ WARNING To prevent SERIOUS INJURY or DEATH, when lifting or carrying heavy loads:<ul style="list-style-type: none">•In case of using heavy lift switch, never turn it off while lifting load.•NEVER use power boost switch.•SELECT "OFF" on auto idling stop mode in gauge cluster.</p>	 <p>⚠ WARNING CRUSH HAZARD<ul style="list-style-type: none">•ALWAYS check clearance between attachment and cab before operation.•ALWAYS keep the attachment away from the cab during operation.</p>
		<p>NOTICE Before stopping engine, turn engine throttle to low idle position, perform idle operation for approximately 5 minutes. If engine is suddenly stopped when it is at high temperature such as just after operation, exhaust gas cleaning device may be damaged. YF20T01442P1</p>


HOT PARTS

Location:38
Part Number:YN20T02760P1

 <p>⚠ CAUTION</p>	<p>Do not touch exhaust until it cools down. Exhaust may be hot and cause burns. YN20T02760P1</p>
--	---

HOT PARTS

Location:39
Part Number:YN20T02755P1

 <p>⚠ CAUTION</p>	<p>Do not touch SCR until it cools down. SCR may be hot and cause burns. YN20T02755P1</p>
--	---

[1. SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS]

HOT COOLANT

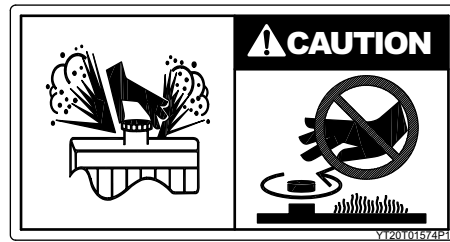
Location:44

Part Number:YT20T01574P1

Never loosen or open the radiator cap when coolant is hot. Stream of hot coolant will spout and could cause burns.

Before opening the radiator cap:

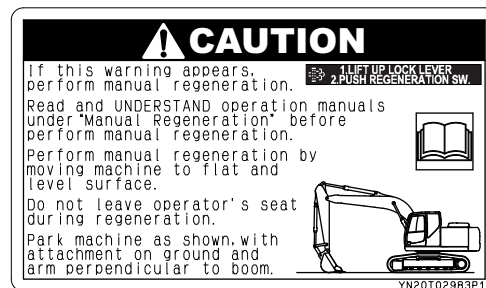
- Cool down the engine completely.
- Cover the radiator with cloth rag.
- Loosen the cap slowly to relieve pressure.



MANUAL REGENERATION

Location:65

Part Number:YN20T02983P1



1.2 PRE-START SAFETY



READ THE OPERATOR'S MANUAL

Read, understand and follow the safety messages and instructions in this manual. If these safety messages are not followed, serious injury or death could occur.

1.2.1 OPERATION RULES

ALWAYS OBSERVE BASIC SAFETY RULES AND PRECAUTIONS

All operators are required to receive training before operating this machine.

If a license or other special qualification is required to operate a hydraulic excavator in the country where this machine will be operated, all operators of this machine must meet those requirements and have a valid (not expired) license or qualification.

- Follow all safety precautions and procedures described in this manual while operating, inspecting and maintaining this machine.
- Never operate this machine if you are under the influence of drugs or medicines (including those which may make you drowsy) or alcohol. If you are not alert, do not operate the machine.
- To prevent accidents, confirm all working procedures before starting work. If a signal person is needed, always agree on the hand signals and designate a signal person before starting work.
All personnel must know and understand all the signals. The operator shall respond to signals only from the appointed signal person, but shall obey a stop signal from anyone at any time. The signal person must stand in a clearly visible location when giving the signals.

ENSURE WORKSITE SAFETY

Understand your task and the potential hazards:

- Before operation, conduct a risk assessment with the site manager and confirm that all necessary safety precautions have been taken for the task. Always ask the site manager if there are any additional safety precautions or regulations for the task.

Know your working area:

- Visually survey the area around the working site before operating the machine.
Look for mud or other soft ground that could cause the machine to become stuck or unstable when operating the machine. The ground near cliffs, trenches and road shoulders may be too soft to operate the machine. Be aware that rain, blasting activities, earthquakes, or other events may cause the ground be soft. Use signs to identify soft shoulders and soft ground. If needed, use a signal person.
- Choose operating locations where landslide will not occur or where falling rocks or building debris will not land on the machine.
- Set up barricades to prevent unauthorized personnel and/or machines from entering the working site.
- If working near a road, use a signal person and signs to alert vehicles and pedestrians of potential hazards and falling objects.

KEEP AWAY OTHER PEOPLE FROM THE MACHINE AND ATTACHMENT / EQUIPMENT DURING OPERATION

To prevent serious injury or death:

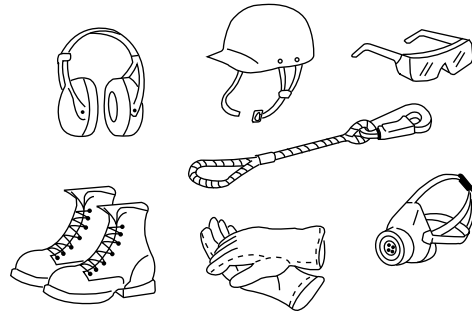
- Never allow anyone to stand on the machine, including the attachment /equipment and the upper structure, when operating.
- Never allow anyone to stand or to ride on a suspended load or the attachment/equipment.

1.2.2 PROTECTION TOOLS

PERSONAL PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT

Wear fitted clothing and protective gears.

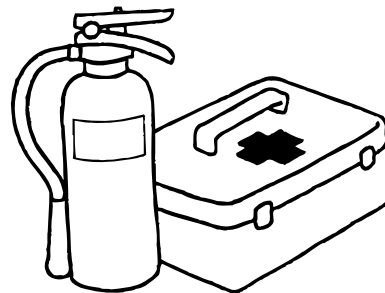
- Wear clothing not exposing your skin.
- Always change any clothing that has become contaminated with oil, fuel or other flammable substances.
- Do not wear loose fitting clothing, jewelry or any accessory and restrain long hair that can get caught in moving parts or that can catch on controls and result in unintended movement of the machine or the attachment /equipment.
- Always wear the proper personal protective equipment for the task you will be performing. This may include a hard hat, safety shoes, safety glasses, face shield, respirator, and/or a reflective vest. Consult with your supervisor to confirm you have the proper personal protective equipment for the task.
- Use ear protection when operating in noisy areas. Prolonged exposure to loud noises can cause hearing damage and even total hearing loss.
- Inspect all personal protective equipment for damage prior to use. If any personal protective equipment is damaged, or past its expiration date, do not use the equipment and contact your supervisor to obtain a replacement before operating machine.
- Other personnel working in the vicinity of the machine, including the signal person, should also wear the proper personal protective equipment appropriate for the worksite and for the task.
This may include a hard hat, safety shoes, safety glasses, face shield, respirator, gloves, ear protection, and/or a reflective vest. Consult with your supervisor to confirm that personnel working in the vicinity of the machine have the proper personal protective equipment for the worksite and the task.



PREPARE FOR EMERGENCY

In case of emergency, know where the fire extinguishers (type: ABC, ABE) and the first aid kit are located.

- Know how to use a fire extinguisher.
- Inspect and maintain the fire extinguishers in compliance with your local/national regulations.
- Determine what emergency communication devices are necessary for your location and have a list of important telephone numbers available.
- Periodically inspect the first aid kit. Replenish items and replace expired items as necessary.



1.2.3 ABNORMAL AND EMERGENCY CONDITION

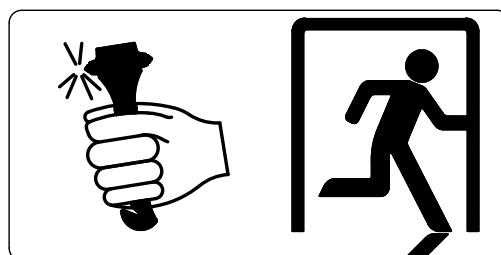
WHEN A FAILURE IS FOUND

When operating, inspecting or maintaining the machine, if there is an unusual noise, vibration, smell, instrument malfunction, smoke, oil leak, a warning light illuminates or a warning is on the multi-display, do not continue to operate the machine.

- Always park on a firm, level location, lower the attachment to the ground, stop the engine, pull the control lock lever to the locked position, and remove the key.
- Contact your supervisor.
- Contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer for repair.

EMERGENCY ESCAPE FROM THE CAB

If the normal operator's exit is blocked in an emergency, stop the engine, use the life hammer to break a window, and exit the cab. See "EMERGENCY ESCAPE FROM OPERATOR'S STATION" in Chapter 2.



IN THE EVENT OF A FIRE OR OTHER EMERGENCY

- Stop the engine.
- Use hand rails and steps to dismount machine. Do not jump from machine.

IN THE EVENT OF A THUNDERSTORM

- Lower the attachment to the ground and if possible anchor the digging tool into the soil.
- Leave the cab and move away from the machine before the storm break out. Otherwise, you must stop the excavator, turn off the radio and keep inside the closed cab until the end of the storm.

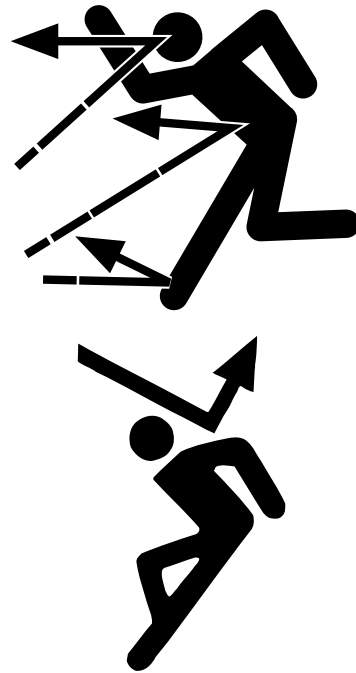
1.2.4 POTENTIAL HAZARDS WHEN OPERATING

PAY ATTENTION TO FALLING MATERIALS AND FLYING DEBRIS

Be sure to install the top guard and the front guard (option) when performing demolition, working in quarry or mining applications or any site in which falling materials and/or flying debris can be generated .

- If working with the hydraulic breaker or other attachments, be sure to install front guard.
- When performing work that may result in falling material and flying debris, keep people a safe distance away from the work area.
- Always close the front window and doors before operating.

As for installing the front guard (option), contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.



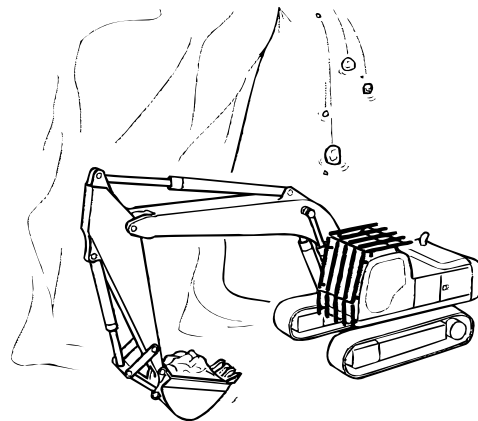
CHECK PROTECTIVE RELATED GUARDS AND EQUIPMENT

- Check that all protective related guards, covers, windows and mirrors are not damaged and are secure prior to operation. If any damage or other issue is found, do not use the machine until the protective related parts and equipment has been replaced. Never attempt to repair protective related parts and equipment.
- Understand how the protective systems and the protective related equipment protects you as the operator and others around the machine.
- Never remove protective related parts and equipment from the machine.

LIMITED PROTECTION FROM OBJECTS FALLING ON THE CAB

When operating near areas where landslides may occur or where rocks or other debris may fall, be aware that the cab and the guards installed provide limited protection for the operator and may not prevent serious injury or death.

- The top guard is designed according to ISO10262 and should not allow loads up to 227 kg (500 lbs.) dropped from a height of 5.22 m (17 ft.) to penetrate the cab. During building demolition or other activities, the load, the distance of the drop, or both could produce forces that exceed the limits of the top guard and cause serious injury or death.
- Never weld, drill or modify the top guard or other protective structures. Any modification could weaken the structural integrity of these protective structures, resulting in serious injury or death in case of collision, falling objects or landslides.
- Do not install any cab lifting device to the top guard or other protective structures.
- If an accident occurs, do not try to straighten or repair the top guard or other protective structures. Contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer for functional verification or replacement of any of the protective structures.

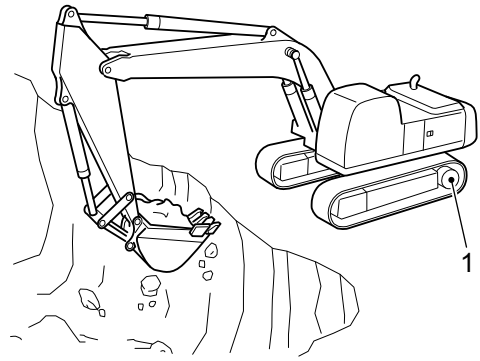


GROUND CONDITIONS

Always place tracks perpendicular (at a 90 degree angle) to the edge of a cliff or the road shoulder with the travel motors(1) positioned away from the edge to prevent the machine from falling over the edge.

Visually inspect for soft ground near the edge, especially either any raised ground or any wet ground following a rain.

Do not dig close to the machine or undercut the bank in front of the machine to prevent the machine from falling over the edge.

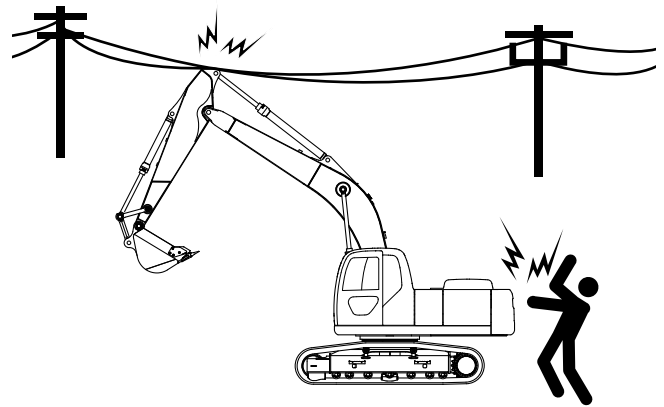


ELECTRICAL POWER LINES

Keep a safe distance from electrical power lines.

Never approach power lines with any part of the machine and its load unless all local and national required safety precautions have been taken. Electrocuting and death can result from arcing, touching or even being close to a machine that is in contact with or near an electrical source.

- Maintain the maximum possible distance from power lines and never violate the minimum clearance.
- Always contact the nearest electric utility and determine jointly what specific precautions must be taken to ensure safety.
- Consider all lines to be power lines and treat all power lines as energized even though it is known or believed that the power is shut off and the line is visibly grounded.
- Use a signal person to observe the approach of any part of the machine or load to the power line.
- Caution all ground personnel to stand clear of the machine and the load at all times.
- If the machine should come in contact with a live electrical source, do not leave the operator's seat. Do not allow anyone to approach or touch the machine.
- Observe the applicable rules or regulations for clearance distances for power lines and other electrical equipment for the country where the machine is operating. Always maintain the following clearances when operating near high voltage power lines.



The reference of the safe distances from high voltage cables are as follows.

LINE VOLTAGE(V)	MINIMUM DISTANCE m(feet)
0 to 50,000	3.0(10) or more
50,000 to 200,000	4.5(15) or more
200,000 to 350,000	6.0(20) or more
350,000 to 500,000	7.5(25) or more
500,000 to 750,000	10.5(35) or more
750,000 to 1,000,000	13.5(45) or more

USE WORK LIGHTS

- When operating in dark locations, turn on the work light. If necessary, use additional lighting devices to make the work areas bright enough to operate.
- Stop work if you have poor or limited visibility because of darkness, fog, rain, especially lightning, snow, or other causes.

OPERATING ON SOFT GROUND

When working on soft or wet ground, place logs or lumber horizontally beneath the crawler tracks to prevent the machine from becoming stuck.

Be aware frozen ground may become soft or wet as the ambient temperature rises during the day and could cause the machine to become unstable or stuck.

VISUALLY INSPECT GROUND CONDITIONS BEFORE OPERATING

The ground near cliffs, trenches and road shoulders may be too soft to operate the machine. Visually inspect for soft ground before travelling or working in these areas. Be aware that rain, blasting activities, earthquakes, or other events may cause the ground to be soft.

To prevent serious injury, death, and property damage, only travel or work on firm ground when the machine is close to sudden elevation changes, including cliffs, trenches and road shoulders. The weight of the machine or vibration from the machine may cause the ground to collapse and cause the machine to tip or roll over.

1.2.5 FIRE PREVENTION

FIRE CAUSED BY FLAMMABLE SUBSTANCES

Fuel, oil, electrolyte, windshield washer fluid and other chemicals are flammable.

To prevent serious injury or death from possible fire:

- Remove flammables such as leaves, wooden debris, paper waste, etc. from the areas of exhaust manifold, muffler, battery, and undercover, etc.
- Do not smoke or bring other ignition sources near areas where flammables are stored and/or handled.
- Refuel only after stopping the engine.
- Do not leave the machine when refueling or when refilling with oil.
- Try not to spill fuel on heated surfaces or on electrical parts. Clean any spills immediately.
- After refueling or refilling with oil, securely tighten the fuel and the oil caps and clean up any spills immediately.
- Store fuel and oil in designated areas and restrict access to only authorized personnel.
- Remove all flammable materials in the area before performing grinding or welding work.
- Do not weld or perform gas cutting on pipes and tubes which contain combustible liquids.
- Only use nonflammable oils to wash parts. Do not use flammable oils, such as diesel fuel or gasoline, to wash parts.



FIRE CAUSED BY THE ELECTRIC SYSTEM

Short-circuits in the electrical system may cause fire.

- Check all wiring harness connections are clean and secure.
- Inspect wiring harnesses, connectors, and clamps periodically. Repair, replace, or tighten connectors and clamps if any damage or loose connections are found.

FIRE CAUSED BY LEAK

Check all clamps, guards, protective cushions for the hoses and the tubes are secure.

During operation, machine vibration may cause loose hoses or loose tubes to be damaged from contact with other parts and leak high pressure oil or other fluids and result in a fire and serious injury or death.

If any issue is found, immediately tighten, repair or replace it.

Do not operate machine with damaged or bent hoses or tubes.

USE ANTI-EXPLOSION WORK LIGHTS

Use only work lights with anti-explosion specification to prevent serious injury or death.

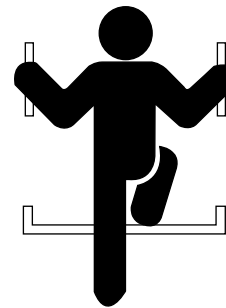
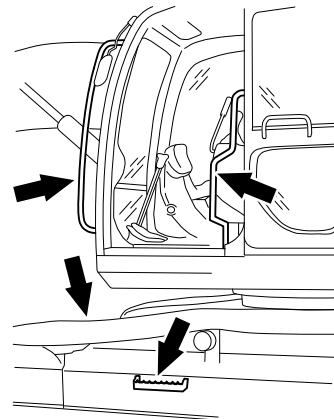
Lighting must meet the requirements for areas where explosive concentrations of vapors and dusts could exist to prevent a fire or explosion when performing inspection and maintenance activities.

1.2.6 GETTING ON AND OFF THE MACHINE

PRECAUTIONS OF GETTING ON AND OFF THE MACHINE

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Clean all slippery substances such as grease, oil, mud, ice, and others attached to the steps and handrails.
- Inspect the steps and handrails for damage or loose parts. Replace any damaged parts and tighten any loose bolts or nuts.
- Always use the steps and handrails to get on and off the machine.
- Always face the machine and maintain three points of contact with the steps and handrails.
- Do not use the control lock lever and control levers as hand holds.
- Do not have anything in your hands, including tools, when getting on and off the machine.
- Never jump on and off the machine or attempt to get on or off a moving machine.



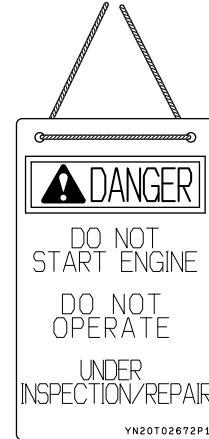
1.2.7 PRE-START UP INSPECTION ON THE MACHINE

Always perform a pre-startup inspection before operating this machine to check for any potential issues. For more information, refer to "EVERYDAY CHECK-UP" in Chapter 3 in the standard operation & maintenance manual.

ATTACH A "DO NOT OPERATE" TAG

To prevent serious injury or death, never allow unauthorized personnel to start the engine or touch the control levers during inspection and maintenance activities. Always lower the attachment, pull the control lock lever to the locked(up) position, stop the engine, and remove the key before performing inspection and maintenance.

Use a temporary hang tag to communicate that the machine is out of service. You may need to use more than one temporary hang tag depending on the inspection and maintenance activities to be performed.



CHECK THE MACHINE LOG BOOK

Check machine log book to check that periodic maintenance and inspections have been performed and all necessary repairs made.

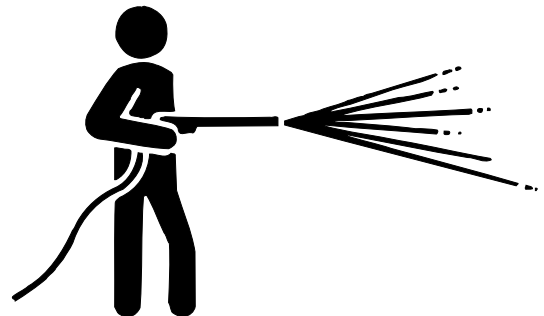
ALWAYS KEEP THE MACHINE CLEAN

Always keep the machine clean and free of scattered debris, and spilled lubricant and oil.

If electrical components or systems get wet, then equipment malfunction, short circuit, or fire may result in serious injury or death.

Never use pressurized water or steam to clean inside the operator cab or any electrical components, such as sensors and connectors.

Also never wash the vent hole of covers or guards with high-pressure cleaning machine.



KEEP INSIDE OF OPERATOR CAB CLEAN

- To prevent slippery pedals, always remove mud, grease, oil, and other substances from the soles of your shoes before entering the cab.
- Secure parts and tools inside the cab before operating.

To prevent fire:

- Do not bring explosive or flammable materials into the cab.
- Do not leave your cigarette lighter inside the cab.
If the cab temperature becomes too hot, the lighter may explode.
- After smoking, always put out your cigarette.
- Do not leave plastic bottles inside the cab or attach suction cups to the windows.
These items may act as lenses and could start a fire.

SEAT BELT INSPECTION

Check if seatbelt is cut or frayed and check if mounting hardware is damaged or loose before fastening the seatbelt. If an issue is found with the seatbelt or the mounting hardware, do not use machine until the issue has been repaired.

Replace seatbelts every 3 (three) years or more frequently if damaged or frayed.

1.3 SECURE VISIBILITY



READ THE OPERATOR'S MANUAL

Read, understand and follow the safety messages and instructions in this manual. If these safety messages are not followed, serious injury or death could occur.

1.3.1 BE AWARE OF YOUR SURROUNDINGS

When operating or traveling in the machine, the operator may not observe people and obstacles near the machine. To prevent serious injury, death or damage to the machine.

- Keep windows clean.
- Replace cracked or broken glass.
- Adjust the mirrors for maximum visibility around the machine before operating. If needed, clean the mirrors.
- If the machine is equipped with the rearview camera and the side cameras, clean the lenses to display clear images from the rearview and side cameras to the monitor.
- Move the attachment /equipment as needed to improve visibility of the right side during machine travel.
- There are blind areas in the mirror and camera views. Confirm for safety around the machine before operating the machine.
- If needed, use a signal person. The operator should always be alert and follow the signals from the signal person. The operator shall respond to signals only from the appointed signal person, but shall obey a stop signal from anyone at any time.
- When operating in dark locations, turn on the work light. Additional lighting may be needed to illuminate the work area.
- Stop work if you have poor or limited visibility because of darkness, fog, rain, especially lightning, snow, or other causes.
- Never attach mirrors or other articles to the handrails. Over time, excessive vibration may weaken the handrail and cause it to fail.
- Do not operate the machine without the monitor pictures of the rearview camera and the side camera being displayed.
- Do not remove or disassemble the rearview camera and the side camera systems.
The camera systems are installed on the base machine according to ISO 16001:2017. When removal or disassembly of them is required, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer otherwise it may void the machine warranty provided with the machine.

MIRROR AND CAMERA LOCATION

Only use genuine KOBELCO mirrors, rearview camera system, and side camera system.

Regarding adjustment of the mirrors, the rearview and side cameras, see "ADJUSTMENT OF MIRRORS" in Chapter 3.

1.4 PRECAUTIONS FOR OPERATION



READ THE OPERATOR'S MANUAL

Read, understand and follow the safety messages and instructions in this manual. If these safety messages are not followed, serious injury or death could occur.

1.4.1 STARTING

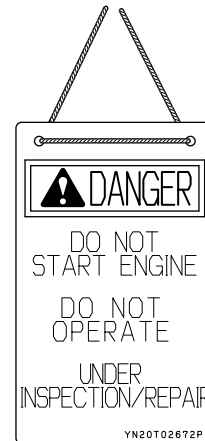
CHECK A "DO NOT OPERATE" TAG

Before starting the engine, check display of warning tags.

If warning tags are displayed, do not start the engine.

The warning tags are used to notify that the machine is in an inoperable condition.

Report this situation to a supervisor of the machine and do not start the engine until the warning tags are removed.



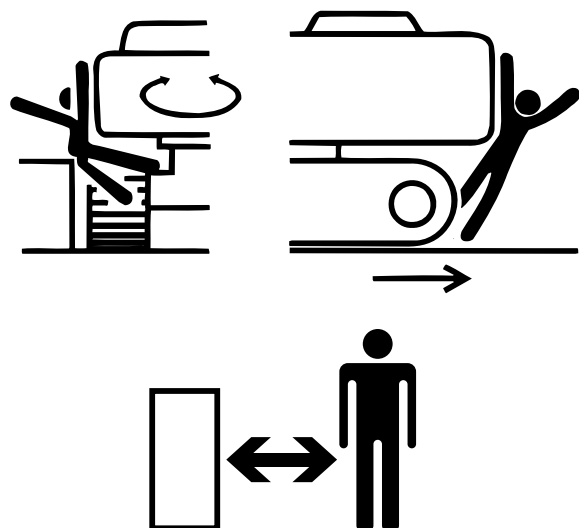
ONLY THE OPERATOR IS ALLOWED IN THE CAB

The operator is the only person that should be on or near the machine and in the cab. Do not allow any other personnel to be present in the cab or on the machine.

CHECK WORKING SITE AND SET UP BARRICADES

To prevent serious injury, death and property damage, before you start the engine and before you move the machine:

- Check that no one is on, under, and around the machine. Make sure that all personnel are clear of the machine and surrounding area.
- Check there are no other machines or obstacles in the area surrounding the machine.
- Set up barricades to prevent unauthorized personnel and / or machines from entering the working site.



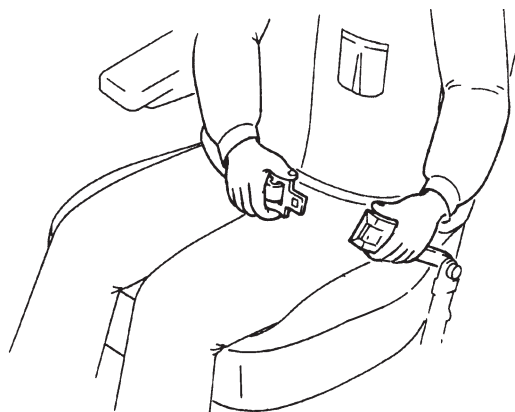
PRE-OPERATION SAFETY CHECK

To prevent serious injury or death, before operating:

- Close and lock the doors and windows.
- Close and lock the access panels and doors.
- Adjust mirrors for maximum visibility around the machine. See "ADJUSTMENT OF MIRRORS" in Chapter 3 for additional information.

FASTEN YOUR SEATBELT

To prevent serious injury or death, always fasten your seatbelt before starting the machine and keep your seatbelt fastened during operation.
Sit in operator's seat and adjust seat so you can properly operate all of the machine controls.



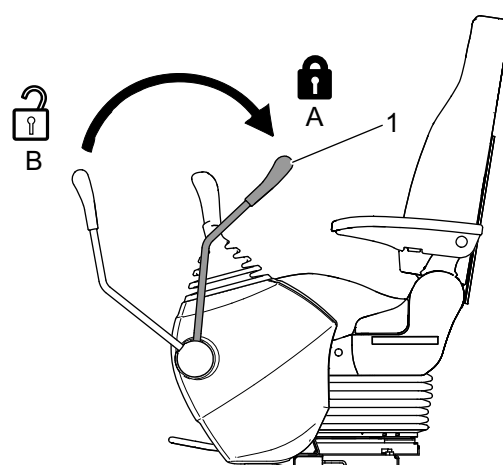
1

BEFORE STARTING ENGINE

- Check the pilot control lock lever is in the "LOCKED" (up) position.
If not locked, incidental contact with the control levers, pedals and other control devices may result in unexpected and unintended machine movement.
- Confirm that all control levers and pedals have returned to neutral.
- Sound horn to alert personnel near the machine.
- Always be seated in the operator's seat with your seatbelt fastened.

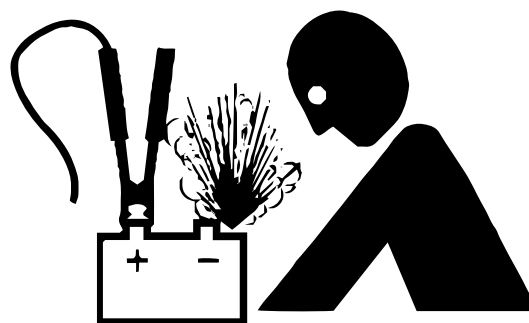
A: Locked Position

B: Unlocked Position



Only start the engine from the operator's seat. Never attempt to start the engine by connecting the starter terminals to the batteries.

Unexpected machine movement could result in serious injury, death, or damage to the machine and electrical system.



WARM UP

To prevent serious injury or death, always allow the machine to warm up prior to operation, especially in cold weather. Do not start operation as soon as the engine is started. If not warmed up, there could be a delay between when the control levers are moved and when the machine or the attachment /equipment responds, resulting in unintended or unexpected movement of the machine or attachment /equipment.

ATTACHMENT MODE SELECT SWITCH

Check the attachment installed matches the selected attachment mode and is appropriate for the task to be performed. If the attachment mode selected does not match the attachment, the machine will not work properly and it will result in serious injury, death, or property damage.

See "SWITCHING ATTACHMENT MODE" in Chapter 3 for additional information.

[1. SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS]

CHECK CONTROL PATTERN BEFORE OPERATING

Before operation, always check the operation of each control lever and each pedal.

If the movement of the machine does not match selected control pattern which is shown on the card, stop the work and shut down the machine. The machine movement must match with the operating pattern.

If the machine movement does not match the card displayed in the cab, change the card so as to match the machine control pattern.

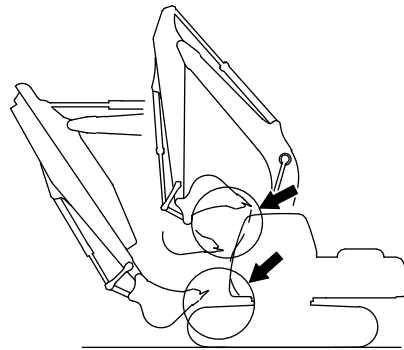
If any issue is found, do not operate machine until the issue had been corrected. If needed, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.

CHECK WARNING DEVICES

Make sure that the horn, the travel alarm, the swing flashers and all other warning devices are warning properly.

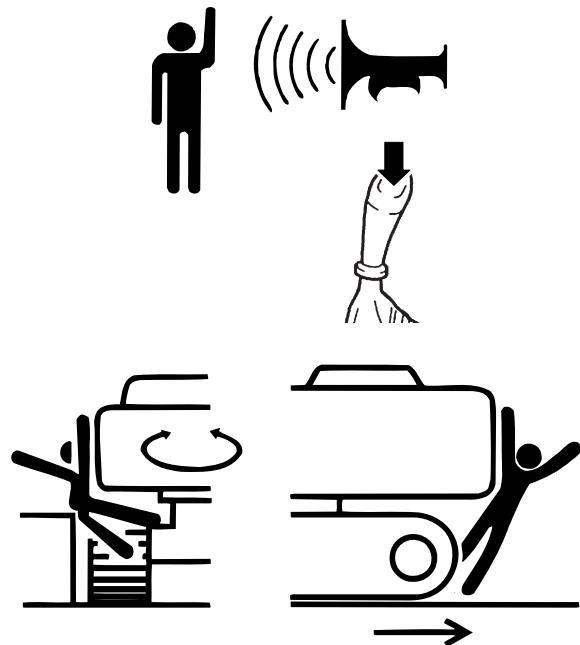
AVOID INTERFERENCE BETWEEN THE ATTACHMENT AND THE MACHINE

Check clearance between the attachment and the cab before starting operation because a certain kinds of attachment and a certain combination of the option and the machine may cause the contact of the attachment and the cab or some other parts of the machine.



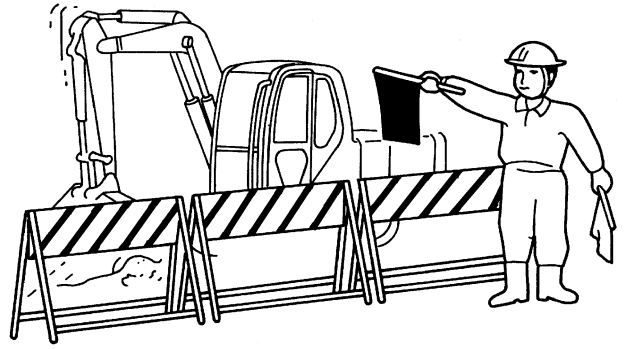
PRECAUTIONS OF SWINGING / TRAVELING

- Always sound the horn before starting the engine, traveling the machine, or swinging the upper structure to alert people in the vicinity of the machine.
- Always operate at a safe distance from other machines or obstacles in the vicinity of the machine.
- Place a signal person at poor visibility area.



WORKSITES IN URBAN AREAS

Set up barricades to prevent unauthorized personnel and/or vehicles from entering the worksite. If working near a road, use a signal person and signs to alert vehicles and pedestrians of potential hazards and falling objects. If needed, use a signal person to direct traffic. The operator should always be alert and follow the signals from the signal person. The operator shall respond to signals only from the appointed signal person, but shall obey a stop signal from anyone at any time.

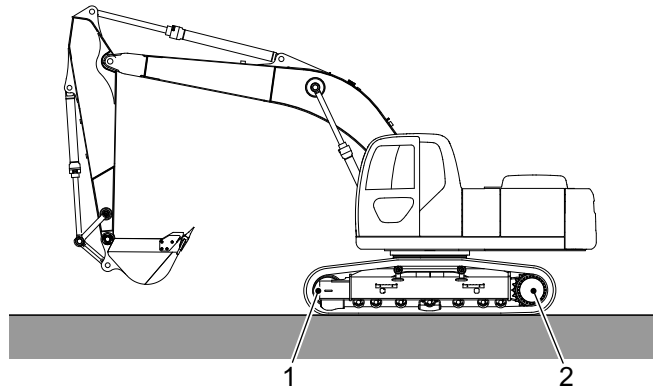


1.4.2 TRAVELING

ALWAYS CONFIRM DIRECTION OF TRAVEL

Before moving the machine, check the position of the undercarriage (tracks). The normal travel position is for the idler wheels(1) to the front under the cab and the drive sprockets(2) to the rear.

When the undercarriage (tracks) is reversed, the travel controls operate in the opposite directions compared to when the idler wheels(1) are in the front. Move the travel levers slowly and travel at a low speed.



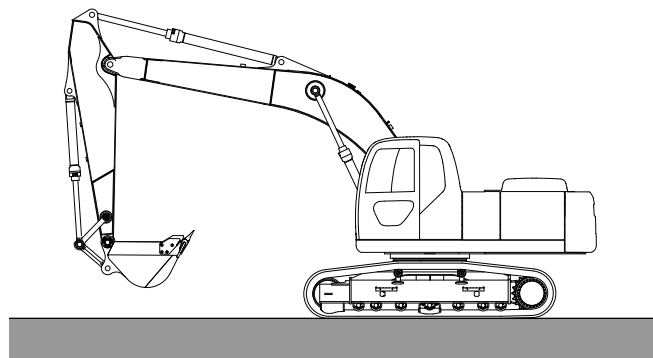
MOVE TRAVEL LEVERS IN A SLOW AND DELIBERATE MANNER

- Gradually increase speed. Moving the travel levers quickly will cause the machine to accelerate quickly and result in a sudden start or sudden acceleration.
- Do not move the travel levers from forward to reverse or vice versa rapidly.
- Do not perform an abrupt pivot turn or spin turn.
- Do not stop quickly by releasing the levers during travel.

PRECAUTIONS IN TRAVELING

Travel on a level and firm ground as much as possible.

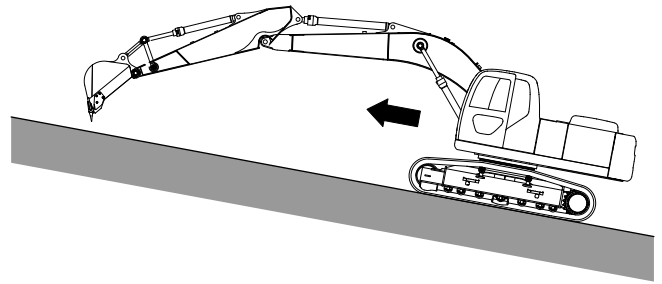
- Ensure operator has good visibility when traveling and is aware of any and all obstructions on the job site.
- Travel slowly on a rough terrain.
- Do not go over obstacles. When going over obstacles inevitably, go slowly with the attachment positioned close to the ground to avoid machine becoming unstable or tipping.



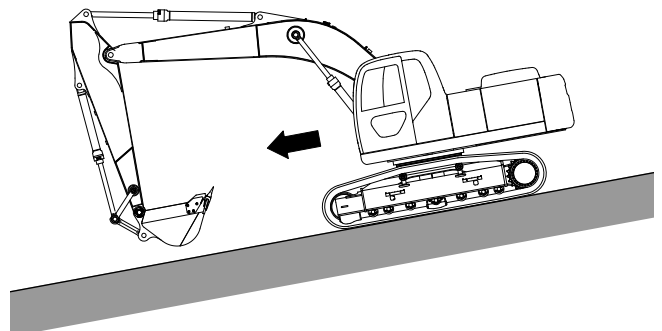
TRAVELING ON SLOPES

Traveling up and down slopes of 30 degrees or more is not allowed to avoid a risk of tipping/rolling over.

- Travel at a low speed when traveling up and down the slopes.
- When traveling up the slopes, extend the front attachment forward to avoid tipping/rolling over to the rearward.
- When traveling down the slopes, set the bucket in the position where it can reach the ground immediately to stop the machine from tipping or sliding.
- Travel carefully on wet ground, grass, grasses, fallen leaves, ice, and steel plates because the machine can slip easily.



Traveling up slope

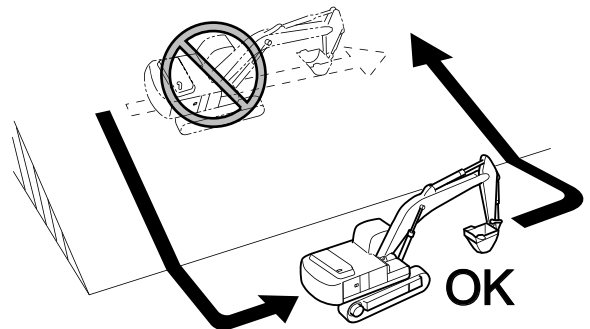


Traveling down slope

PRECAUTION OF TRAVELING ON SLOPES

The machine could tip or roll over, slide, or skid when travelling across slopes.

Be sure to travel off the slope, travel along flat area, then travel onto the slope at the desired location.
Never travel across the slopes.



TRAVELING ON FROZEN OR SNOW COVERED GROUND

Use extreme care when operating on frozen or snow covered ground.

- The ground may be extremely slippery and the machine can slide or skid.
- Do not perform abrupt start, stop, or movements or the machine could become unstable and tip or roll over.
- Snow can make elevation changes (e.g., road shoulders or steep banks) hard to perceive.
- Snow can cover obstacles or obstructions and make them difficult to recognize.
- During the day as ambient temperatures rise, frozen ground may thaw and become soft and cause the machine to become unstable or stuck.

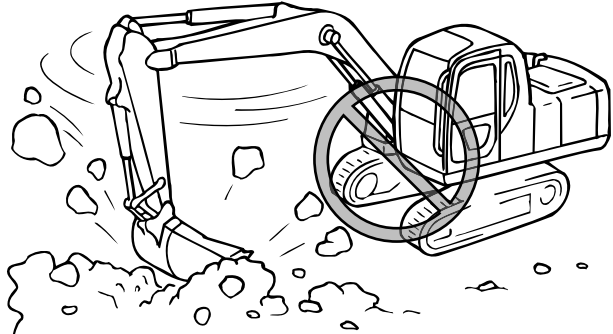
1.4.3 PROHIBITED OPERATIONS

Always follow the procedures in this manual when operating this machine. Abuse and misuse may result in serious injury, death, property damage and reduce the life of the machine. Never attempt the following under any circumstances.

NEVER USE THE SWING POWER TO PERFORM WORK

Never apply swinging force (slewing force) to rock sliding work and side wall breaking work.

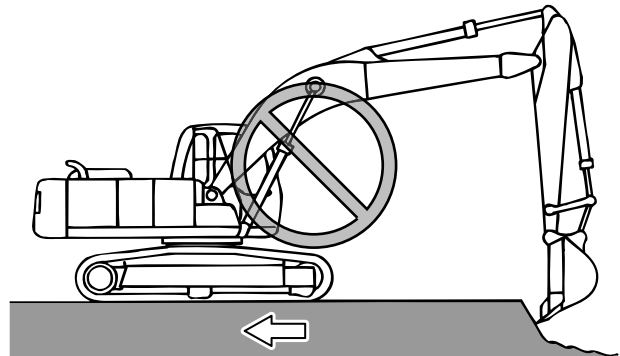
If the swing power is used to perform work, excessive force may be exerted on the machine and the attachment /equipment resulting in damage and may reduce the life of the swing system.



NEVER USE THE TRAVEL POWER TO PERFORM WORK

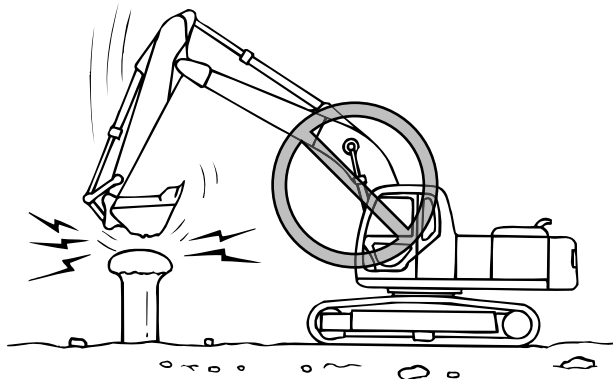
Do not use the travel power to perform digging or leveling work with the attachment in contact with the ground.

If the travel power is used to perform work, excessive force may be exerted on the machine and the attachment /equipment resulting in damage.



DO NOT PERFORM "HAMMERING" OPERATIONS WITH THE BUCKET

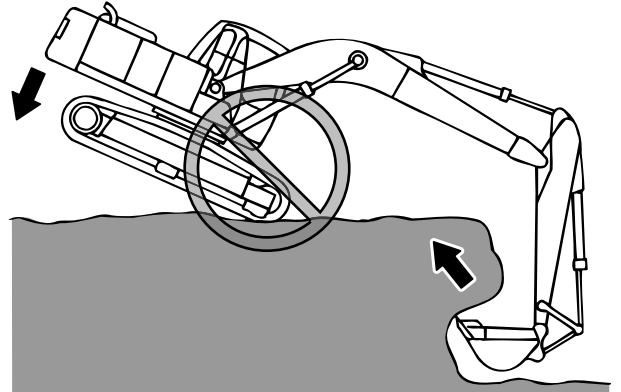
Never use the bucket for hammering and piling. It will cause severe damage to the machine and its components.



DO NOT USE MACHINE WEIGHT FOR DIGGING OPERATION

Do not use the machine weight to obtain power to dig. This could cause severe damage to the machine and its components.

Before digging concrete or hard rock, use a breaker/hammer to break it up before digging. This will prevent damage to the machine and allow for easier loading.



1

OPERATING ON A SLOPE

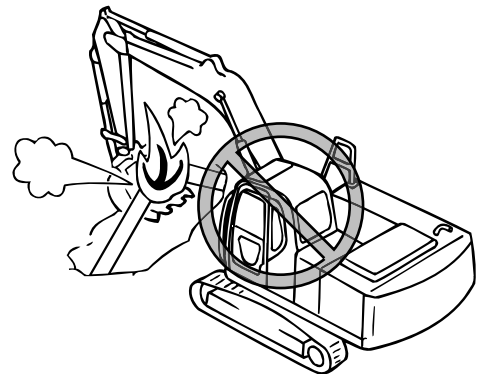
Use extreme caution when operating machine on a slope. The machine may become unstable and could tip or roll over.

- Place the crawlers parallel to the slope.
- Always swing the upper structure slowly when rotating it toward the downhill side with a load. The extra weight from the load may make the machine unstable.
- Be aware the weight of the upper structure could cause it to rotate when the machine stops on a slope.
- When the machine stops on the slope, lower the attachment to the ground on the downhill side of the machine and wedge the bucket into the ground if equipped.

CALL BEFORE YOU DIG

Confirm the local government or the public service company for locations of underground utilities of gas, water, phone, electrical power, and so forth before working in the area seemingly with these lines.

Always inspect the worksite for evidence of unmarked utilities and piping and contact others if necessary.

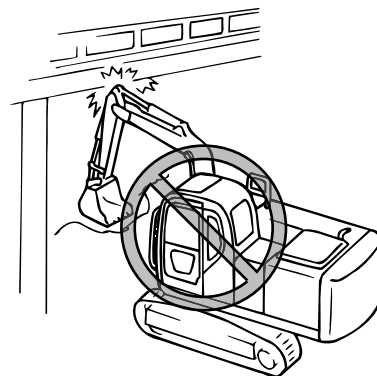


LIMITED MOVEMENT IN WORK AREA

Use extreme caution when working in areas that constrain or limit the movements of the machine, including tunnels, bridges, around electrical power lines, or inside structures, to prevent the machine or the attachment /equipment from contacting these obstacles during operation.

To prevent serious injury, death or property damage, always use a signal person to assist the operator with maneuvering in these areas and keep the machine and the attachment /equipment a safe distance from these obstacles.

The operator should always be alert and follow the signals from the signal person. The operator shall respond to signals only from the appointed signal person, but shall obey a stop signal from anyone at any time.



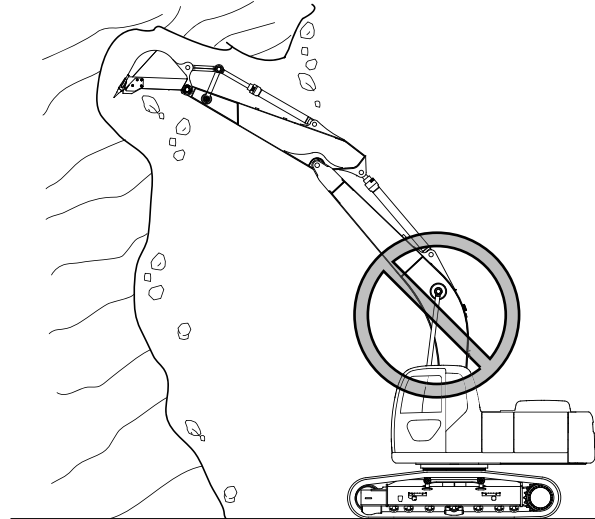
[1. SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS]

OPERATING UNDER CLIFF OR OVERHANG

Never undercut or dig beneath a cliff or overhang. It can cause rocks and debris to fall.

Be aware that the cab guard installed provide limited protection for the operator and may not prevent serious injury or death.

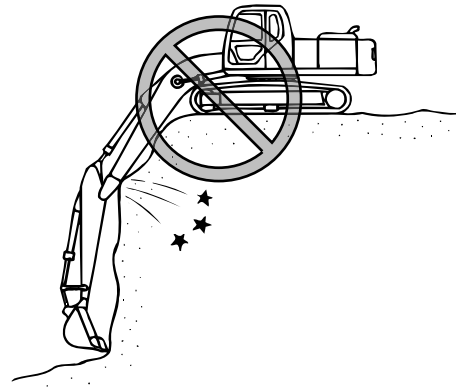
The cab top guard was designed conforming to ISO10262 and should not allow every possible loads to penetrate the cab.



DEEP EXCAVATION OPERATION

To prevent damage to the machine, during deep excavation or diagonal digging.

- Do not allow the arm or the hydraulic piping to contact the side of the trench or hole.
- Do not allow the arm to contact the crawler shoe when operating with the arm below horizontal.



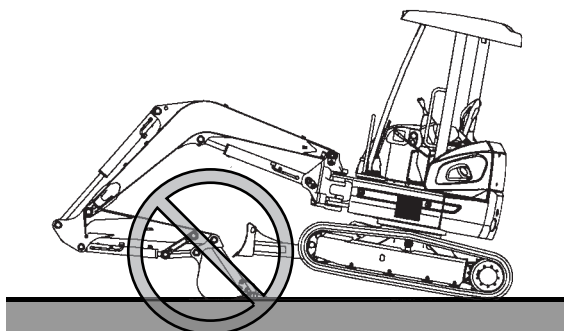
DO NOT LIFT OR MOVE PERSONNEL

Never lift or move personnel by using the attachment. The lifted personnel may fall off, causing severe accidents.



DO NOT LIFT UP THE MACHINE WITH ARM CYLINDER STROKE END

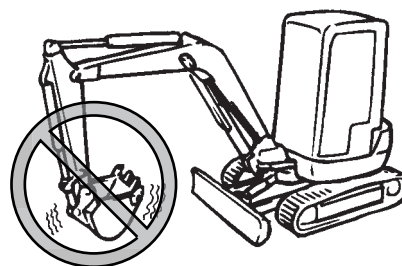
Never lift up the machine with arm cylinder fully extended. It may cause damage to the equipment/attachment and cylinder.

**NO PERSONNEL ALLOWED UNDER THE BUCKET OR ATTACHMENT / EQUIPMENT**

Never move a suspended load or the bucket over a person or above the driver's cab of a truck. The load could fall and cause serious injury or death.

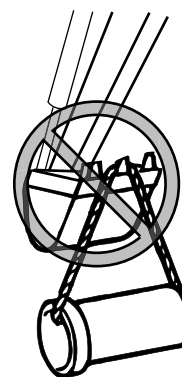
**REMOVING DIRT OF BUCKET**

With the bucket in the retracted position, do not give impact on the bucket to remove soil. It may cause damage to the equipment/attachment and cylinders.

**LIFTING WORK**

This machine is designed for the application of digging, loading, and leveling using the bucket, or for use with a crusher, breaker/hammer, shear or other attachment. When lifting a load by using this machine, observe the laws and others of the country or area in which this machine is to be used.

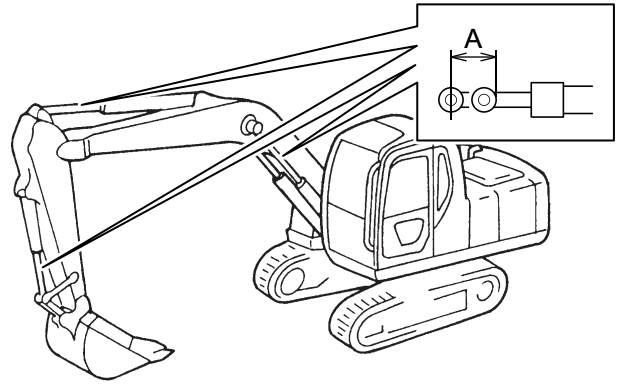
Even though lifting with this machine is allowed according to the laws of the country or area in which this machine is to be used, do not lift the load by using the teeth of the bucket, the breaker, the crusher, or others. It can cause the lifting tools to come off and result in falling off of the load, leading to serious accidents or death. Always use a certified lifting device.



[1. SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS]

DO NOT OPERATE THE CYLINDERS TO THE STROKE END

Operate the bucket, boom and arm cylinders to leave some clearances (A) to the both stroke ends. If the cylinder is operated to the stroke end, it will generate an excessive load and cause damage to not only the cylinder but also the pin, boom and arm.



DO NOT OPERATE IN ENCLOSED SPACES

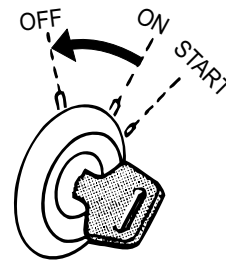
Do not operate the machine in enclosed spaces or, in any case, without appropriate ventilation.

PRECAUTIONS FOR POTENTIALLY EXPLOSIVE ENVIRONMENT

When using the machine in a potentially explosive environment, comply with local codes and regulations of each country.

PRECAUTIONS FOR LEAVING THE OPERATOR'S SEAT

Do not leave the machine with the engine running.

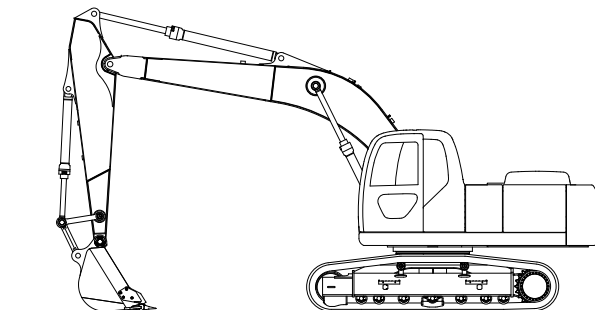


1.4.4 SAFETY CHECK ON THE PARKING MACHINE

There are risks of creeping, unexpected movement at the time of coming start if the machine is not parked properly. Park the machine following the safety parking procedures shown below.

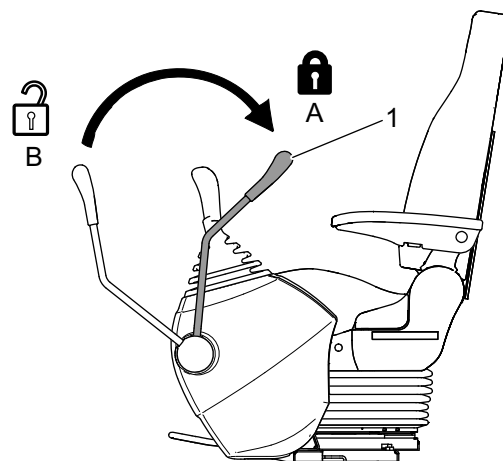
ALWAYS PARK MACHINE PROPERLY

1. Travel machine to a safe location on firm, level ground.
2. Lower the attachment to the ground.
If equipped with a dozer blade, lower it to the ground.
3. Set the auto acceleration switch to the "OFF" position.



1

4. Pull the control lock lever(1) to the "LOCKED" (up) position(A).
If not locked, accidental or unintended contact with the control levers, pedals and other control devices may result in unexpected and unintended machine movement.
5. Turn engine throttle to the low idle position.
6. Turn the starter switch to the "OFF" position and remove the key.
Close and lock the windows and the cab door.
Check the windows, doors and all other machine access covers are locked and secure.

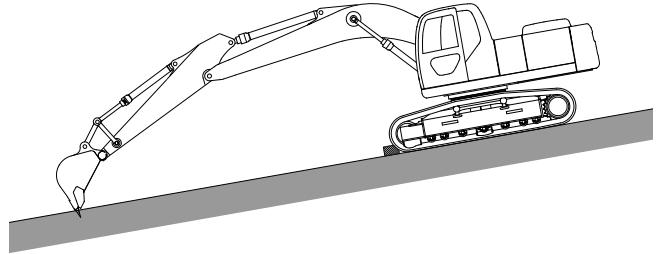


[1. SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS]

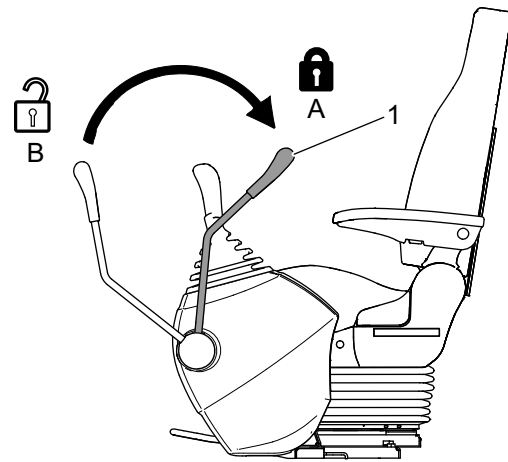
PARKING MACHINE ON SLOPE

If the machine must be parked on a slope.

1. The undercarriage and the upper structure and the attachment /equipment must face downhill.
2. Lower the attachment into the ground. If equipped with a bucket, wedge the bucket into the ground. If equipped with a dozer blade, lower it to the ground.
3. Set the auto acceleration switch to the "OFF" position.



4. Pull the control lock lever(1) to the "LOCKED" (up) position(A).
If not locked, accidental or unintended contact with the control levers, pedals and other control devices may result in unexpected and unintended machine movement.
5. Turn engine throttle to the low idle position.
6. Turn the starter switch to the "OFF" position and remove the key.
Close and lock the windows and the cab door.
Check the windows, doors and all other machine access covers are locked and secure.
7. Block the tracks in the front and the rear.



1.5 AT THE END OF EACH SHIFT

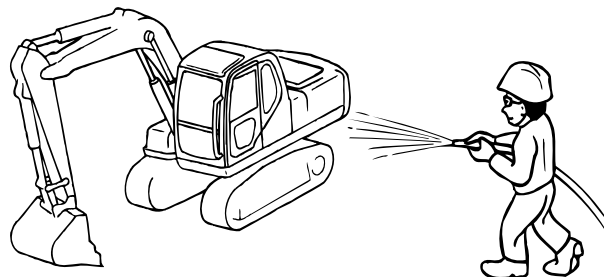


READ THE OPERATOR'S MANUAL

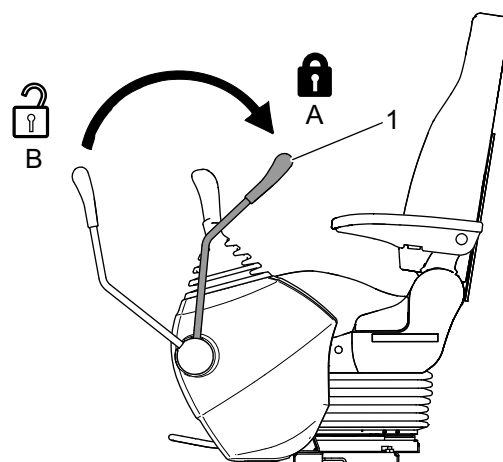
Read, understand and follow the safety messages and instructions in this manual. If these safety messages are not followed, serious injury or death could occur.

Always make sure the machine is secure and ready to be used for the next shift or moved to another job site.

1. Park the machine on a firm, level surface.
2. Lower attachment to the ground.



3. Pull the control lock lever(1) to the "LOCKED" (up) position(A) and check all control levers and pedals have returned to neutral.
4. Close and secure all windows in place to prevent water or moisture from damaging any electrical components.
5. Remove the key from the key switch and lock all doors and access panels.
6. Refill the fuel tank to the full mark to reduce air volume and condensation (moisture).
This will decrease the possibility of freezing in the fuel tank, rusting due to moisture and other potential issues.



7. Thoroughly clean and inspect the machine. If any issues are found, always lubricate, repair, or replace any machine parts and systems prior to restarting the machine.
8. If the machine is stored in cold climates, it may be necessary to remove the batteries from the machine and store them in a warm, well ventilated area. Re-install the batteries before the next start up. This helps prevent premature battery deterioration.

1.6 PRECAUTIONS OF INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE



READ THE OPERATOR'S MANUAL

Read, understand and follow the safety messages and instructions in this manual. If these safety messages are not followed, serious injury or death could occur.

1.6.1 PERIODIC INSPECTIONS

- Every year, the machine should be inspected by a qualified inspector or a registered inspection agency. If needed, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer for that inspection.
- Every month inspect the machine for the following.

See chapter 4. "INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE" for additional information about the monthly inspection & maintenance requirements for your machine.

Always keep all maintenance and all inspection records, including both the monthly and the yearly inspections, according to local codes and regulations of your country.

1.6.2 BEFORE INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE

READ OPERATION/MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES CAREFULLY

Improper maintenance could cause serious injury (crush or burn) and damage the machine. Read and understand the maintenance procedures (preparation for safe work, proper tools, qualifications, important parts, supervisor designation and wear the appropriate personal protective equipment, etc.) described in the manuals before safely and carefully inspecting and performing maintenance on the machine.

CONFIRM JOB PROCEDURES

To prevent accidents, confirm all work procedures before starting.

USE A SIGNAL PERSON AND A FLAGMAN

Know and use the hand signals required for particular jobs and confirm who has the responsibility for signaling: All personnel must know and understand all the signals.

The operator shall respond to signals only from the appointed signal person, but shall obey a stop signal from anyone at any time.

The signal person must stand in a clearly visible location when giving the signals.

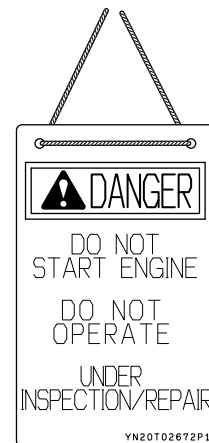
ORGANIZE AND CLEAN UP WORK SITE

Inspecting and maintaining the machine at an unorganized and cluttered working site may cause personal injury. Clear obstacles, grease, oil, paint, debris, etc., from the work site.

ATTACH A "DO NOT OPERATE" TAG

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Never allow unauthorized personnel to start the engine or touch the control levers during inspection and maintenance activities.
- Always lower the attachment, pull the control lock lever to the locked(up) position, stop the engine, and remove the key before performing maintenance.
- Use a temporary "DO NOT OPERATE" hang tag to communicate that the machine is out of service. You may need to use more than one temporary hang tag depending on the work to be performed.
- Always have an operator at the controls to shut down the machine if the machine needs to be running for maintenance activities or an inspections. The operator and the maintenance personnel must have a means of communication when performing these tasks.



If any issues are found, always contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer before repairing or replacing any machine parts and systems prior to restarting the machine.

USE PROPER TOOLS

To prevent serious injury or death, do not use of damaged tools or tools not intended for the task.

1.6.3 DURING INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE

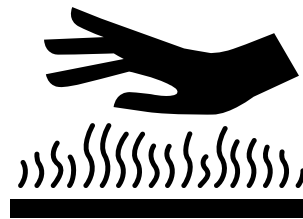
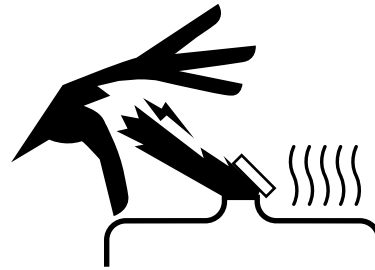
STOP ENGINE BEFORE PERFORMING INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE

Always stop the engine and allow the engine and other components to cool before performing inspection or maintenance activities. Do not touch engine components when the engine is running or immediately after it has stopped to prevent serious injury or death. There are many hazards that can cause harm, including rotating parts, high voltage, high pressure fluids, and high temperature.

HOT FLUIDS

To prevent burn injuries.

- Do not remove the radiator cap immediately after stopping operation. Hot radiator fluid may cause burns. Wait until the radiator cap is cool to the touch, then slowly loosen to release the internal pressure. Then remove the cap.
- Do not remove the oil cap or plug immediately after stopping operation. Hot oil may cause burns. Wait until the oil cap or plug is cool to the touch, then slowly loosen it to release the internal pressure. Then remove the oil cap or plug.



HIGH PRESSURE OIL

Do not attempt to repair or tighten hydraulic hoses or fittings when the engine is running or when the hydraulic circuit is pressurized.

Pressure can be maintained in the hydraulic circuit long after the engine has been shut down.

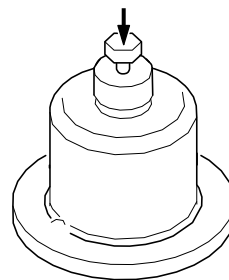
- Even though the hydraulic circuit has been left for a long time after engine stop, sometimes the pressure still remains inside the hydraulic circuit. Before refilling or draining the hydraulic oil, or inspecting or maintaining the machine, always release the pressure in the hydraulic lines by using the "Pressure Release" function as described in Chapter 2, or by pressing the air breather of the hydraulic oil tank and loosening the connecting parts of the related hoses and connectors.

High pressure oil can penetrate the skin or eyes and cause injury, blindness or death. Fluid escaping from a small hole can be almost invisible.

- Always wear a face shield, protective glasses and gloves when inspecting for leaks.
- Always use a piece of cardboard or wood to inspect for suspected leaks.

If oil is injected into the skin, it must be removed within a few hours by a doctor familiar with this type of injury.

High pressure oil from even a pin hole leak can penetrate the skin or eyes and cause severe injury or blindness.



OK



HIGH PRESSURE FUEL IN THE FUEL LINES

During engine running, high pressure is generated inside the fuel lines of the engine.
After engine stop, wait 1 minute before starting inspection and maintenance.

HIGH PRESSURE OIL HOSE/PIPING

Leakage of oil or fuel from the hose or piping may cause a fire or malfunction of the machine. Stop working immediately whenever looseness of or leakage from the installation parts of the hoses or piping are found and tighten or repair them using proper repair procedures and tightening torque.

Consult with your KOBELCO authorized dealer if damage or deformation of the hoses or piping is found.

The hoses in below-mentioned conditions are required to be replaced.

- A damaged hose or hose with a deformed fitting.
- The sheathing material of the hose has scratches or cuttings, or exposes the wire reinforcement layer.
- A part of the sheathing material is swelled.
- A part of the hose shows a sign of twist or crush.

ELECTRIC SHOCK

Work on the machine's electrical equipment may only be carried out by skilled electrical personnel or trained personnel under the supervision of an electrician in accordance with electrical regulations for the country in which this machine is to be used.

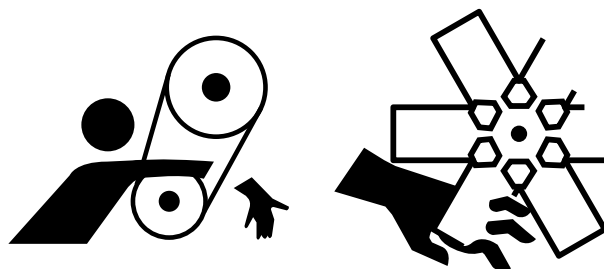
When working on energized equipment, always have another person positioned near the emergency-off or main switch and overvoltage release.

Contact your authorized KOBELCO dealer for assistance.

ROTATING PARTS

Stay clear of all rotating and moving parts.

- Wrapping or entanglement may result in serious injury or death. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the rotating fan and running fan belts. Never operate machine without guarding in place.
- Do not drop or insert tools into the fan or fan belt area while machine is running. They may be ejected at high speed and cause serious personal injury or death.
- Always have an operator at the controls to shut down the machine if the machine needs to be running for maintenance activity or an inspection. The operator and the maintenance personnel must have a means of communication when performing these tasks.

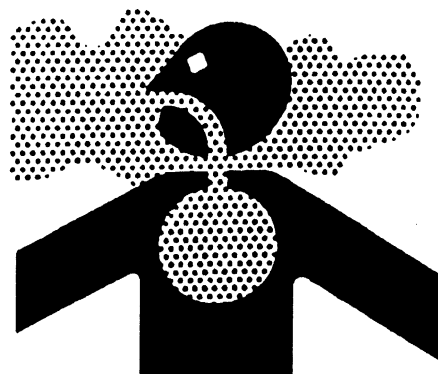


VENTILATION PRECAUTIONS

Never operate the engine in an enclosed area without adequate ventilation. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide. Inspecting and maintaining the machine indoors or in a place with poor ventilation could cause serious injury or death.

Adequate ventilation is needed when inspecting, maintaining or running the machine indoors. Fully ventilate the work area, especially when handling fuel, cleaning solvent or paint.

If the natural ventilation is poor, install ventilators, fans, exhaust extension pipes or other artificial venting devices.



[1. SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS]

CONNECTING, DISCONNECTING AND STORING ATTACHMENT / EQUIPMENT

To prevent serious injury or death:

- Always follow the instructions from your supervisor and the instructions in this manual when connecting or disconnecting the attachment /equipment.
- Secure the attachment /equipment to prevent them from falling over when stored.



SECURELY BLOCK THE MACHINE OR ANY COMPONENT THAT MAY FALL

To prevent serious injury or death, always support all the attachment /equipment when performing maintenance or inspecting underneath the machine or any raised attachment /equipment.

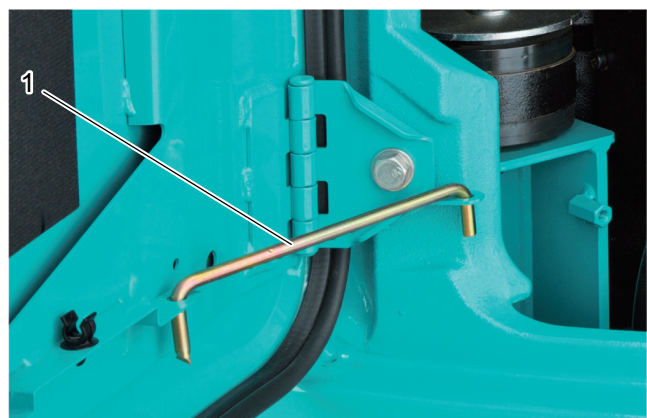
- Before performing maintenance or repairs under the machine, park the machine on firm level ground, lower the attachment to the ground, pull the control lock lever to the locked(up) position, stop engine, and remove the key.
- Securely block the tracks.
- If you must work beneath the raised machine or equipment, always use wood blocks, jack-stands or other rigid and stable supports to support them. Never get under the machine, the attachment /equipment, if they are not sufficiently supported.

This procedure is especially important when working on hydraulic cylinders.



LOCK THE ACCESS PANEL

To prevent serious injury, always secure the opened door panel with the stay(1) when maintaining the machine. If the door panel is not secure, it could move and you may be injured.



DO NOT DROP TOOLS OR PARTS

Falling tools or parts may cause damage to the machine or cause unintended movement of the machine and result in serious injury or death.

- Retrieve any tools that fall immediately.
- Always secure tools or parts that are near the machine and store tools properly after maintenance is complete.

USE CAUTION WHEN ADJUSTING THE CRAWLER TENSION

The crawler adjuster contains high pressure grease. If the tension is adjusted without following the prescribed procedure below, the grease fitting may fly off and discharge grease, resulting in serious injury. Always wear suitable protective gears.

- Always wear suitable protective gear.
- Do not put your face, arms, legs or body in front of the grease fitting. If grease contacts your skin, wash completely with soap and water to avoid skin irritation.
- Loosen the grease fitting one turn to gradually relieve pressure. If grease does not come out after one turn of the grease fitting, there is a problem. Call your KOBELCO authorized dealer for assistance.
- Loosen the grease fitting slowly.
After relieving the grease pressure, see "ADJUSTING CRAWLER TENSION" in Chapter 4 for additional information about how to adjust the crawler tension.



DO NOT DISASSEMBLE THE RECOIL SPRING

Never attempt to disassemble the recoil spring. The recoil spring assembly acts as a shock absorber for the front idler and contains a powerful spring under tension. If it is disassembled, the spring will eject from the assembly and may result in severe personal injury or death.

If there is an issue with the recoil spring assembly, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer for repair.

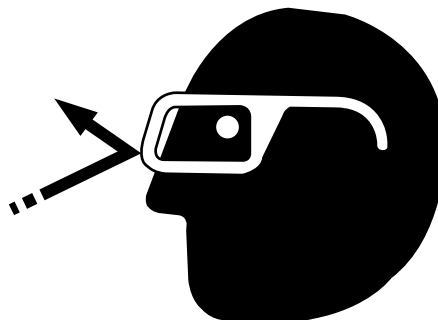
BEFORE HAMMERING METAL PINS, TEETH OR BEARINGS

Always wear required personal protective equipment such as safety glasses when using hammers, as metal fragments or other objects can fly and cause serious personal injury.

Broken metal pieces may cause severe personal injury when hammering metal pins, teeth or bearings.

To avoid injury:

- Wear protective gears such as safety glasses, gloves, hardhat, protective shoes, etc.
- Confirm the work area is clear of personnel before using hammer.
- Use a piece of wood or similar material to absorb the direct impact of the hammer when removing metal pins, teeth or bearings.



BE AWARE OF THE HAZARDS WITH THE REFRIGERANT AND THE AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM

- Do not loosen the refrigerant circuit parts. If refrigerant gets in your eyes, it may cause loss of sight including potential blindness. Do not touch the refrigerant circuit parts. If refrigerant gets on your skin, it may cause frostbite.
- Do not inhale refrigerant gas.
- Keep refrigerant gas away from heat sources.

Dispose of refrigerant according to local codes and regulations of each country.

If you need additional assistance, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer about proper disposal of refrigerant. The temperature of the refrigerant gas compressed by the compressor becomes a high temperature. Until the temperature of the refrigerant gas goes down, do not touch the compressor, the hose, and the condenser by bare hand.

1.6.4 CAUTION WHEN WELDING

NEVER USE HEAT NEAR HYDRAULIC EQUIPMENT, PIPING OR HOSES

When welding, soldering or using a torch, do not expose piping and hoses containing pressurized oil to heat. Heat may create the potential for exposure to flammable gas and result in a fire.

Always cover hydraulic equipment, piping, hoses and other flammable items with fire-proof blankets.

Keep a suitable fire extinguisher readily available.

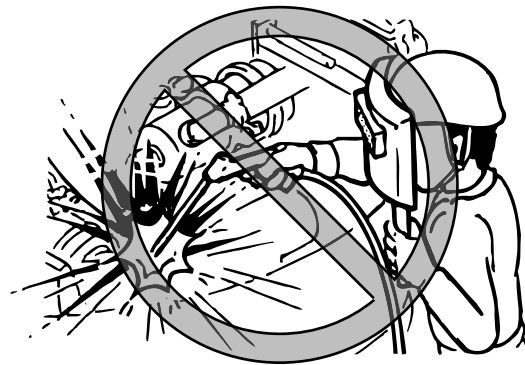


DO NOT HEAT PIPING WITH FLAMMABLE OIL

- Do not weld or perform gas cutting on pipes and tubes filled with flammable oil.
- Remove flammable oil from pipes and tubes using nonflammable solvent before welding and gas cutting.

DO NOT MODIFY MACHINE WITHOUT APPROVAL FROM KOBELCO

- Any and all modifications to this machine must be approved by KOBELCO.
- Unauthorized modification of the machine is not covered by the warranty provided with this machine.



GENERAL GUIDELINES FOR WELDING

Contact manufacturer, or authorized KOBELCO dealer before welding on machine. Welding could damage wires, electronic processors, hoses, and tubes. Any welding on structural parts (as undercarriage, upper frame, equipment parts,...) should only be done by the manufacturer, or authorized KOBELCO dealer. Welding performed by others will void the warranty for your machine.

Do not weld tanks or lines that contain flammable fluids or flammable material. Empty and purge the lines and tanks. Then clean the lines and tanks with a nonflammable solvent prior to welding or flame cutting.

To prevent serious injury or possible fire, welding work must be performed by a certified welder at a facility with welding devices suitable for the task.

BASIC PRECAUTIONS FOR WELDING AND GRINDING

- Always wear protective gears appropriate for welding.
- Perform work in a well-ventilated area.
- Before welding, select a location away from flammable items and have a fire extinguisher nearby. Ensure adequate ventilation.
- Turn the engine off and remove the key.
- Disconnect the negative (-) cable from its battery terminal. When the battery power-off switch is provided, set it to "OFF".
- Remove or adequately shield all components, hoses, tubes, and wires in the area.
- Ensure that the components are properly grounded in order to avoid unwanted arcs. Attach the welder ground cable directly to the area within 1 m (3 ft.) from the part to be welded and on the same parent material. If the welder ground cable is attached to the area near electric parts/connectors, these electric parts/connectors may be damaged.
- Make sure neither the bearing nor the bearing seal is between the welder ground cable and the part to be welded.
- Do not attach the welder ground cable near the pin or cylinder. It will damage the plating on the pin or cylinder.
- Remove paint from any surface to be welded to avoid generating poisonous gas.
- After grinding or welding, confirm there is no smoke or fire near the work area.

1.6.5 AFTER COMPLETION OF MAINTENANCE

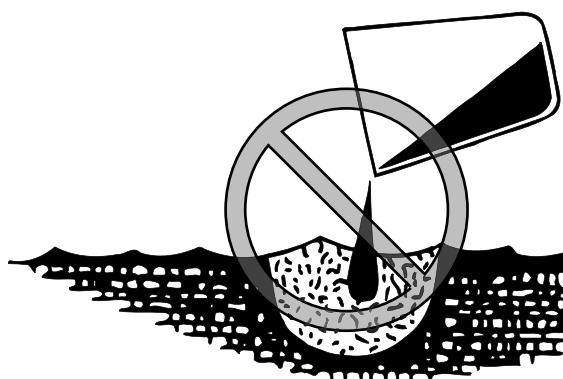
AFTER MAINTENANCE

Before returning machine to service, always confirm there are no leaks and the controls are functioning properly.

- Run the engine at low idle speed and check for oil or water leaks.
- Slowly operate each control lever and check that it is functioning properly.
- Then gradually increase the engine speed and check for oil or water leaks again.
- Manipulate each control lever again and check that it is functioning properly.
- Close the doors, guards, engine hood, etc.

PROPER WASTE DISPOSAL

- Drain used fluids from the machine into leak proof containers. Clearly mark the type of fluid on the containers.
- Never pour used oil or other fluids onto the ground, down a drain or into any body of water. Improper disposal can harm the environment. Contact your local government or public service company to ask about proper disposal methods.
- Properly dispose of oil, fuel, engine coolant, urea water, refrigerant, solvents, filters, batteries and other harmful substances according to local, state and federal environmental regulations for the country in which the machine is located.



1.7 PRECAUTIONS FOR BATTERY



READ THE OPERATOR'S MANUAL

Read, understand and follow the safety messages and instructions in this manual. If these safety messages are not followed, serious injury or death could occur.

1.7.1 HANDLING THE BATTERY

PREVENTION OF ELECTROLYTE BURNS

Wear safety glasses or face shield, and chemical resistant gloves and clothing when handling or servicing batteries.

Battery electrolyte contains dilute sulfuric acid. Electrolyte will damage eyes or skin on contact. If battery electrolyte contacts skin or eyes, flush affected areas immediately with a large amount of fresh water, then seek medical attention.

Wash hands after touching batteries and connectors.



BATTERY EXPLOSION PREVENTION

- Always keep cigarettes, flames and other ignition sources away from batteries.
Batteries give off hydrogen gases that can explode and cause serious injury or death.
- Always keep all battery caps tightly secured.



CHARGING THE BATTERY

See "USING JUMPER CABLES" in Chapter 3.

REPLACING THE BATTERY

See "CHECKING BATTERY VOLTAGE" in Chapter 4.

BATTERY DISPOSAL

Dispose of batteries according to local codes and regulations of each country.

If you need additional assistance, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer about proper disposal of used batteries.

1.8 HANDLING OF THE ACCUMULATOR OR GAS SPRING

**WARNING**

READ THE OPERATOR'S MANUAL

Read, understand and follow the safety messages and instructions in this manual. If these safety messages are not followed, serious injury or death could occur.

High pressured nitrogen gas is sealed inside the accumulator or gas spring.

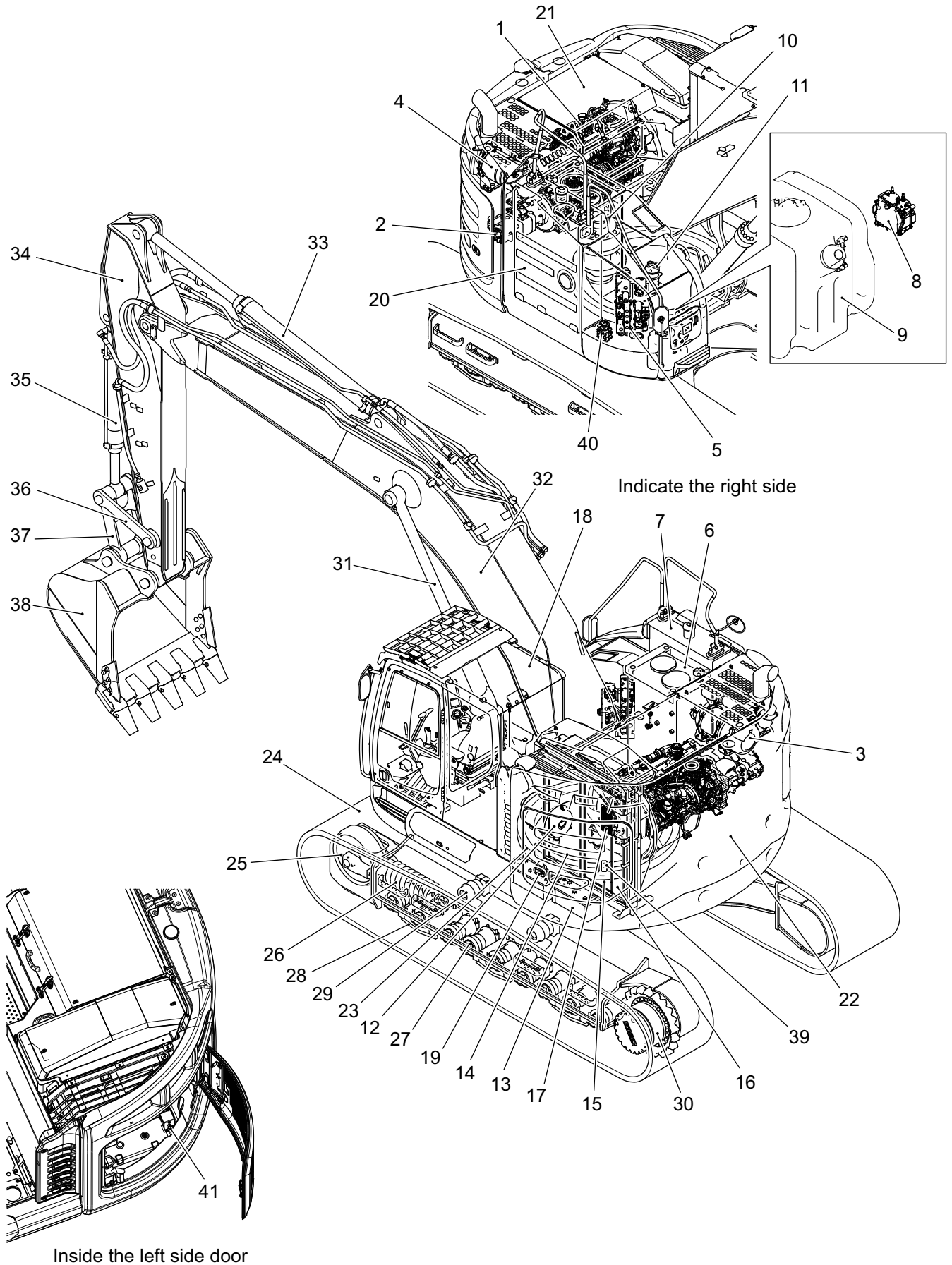
To prevent serious injury or death:

- Never attempt to disassemble accumulator or gas spring.
- Never drill or weld, or perform gas cutting on accumulator or gas spring.
- Keep fire and other ignition sources away from the accumulator or gas spring.
- Never throw accumulator or gas spring into fire.
- Ask your KOBELCO authorized dealer to vent the gas from the accumulator or to remove the gas spring before disposal.



2. MACHINE FAMILIARIZATION

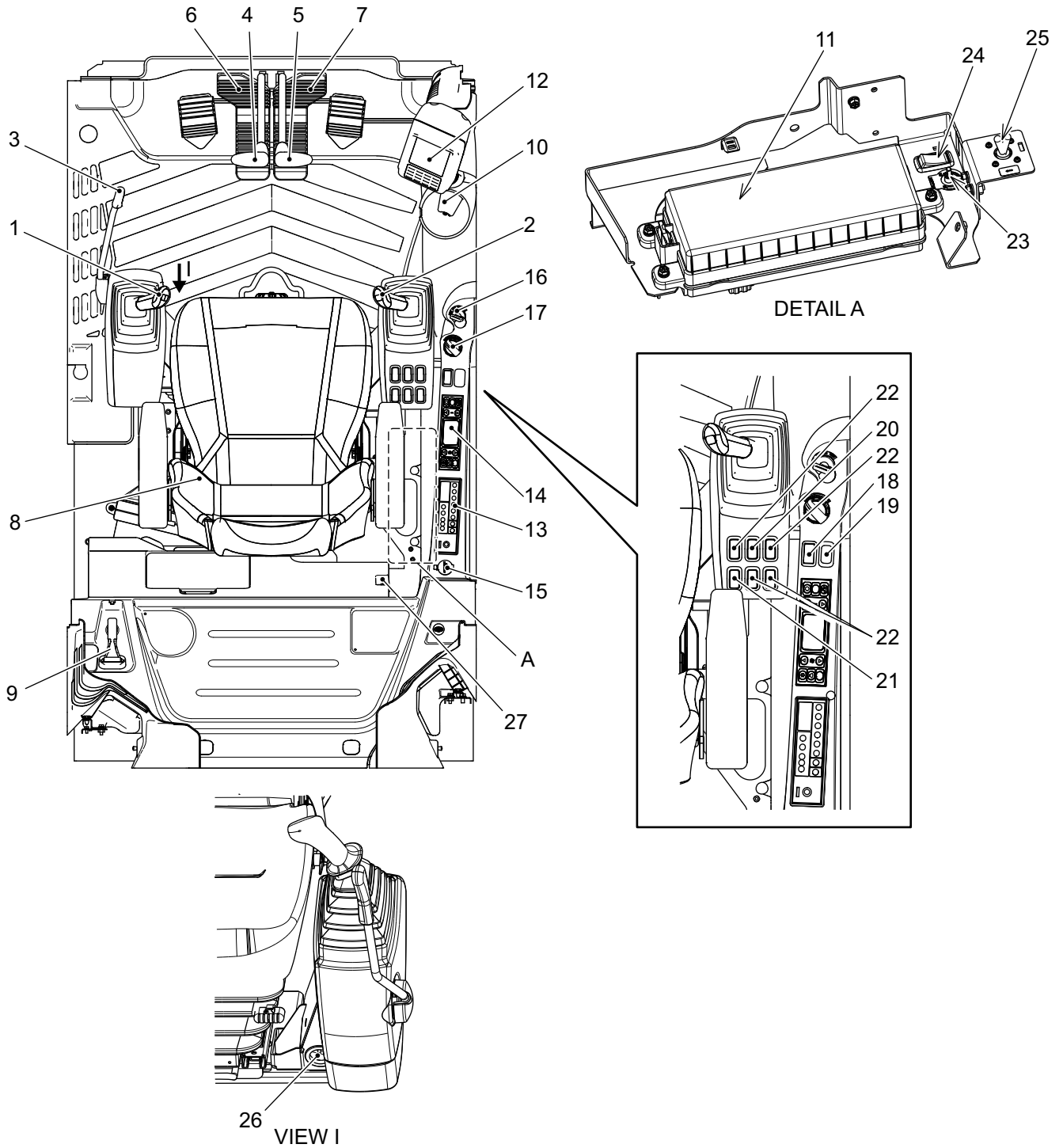
2.1 BASIC COMPONENTS OF THE MACHINE



[2. MACHINE FAMILIARIZATION]

Item	Name	Item	Name	Item	Name
1	Engine	15	Radiator	29	Upper roller
2	Hydraulic pump	16	Intercooler	30	Travel motor
3	Diesel particulate filter (DPF)	17	Fuel cooler	31	Boom cylinder
4	SCR	18	Cab	32	Boom
5	Control valve	19	Left side door	33	Arm cylinder
6	Hydraulic oil tank	20	Right side door	34	Arm
7	Fuel tank	21	Engine hood	35	Bucket cylinder
8	DEF/AdBlue pump	22	Counterweight	36	Idler link
9	DEF/AdBlue tank	23	Swing bearing	37	Bucket link
10	Swing motor	24	Crawler	38	Bucket
11	Swivel joint	25	Front idler	39	Swing flasher
12	Air cleaner	26	Crawler adjuster	40	Rotary multi-control valve
13	Battery	27	Lower Roller	41	Battery power-off switch
14	Oil cooler	28	Track guide		

2.2 OPERATOR'S STATION NOMENCLATURE

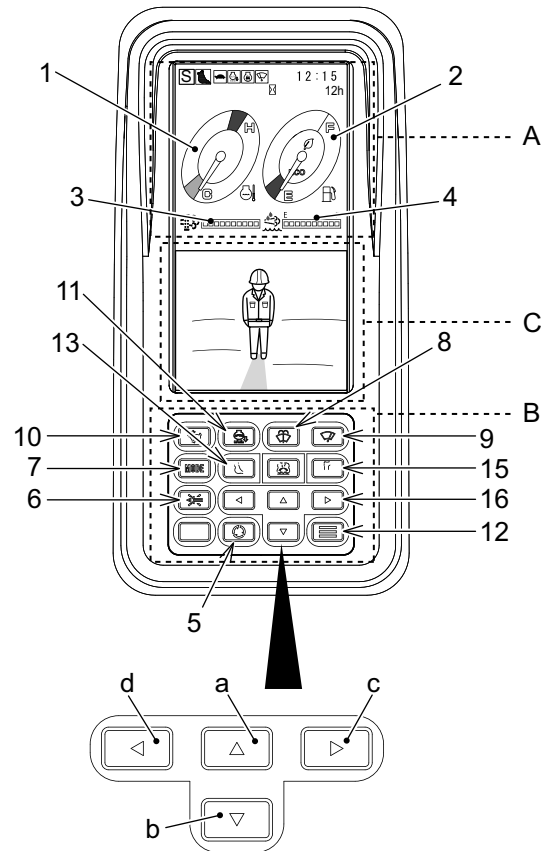


[2. MACHINE FAMILIARIZATION]

Item	Name	Item	Name
1	Left control lever (with horn switch)	15	12 V power supply
2	Right control lever	16	Starter switch
3	Pilot control shut-off Lever	17	Engine throttle
4	Left travel lever	18	Working light (boom and deck)
5	Right travel lever	19	DPF manual regeneration switch
6	Left travel pedal	20	Heavy lift switch
7	Right travel pedal	21	Pressure release switch
8	Operator's seat	22	Cap (Optionally installed switch)
9	Life hammer	23	Engine throttle for redundant mode
10	Cup holder	24	Swing parking brake release switch
11	Fuse and relay box	25	KPSS release switch
12	Gauge cluster	26	Engine stop switch
13	Radio	27	USB port/external input terminal (AUX)
14	Air conditioner operation panel		

2.3 GAUGE CLUSTER

The gauge cluster consists of A. meter (fuel level and engine coolant temperature), B. switch panel, and C. multi-display.



Symbol	Item	Name	Item	Name
A. Meter	1	Engine coolant temperature meter	3	Soot deposition meter
	2	Fuel level meter	4	DEF/AdBlue level gauge
B. Switch panel	5	Screen change switch	13	Digging switch
	6	Buzzer stop switch	14	Nibbler switch
	7	Work mode select switch	15	Breaker switch
	8	Washer switch	16	Arrow switch
	9	Wiper switch	A	Up arrow switch
	10	Travel speed select switch	b	Down arrow switch
	11	Auto acceleration switch	c	Right arrow switch
	12	Menu switch	d	Left arrow switch
C Display	17	Multi-display		

CAUTION

- When a warning is displayed on the multi-display, stop your work immediately and inspect and maintain the failure part.

For inspecting or maintaining, see "MAINTENANCE" in Chapter 4.

- The indications on the multi-display do not assure the condition of the machine.
- The visual checking should be carried out for the maintenance and inspection of the machine, without relying on the multi-display only.

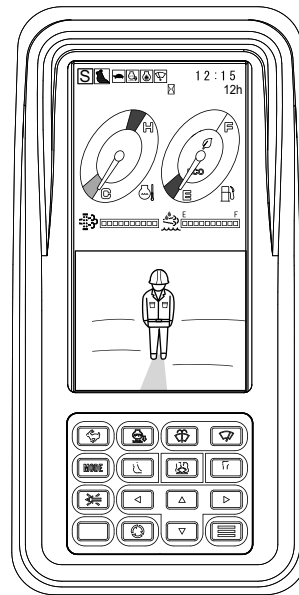
2.3.1 MULTI-DISPLAY

The multi-display can be roughly categorized into the following seven functions.

- Main Screen
- Switch Operation Display
- Warning Display
- Nibbler and Breaker Mode Display
- User Menu Display
- Picture of Rearview Camera
- Fuel Efficiency Graph Display

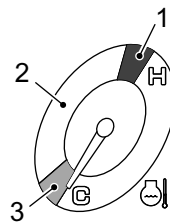
After starting the engine, usually main screen is shown as in the figure.

When the side camera (option) is provided, the picture of the rearview camera is not displayed.



2.3.2 ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE METER

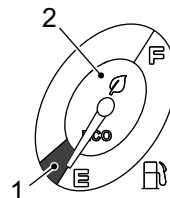
The meter indicates the temperature of the engine coolant. After turning the starter switch "ON", the engine coolant temperature meter is displayed on the multi-display. Water temperature is indicated with a pointer, and the water temperature is normal if it is within the white range. When the water temperature is low, it points the blue range. When it points the red range during operation, it shows overheat state. At that time, set the engine throttle to the low idle position, pull up the control lock lever to the locked(up) position, and do not perform any lever operations until the pointer is in the white range.



- (1) Red: Overheat
- (2) White: Normal
- (3) Blue: Low

2.3.3 FUEL LEVEL METER

The meter shows the amount of fuel in the fuel tank. After turning the starter switch "ON", the fuel level meter is displayed on the multi-display. The amount of fuel is indicated with a pointer, and when the fuel level is low, the pointer points E. When the fuel level is low, see "CHECKING FUEL LEVEL AND MAKING UP" in Chapter 3, and supply fuel.



During the low fuel consumption operation, "ECO green mark" turns on.

- (1) Red: Refuel is required
- (2) Green: ECO green mark

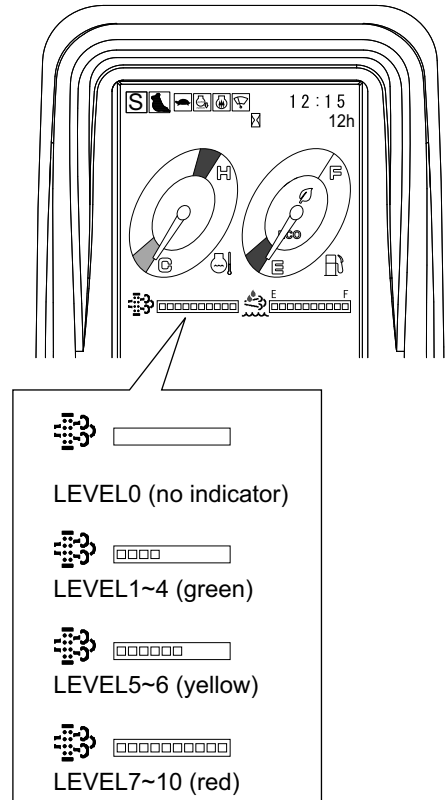
2.3.4 SOOT DEPOSITION METER

The meter shows the soot amount accumulated in the DPF filter. After turning the starter switch "ON", the soot deposition meter is displayed.

It shows the level in 10 levels. As the amount of soot increases, the level goes up.

The soot amount shown in this deposition meter is approximate amount. When soot accumulates, the warning is displayed in the multi-display and the warning sounds. Then, see "ABOUT MANUAL REGENERATION" in Chapter 4, and perform manual regeneration.

- Level 0: No display
- Level 1 to 4: Green
- Level 5 to 6: Yellow
- Level 7 to 10: Red

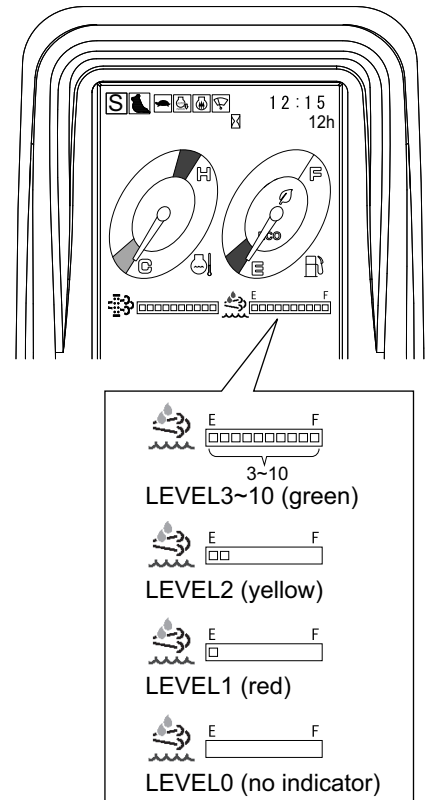


2.3.5 DEF/ADBLUE LEVEL GAUGE

The gauge indicates the DEF/AdBlue level in the DEF/AdBlue tank. After turning the starter switch "ON", the level gauge is displayed on the multi-display.

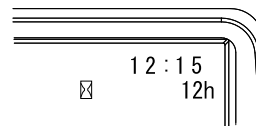
It shows the level in 10 levels. As the DEF/AdBlue amount goes lower, the level number decreases. It is adequate when DEF/AdBlue is Level 3 (Green) or above. The warning is displayed and the warning sounds when the level gauge becomes Level 2 (Yellow), Level 1 (Red), and Level 0 (No display). At that time, see "CHECKING DEF/ADBLUE LEVEL AND REFILLING". in Chapter 3.

- Level 3 to 10: Green
- Level 2: Yellow
- Level 1: Red
- Level 0: No display



2.3.6 HOUR METER

This indicates the total time the engine has run. As long as the engine is running the hour meter continues to count, even if the machine is not traveling. When the engine is running, the meter counts up 1 every hour, regardless of the engine speed. Use the count as the reference for inspection and maintenance intervals.



2.3.7 SCREEN CHANGE SWITCH

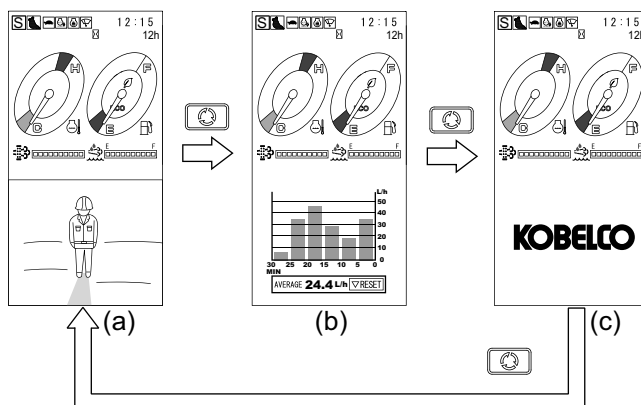
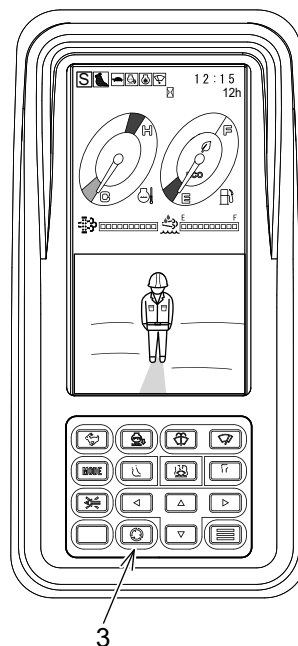
After the starter switch is turned "ON" or the engine is started, the display always shows the picture of the rearward visibility monitoring camera.

Each time "screen change switch" (3) is pressed, the item cycles through "the picture of the rearview camera" (a), "fuel efficiency graph" (b) and "logo mark" (c) in order.

The fuel consumption from 30 minutes ago to now in a 5 minutes interval is displayed on "fuel efficiency graph" (b).

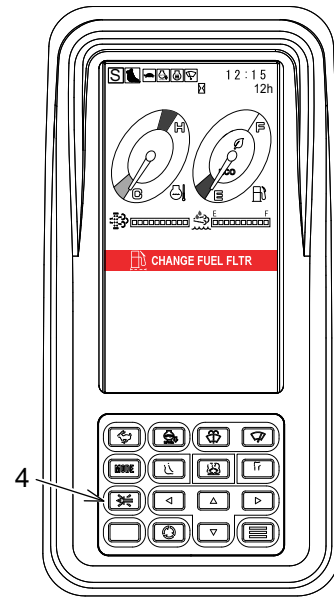
To reset, press and hold the down arrow switch while "fuel efficiency graph" (b) is being displayed until the screen is reset.

When the side camera (option) is provided, the picture of the rearview camera is not displayed.



2.3.8 BUZZER STOP SWITCH

When a warning indication is displayed on the multi-display, press buzzer stop switch (4) to stop the buzzer sound for the items shown in the table.



Items in the Warning Display Lists

Warning Level and Its Description

Level	Description
1	This is largely-concerned with the safety and machine movement. Stop the machine immediately and perform inspection and maintenance.
2	This notifies of the mode change of the machine.
3	This may lead to the failure of the machine. Immediately perform inspection and maintenance.
4	Difficulty may occur in working. Immediately perform inspection and maintenance.
5	This notifies of the machine status and maintenance.

Buzzer sound type















Buzzer sound type	Sounds
Type 1	Continuous
Type 2	Sound 0.2 seconds, stop 0.3 seconds
Type 3	Sound 0.5 seconds, stop 0.5 seconds

























Priority Group A

Level	Display	Warning Details	Buzzer				
			Auto Stop	Manual Stop	Type	Starter Key ON	Engine Running
1	CPU DATA COMMUNICATION ERROR	Mechatronic Controller does not send data.	Unavailable	Available	3	○	○
1	SWING BRAKE DISENGAGED	The swing parking brake release switch is switched to the "RELEASE LOCK" position.	Available (5 sec.)	Available	2	○	○
1	ENGINE STOP	An emergency stop is performed due to low engine oil pressure.	Available (5 sec.)	Unavailable	1	○	—

[2. MACHINE FAMILIARIZATION]

Priority Group B

Level	Display	Warning Details	Buzzer				
			Auto Stop	Manual Stop	Type	Starter Key ON	Engine Running
1	 NIBBLER AND BREAKER SWITCHING FAILURE PARK AND REPAIR MACHINE	Displayed when the selector valve malfunctions.	Unavailable	Available	2	—	○
1	 POOR DEF/ADBLUE QUALITY DETECTED  EXTREME POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS	Displayed when the DEF/AdBlue sensor detects the quality failure of DEF/AdBlue, and the machine becomes inoperable.	Unavailable	Unavailable	1	○	○
1	 DEF/ADBLUE TANK IS EMPTY  EXTREME POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS	Displayed when the DEF/AdBlue level gauge shows Level 0 (no display), and the machine becomes inoperable.	Unavailable	Unavailable	1	○	○
1	 NOx CONTROL SYSTEM FAILURE  EXTREME POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P204F	Displayed when each device and sensor of NOx discharge control system fails or becomes abnormal, and the machine becomes inoperable. (The failure code is an example)	Unavailable	Unavailable	1	○	○
1	 DEF/ADBLUE INJECTION FAILURE  EXTREME POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P204F	Displayed when the DEF/AdBlue dosing module fails or becomes abnormal, and the machine becomes inoperable. (The failure code is an example)	Unavailable	Unavailable	1	○	○
1	 EGR VALVE FAILURE  EXTREME POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P1459	Displayed when the EGR valve fails or becomes abnormal, and the machine becomes inoperable. (The failure code is an example)	Unavailable	Unavailable	1	○	○
2	WARM FINISH WARM-UP	Displayed when automatic warming-up is done.	Available (5 seconds)	Unavailable	2	—	○
2	 1.LIFT UP LOCK LEVER 2.PUSH REGENERATION SW.	Displayed when soot is accumulated in DPF, and manual regeneration is necessary.	Unavailable	Available	3	—	○
2	 1.LIFT UP LOCK LEVER 2.PUSH REGENERATION SW.  EXHAUST GAS AFTER TREATMENT EQUIPMENT WILL BE DAMAGED	Displayed when soot accumulated in DPF becomes Level 7 (Red) or more of the soot deposition meter, and manual regeneration is necessary.	Unavailable	Unavailable	2	—	○

Level	Display	Warning Details	Buzzer				
			Auto Stop	Manual Stop	Type	Starter Key ON	Engine Running
2	 POOR DEF/ADBLUE QUALITY DETECTED  POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS	Displayed when the DEF/AdBlue sensor detects the quality failure of DEF/AdBlue, and the engine output is limited.	Unavailable	Unavailable	2	○	○
2	 DEF/ADBLUE LEVEL LOW  POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS	Displayed when the DEF/AdBlue level gauge becomes Level 1 (Red), and the engine output is limited.	Unavailable	Unavailable	2	○	○
2	 NOx CONTROL SYSTEM FAILURE  POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P204F	Displayed when each device and sensor of the NOx discharge control system fails or becomes abnormal, and the engine output is limited. (The failure code is an example)	Unavailable	Unavailable	2	○	○
2	 DEF/ADBLUE INJECTION FAILURE  POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P204F	Displayed when the DEF/AdBlue dosing module fails or becomes abnormal, and the engine output is limited. (The failure code is an example)	Unavailable	Unavailable	2	○	○
2	 EGR VALVE FAILURE  POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P1459	Displayed when the EGR valve fails or becomes abnormal, and the engine output is limited. (The failure code is an example)	Unavailable	Unavailable	2	○	○
2	 NOx CONTROL SYSTEM FAILURE  TORQUE LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P204F	Displayed when each device of NOx discharge control system or sensor fails or becomes abnormal, and the engine output is limited. (The failure code is an example)	Unavailable	Available	3	○	○
2	 DEF/ADBLUE INJECTION FAILURE  TORQUE LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P204F	Displayed when the DEF/AdBlue dosing module fails or becomes abnormal, and the engine output is limited. (The failure code is an example)	Unavailable	Available	3	○	○
2	 EGR VALVE FAILURE  TORQUE LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P1459	Displayed when the EGR valve fails or becomes abnormal, and the engine output is limited. (The failure code is an exam)	Unavailable	Available	3	○	○
3	 POOR DEF/ADBLUE QUALITY DETECTED	Displayed when the DEF/AdBlue sensor detects the quality failure of DEF/AdBlue.	Unavailable	Available	3	○	○
3	 DEF/ADBLUE LEVEL LOW	Displayed when the DEF/AdBlue level gauge becomes Level 2 (Yellow).	Unavailable	Available	3→2※1	○	○
3	 EXHAUST GAS AFTER TREATMENT EQUIPMENT FAILURE	Displayed when the soot deposition meter level reaches 10 (Red), and no regeneration can be done.	Unavailable	Unavailable	2	—	○
3	 LOW ENG OIL PRESS.	Displayed when the engine oil pressure reduces, and disconnection is detected.	Unavailable	Available	2	○	○
3	 COOLANT OVERHEATING	Displayed when the engine coolant temperature rises.	Unavailable	Available	3	○	○
3	 LOW COOLANT LEVEL	Displayed when the radiator upper tank water level becomes low.	Unavailable	Available	3	○	○
3	 WATER ACCUMULATES IN FUEL FLTR	Displayed when the water level of the water separator (fuel filter) increases.	Unavailable	Available	3	○	○
3	 CLOGGED AIR FLTR	Displayed when the air cleaner element is clogged.	Unavailable	Available	3	○	○
3	I113	Self-diagnosis (failure on the pressure sensor, or the proportional valve, etc.)	Unavailable	Available	3	○	○

*1: If the buzzer keeps sounding due to DEF/AdBlue not being refilled, the type of buzzer sound changes.
For details on SCR system related warnings, see "SCR SYSTEM and DEF/AdBlue" in Chapter 4.

2.3.9 WORK MODE SELECT SWITCH

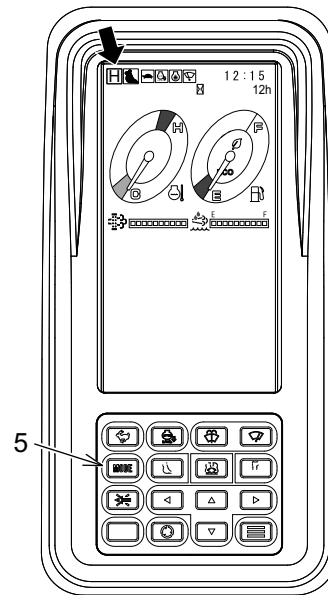
Select the proper work mode from three modes shown below according to the work condition and purpose. The work mode is switched in order of "S" -> "E" -> "H" -> "S" each time Work Mode Select Switch (5) is pressed.

The selected work mode is displayed on the left upper corner of the multi-display for confirmation.

H: H mode (for heavy digging work)

S: S mode (for standard digging work and loading operations)

E: E mode (for lower fuel consumption)



CAUTION

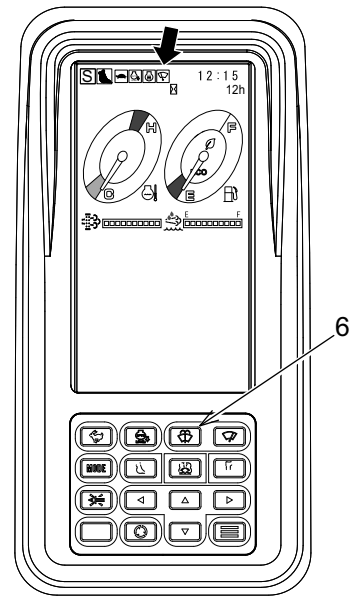
The work mode after the engine start always starts from "S" mode.
Before beginning the work, make sure the selected work mode is correct.

Notice

For details on the selection criteria of each work mode, see "SELECTION OF WORK MODE" in Chapter 3.

2.3.10 WASHER SWITCH

While washer switch (6) is being pressed, the washer fluid is sprayed through the nozzle of front window. The washer fluid reservoir is located under the floor plate inside the cab.



2

Notice

Make sure that the washer reservoir is filled with the washer fluid before operating the washer.

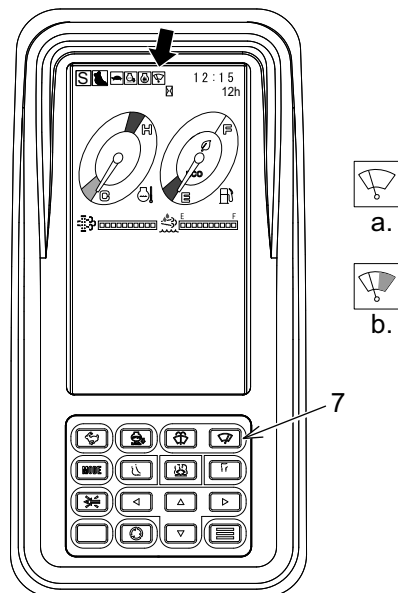
2.3.11 WIPER SWITCH

Press the switch (7) to operate the wiper on the front window. When the wiper switch is in operation, "Intermittent" (a) or "Continuous" (b) is displayed on the upper part of the multi-display.

Press once: The wiper moves intermittently.

Press twice: The wiper moves continuously.

Press three times: The wiper stops moving.



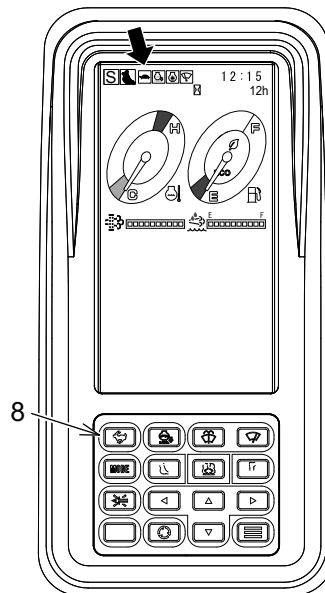
2.3.12 TRAVEL SPEED SELECT SWITCH



Loading/unloading the machine

LOW 1st (turtle) speed traveling is necessary to load and unload the machine on to a trailer. During loading or unloading, do not change the travel speed.

The travel speed select switch is located on the gauge cluster switch panel. Each time the engine is started, the travel speed is automatically set to LOW 1st (turtle) speed. Press the switch (8) on the gauge cluster. The speed is changed to the HIGH 2nd speed and a rabbit is indicated on the multi-display.



LOW 1st speed: turtle



Set to LOW 1st speed when moving the machine on the rough or soft ground, slope, or in the narrow place, or when powerful tractive force is required.

HIGH 2nd speed: rabbit



Set to HIGH 2nd speed when moving the machine on a level and firm ground.

2.3.13 AUTO ACCELERATION SWITCH



WARNING Loading/unloading the machine

When loading or unloading the machine on a trailer, turn the auto acceleration switch off.
If it is operated while the acceleration switch is on, the engine speed changes suddenly.

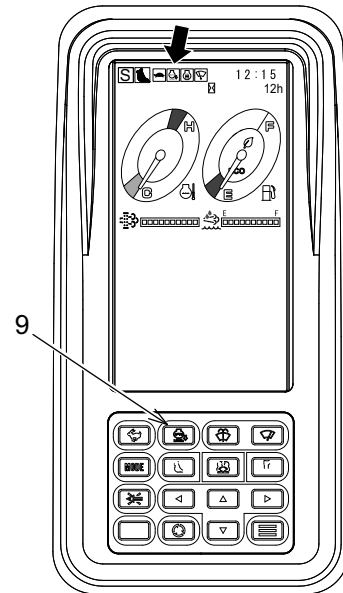
When switch (9) is pressed to turn on, the auto acceleration system activates.

It sets the engine speed to low under the following conditions.

- When the acceleration dial position is set at a higher value than the range of the idle speed.
- When the control levers and/or pedals are not operated for 4 seconds or more.

When the control levers and/or pedals are operated, the engine speed rises back to the set level of the acceleration dial gradually according to the amount of operation of the lever and/or pedals.

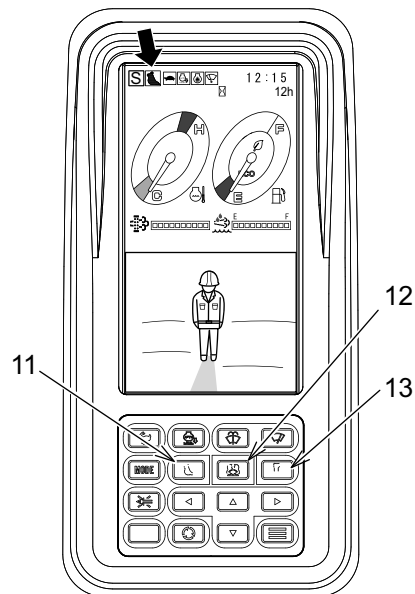
If the switch (9) is pressed to turn off during the auto acceleration operation, the engine speed rises back to the set level of the acceleration dial gradually.



2.3.14 ATTACHMENT MODE SELECT SWITCH

Use the attachment mode select switch to switch between "Digging", "Nibbler", and "Breaker" modes. Select an appropriate mode corresponding to the attachment from three types: "Digging", "Nibbler", or "Breaker" modes. Before operation, always check that the attachment mode is appropriately set.

- (11) Digging Switch
- (12) Nibbler Switch
- (13) Breaker Switch



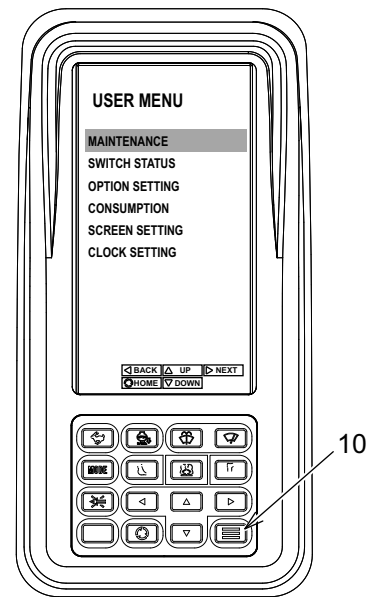
CAUTION

- When working with a hydraulic breaker or a nibbler (crusher) installed, check that an appropriate attachment mode is selected, using the attachment mode select switch as well as the multi-display.
 - When the attachment mode is inappropriate, use the attachment mode select switch to switch to an appropriate mode.
 - When performing breaker work, always select the breaker mode. Working in a mode other than the breaker mode causes damage in the hydraulic equipment and/or breaker.
 - Be sure to place the attachment to the ground and ensure safety before switching the attachment mode. In particular, switching to the breaker mode during nibbler work may cause gripped load to fall off.
 - When the attachment mode icon of "digging", "nibbler", or "breaker" flickers, it tells that the attachment mode is not proper.
-

2.3.15 MENU SWITCH

Press switch (10) to display the user menu on the multi-display.

From here, the user menu settings are available.



- Maintenance schedule setting
- Auto warming up setting
- Auto idling stop function
- Clock Setting
- Contrast adjustment
- Brightness (Day) Adjustment
- Brightness (Night) Adjustment
- Pump flow rate adjustment (Nibbler mode/Breaker mode)
- Consumption

When "Screen Change Switch" (1) is pressed during a adjustment or setting operation, the screen returns to the main screen.

- Engine oil: 500 hours
- Fuel filter: 500 hours
- Hydraulic oil filter: 1,000 hours
- Hydraulic oil: 5,000 hours

-



- 2

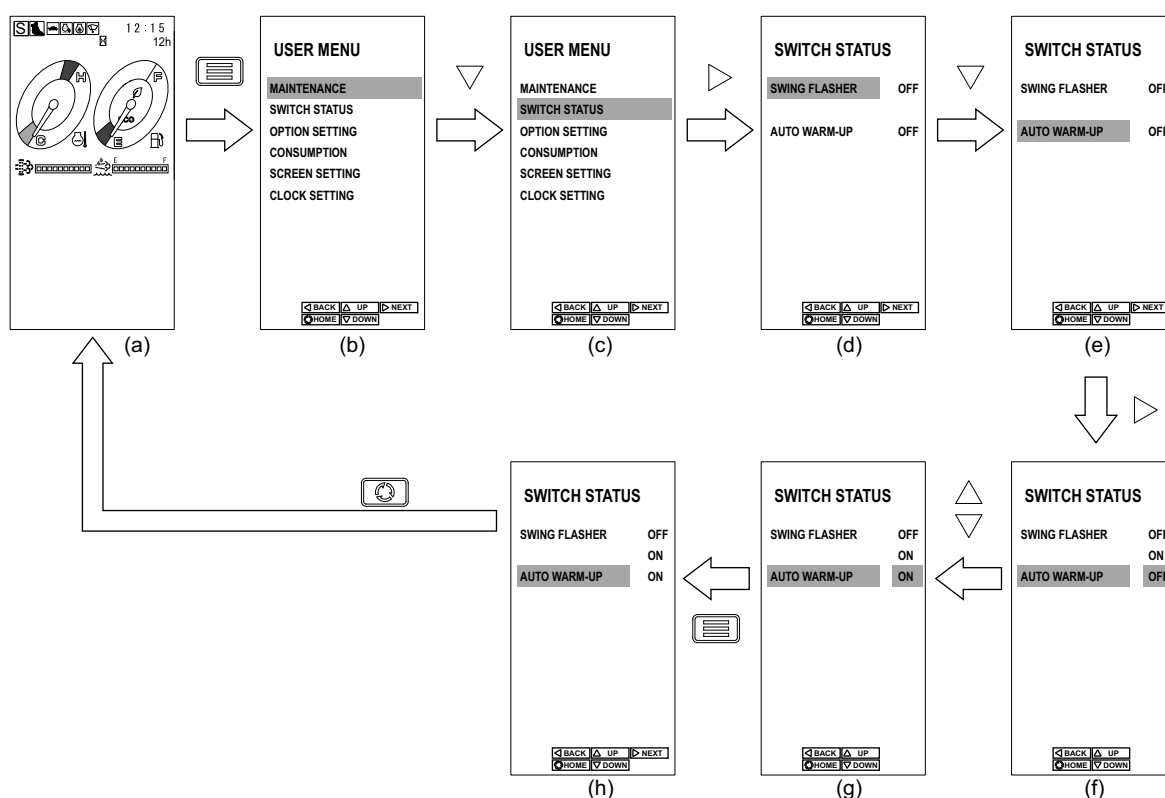
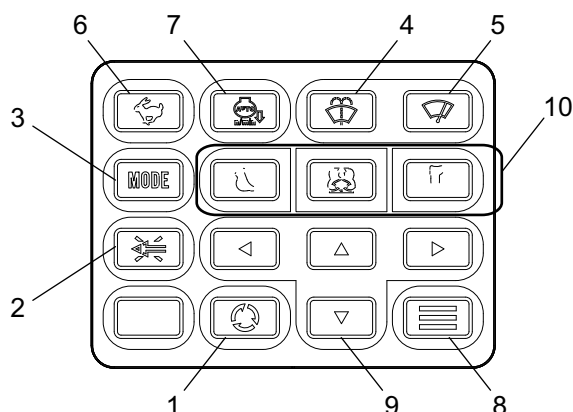
[2. MACHINE FAMILIARIZATION]

AUTO WARMING UP SETTING

CAUTION

- Do not leave the operator's seat during automatic warming-up.
- The attachment/equipment may slowly move to the internal direction but this is not failure.
Check that the surroundings are clear of people and objects for avoiding being caught between the attachment/equipment and the machine, or interfered with the attachment/equipment.

- (1) Screen Change Switch
- (2) Buzzer Stop Switch
- (3) Work Mode Select Switch
- (4) Washer Switch
- (5) Wiper Switch
- (6) Travel Speed Select Switch
- (7) Auto Acceleration Switch
- (8) Menu Switch
- (9) Arrow Switch
- (10) Attachment Mode Select Switch



1. Turn the starter switch "ON" to display main screen (a). Press menu switch (8) to enter user menu screen (b).
2. Using the Up or Down arrow switch, move the cursor to "SWITCH STATUS". Press the Right arrow switch to enter the switch setting.
3. Using the Up or Down arrow switch, move the cursor to "AUTO WARM-UP".
4. Press the Right arrow switch to enter display (f). The background color of "OFF" turns blue.
5. Using the Up or Down arrow switch, select "ON".
6. Press "Menu Switch" (8) to set the status.

At this time, the background color of "ON" turns black.

7. Turn "OFF" the starter key switch once to store the status.
-

Notice

Once "AUTO WARM-UP" is enabled, there is no need to set it again.

8. Pull up the pilot control shut-off lever to the "LOCKED" position.
 9. When the engine is started in cold condition, "AUTO WARM-UP" starts. During warming up of the engine and hydraulic oil, "WARM-UP" is indicated.
-

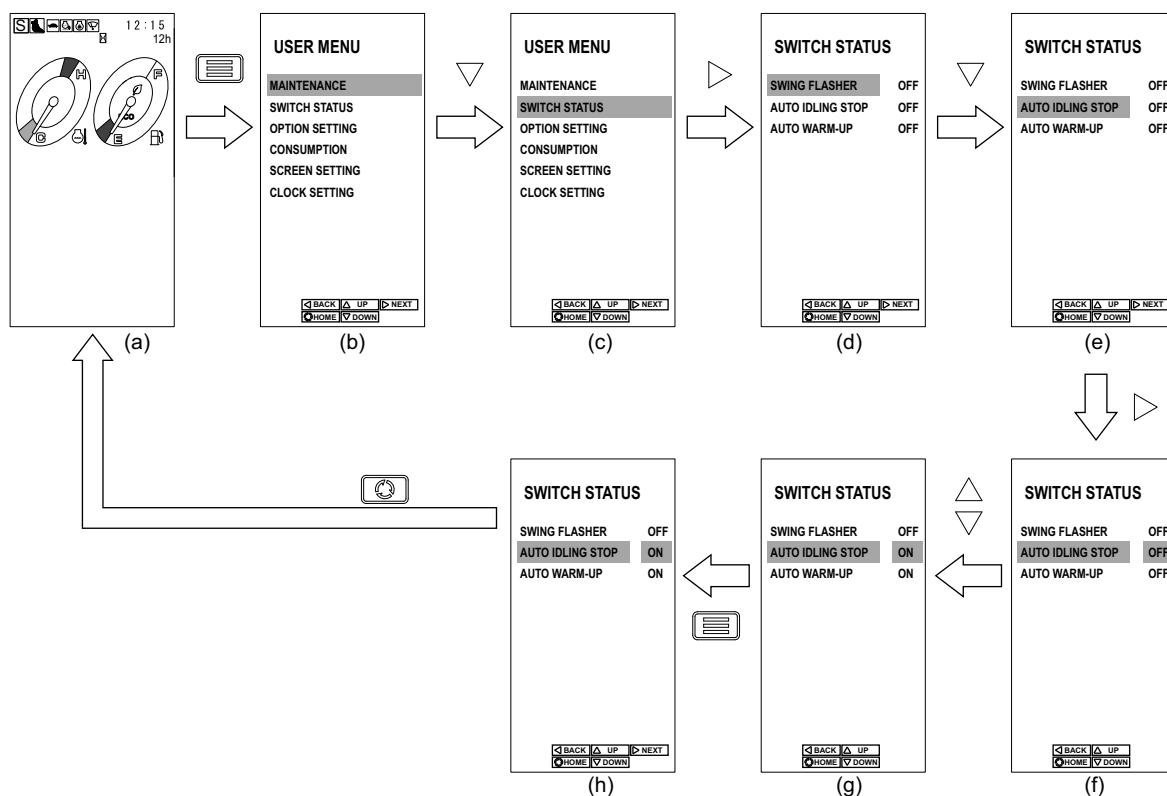
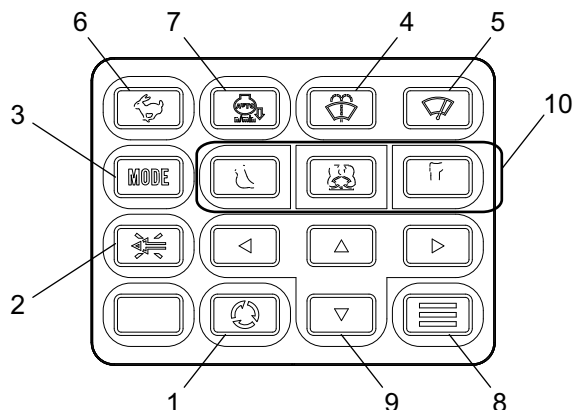
Notice

- If "AUTO WARM-UP" switch is turned "OFF" via the display during hydraulic oil warm-up, the warm-up operation is forced to stop.
 - If a lever is operated during hydraulic oil warm-up, the warm-up operation is stopped temporarily. After that, if the lever is continuously at the neutral position for about 10 seconds, the warm-up operation starts again.
 - When the engine coolant temperature goes down, the automatic warming-up may start.
-
10. After the warm-up operation, "WARM-UP FINISHED" is indicated and the buzzer sounds for 5 seconds to tell the completion of the warm-up operation.

[2. MACHINE FAMILIARIZATION]

AUTO IDLING STOP SETTING

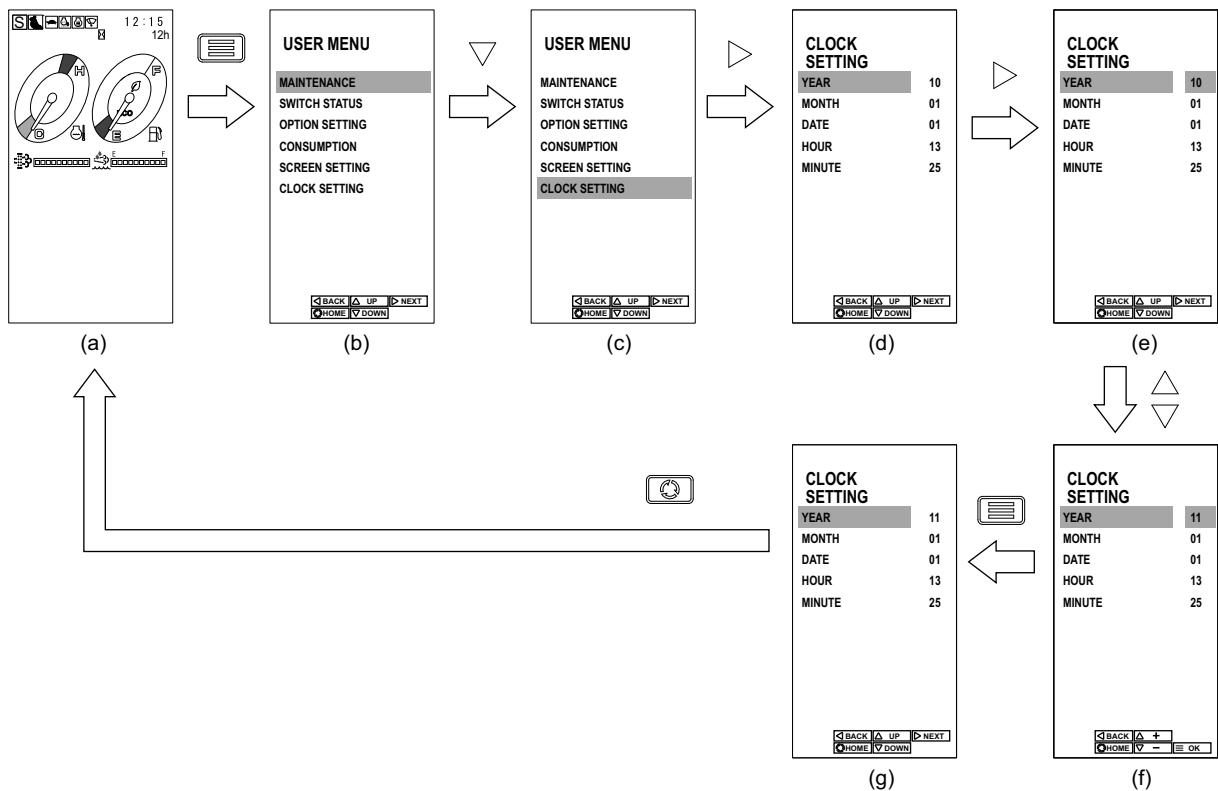
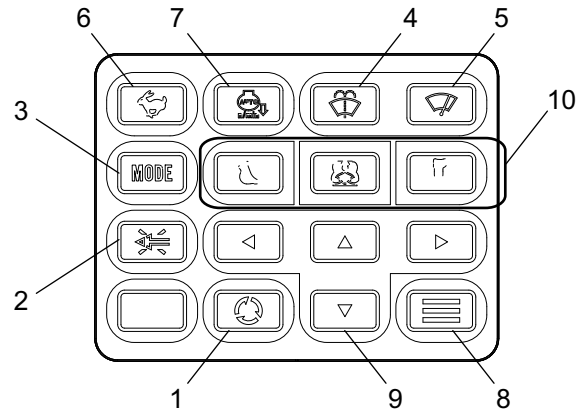
- (1) Screen Change Switch
- (2) Buzzer Stop Switch
- (3) Work Mode Select Switch
- (4) Washer Switch
- (5) Wiper Switch
- (6) Travel Speed Select Switch
- (7) Auto Acceleration Switch
- (8) Menu Switch
- (9) Arrow Switch
- (10) Attachment Mode Select Switch



1. Turn the starter switch "ON" to display main screen (a). Press menu switch (8) to enter user menu screen (b).
2. Using the Up or Down arrow switch, move the cursor to "SWITCH STATUS". Press the Right arrow switch to enter the switch setting.
3. Using the Up or Down arrow switch, move the cursor to "AUTO IDLING STOP".
4. Press the Right arrow switch to enter display (f). The background color of "OFF" turns blue.
5. Using the Up or Down arrow switch, select "ON".
6. Press "Menu Switch" (8) to set the status.
At this time, the background color of "ON" turns black.
7. Turn "OFF" the starter key switch once to store the status.

CLOCK SETTING

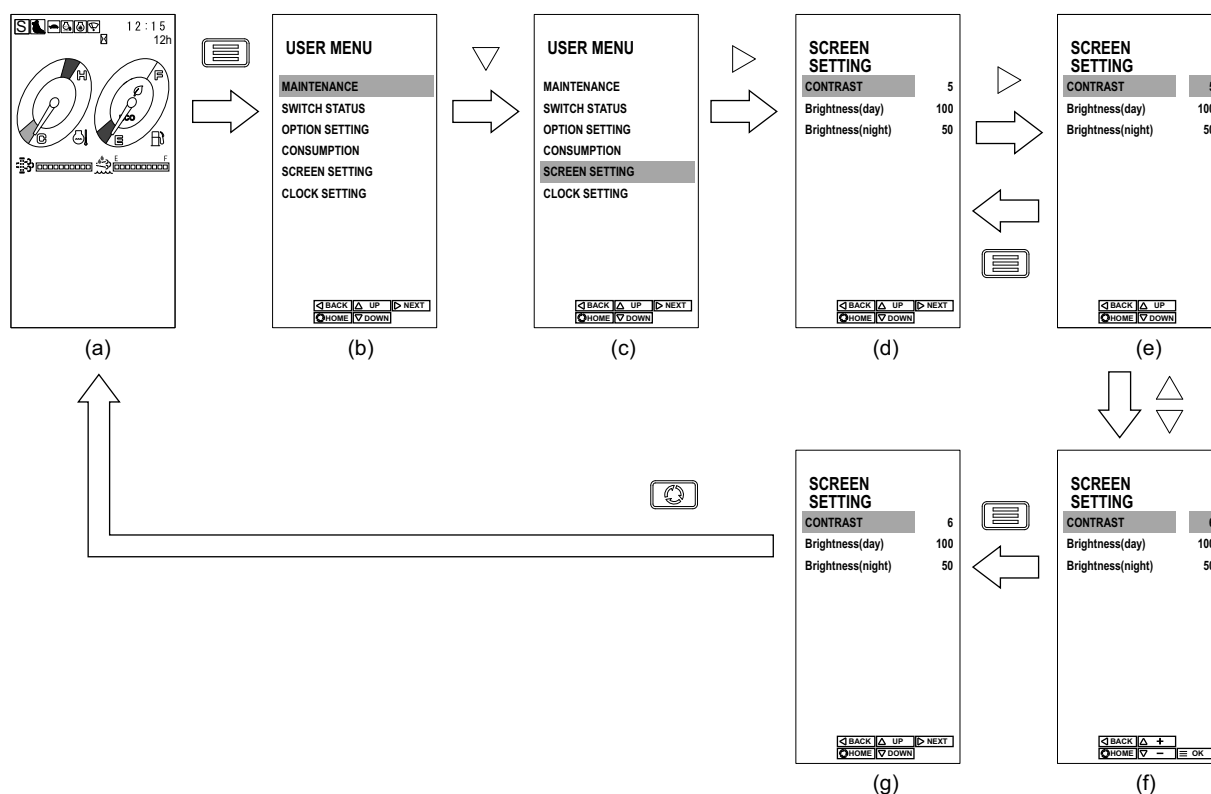
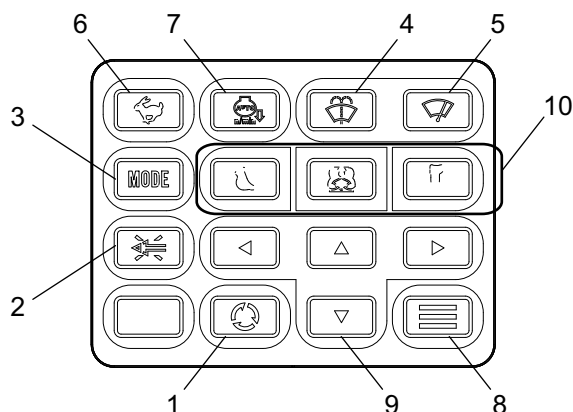
- (1) Screen Change Switch
- (2) Buzzer Stop Switch
- (3) Work Mode Select Switch
- (4) Washer Switch
- (5) Wiper Switch
- (6) Travel Speed Select Switch
- (7) Auto Acceleration Switch
- (8) Menu Switch
- (9) Arrow Switch
- (10) Attachment Mode Select Switch



1. Turn the starter switch "ON" to display main screen (a). Press menu switch (8) to enter user menu screen (b).
2. Using the Up or Down arrow switch, move the cursor to "CLOCK SETTING". Press the Right arrow switch to enter the clock setting.
3. Using the Up and Down arrow switches, select any of "YEAR/MONTH/DAY/HOUR/MINUTE" as display (d).
4. Press the Right arrow switch to enter display (e). The background color of the value turns blue.
5. Using the Up and Down arrow switches, select the desired value.
6. Press menu switch (8) to set the desired value.
At this time, the background color of the value turns black.
7. Press "Screen Change Switch" (1) to return to main screen (a).

CONTRAST ADJUSTMENT

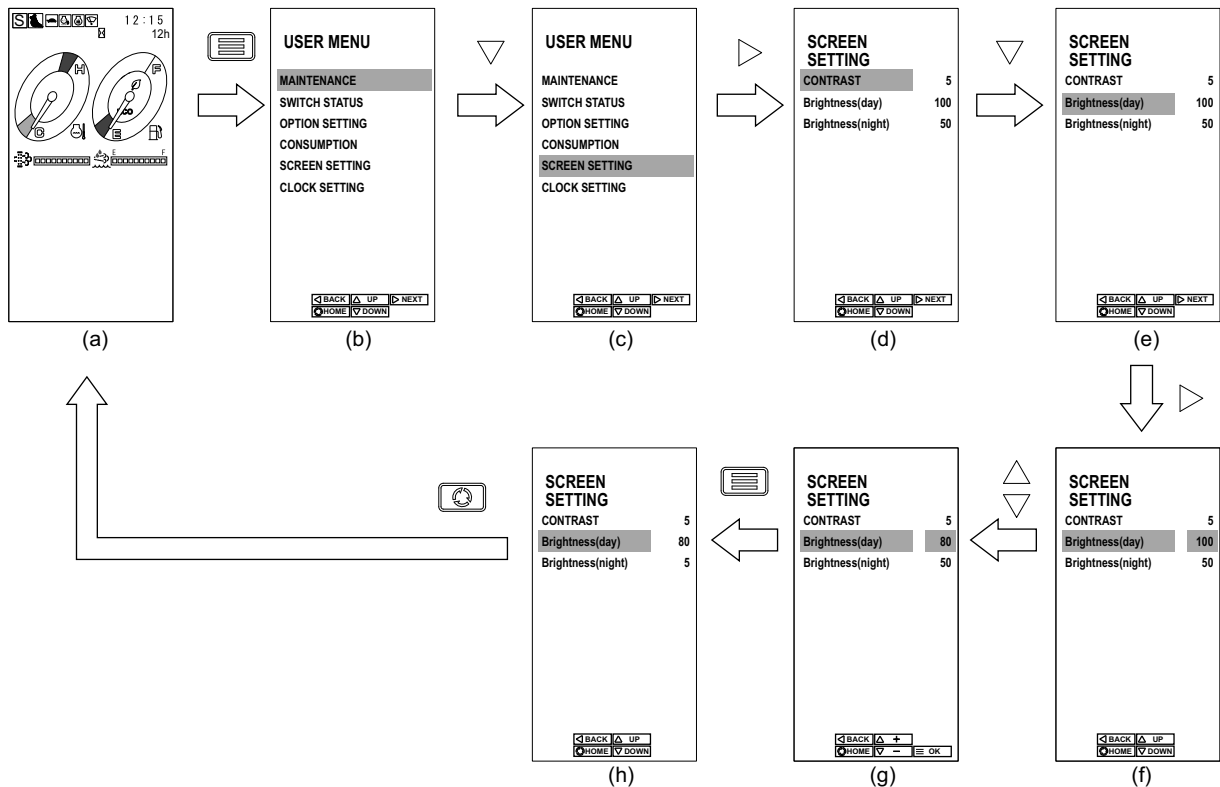
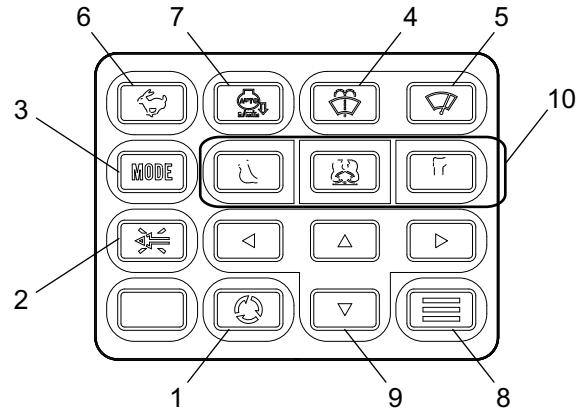
- (1) Screen Change Switch
- (2) Buzzer Stop Switch
- (3) Work Mode Select Switch
- (4) Washer Switch
- (5) Wiper Switch
- (6) Travel Speed Select Switch
- (7) Auto Acceleration Switch
- (8) Menu Switch
- (9) Arrow Switch
- (10) Attachment Mode Select Switch



1. Turn the starter switch "ON" to display main screen (a). Press menu switch (8) to enter user menu screen (b).
2. Using the Up or Down arrow switch, move the cursor to "SCREEN SETTING". Press the Right arrow switch to enter the screen setting.
3. Using the Up or Down arrow switch, move the cursor to "CONTRAST".
4. Press the Right arrow switch to enter display (e). The background color of the value turns blue.
5. Using the Up and Down arrow switches, select the desired values.
The adjustable range is from 1 (Faint) to 10 (Clear).
* The default value is 5.
6. Press menu switch (8) to set the desired value.
At this time, the background color of the value turns black.
7. Press "Screen Change Switch" (1) to return to main screen (a).

BRIGHTNESS (DAY) ADJUSTMENT

- (1) Screen Change Switch
- (2) Buzzer Stop Switch
- (3) Work Mode Select Switch
- (4) Washer Switch
- (5) Wiper Switch
- (6) Travel Speed Select Switch
- (7) Auto Acceleration Switch
- (8) Menu Switch
- (9) Arrow Switch
- (10) Attachment Mode Select Switch

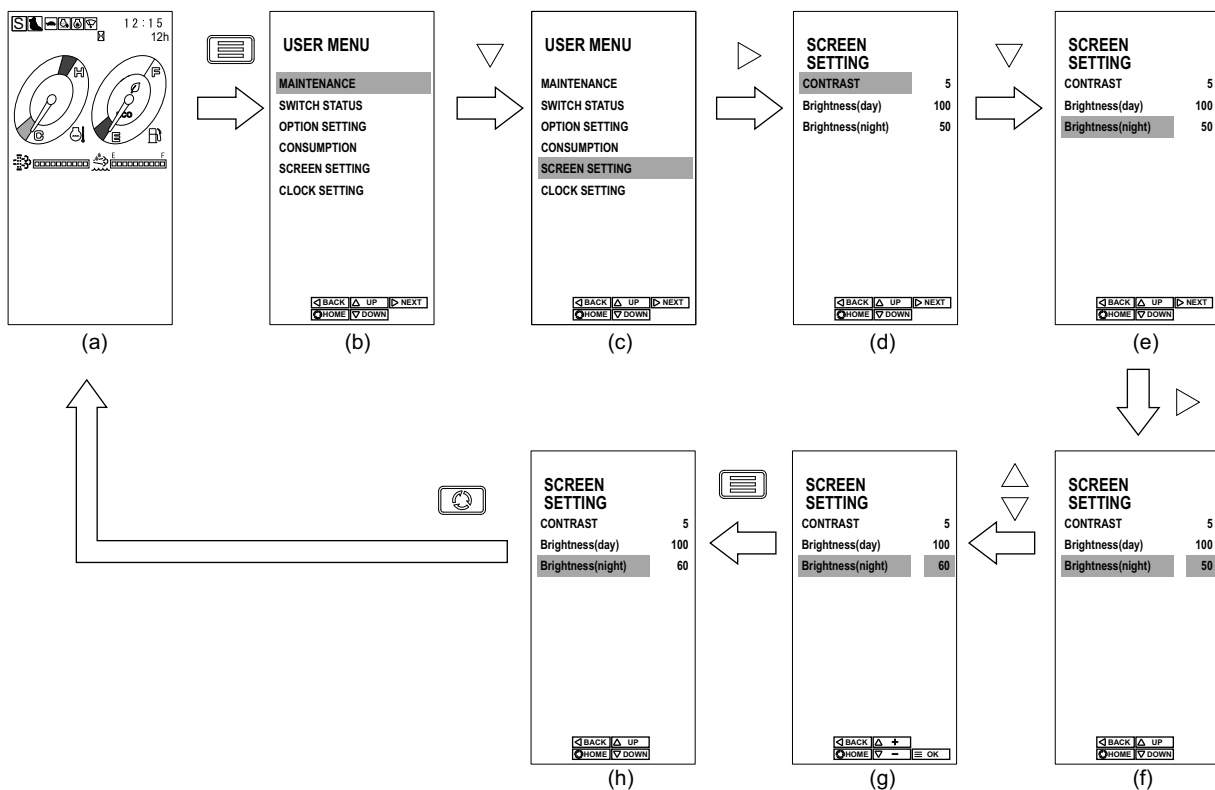
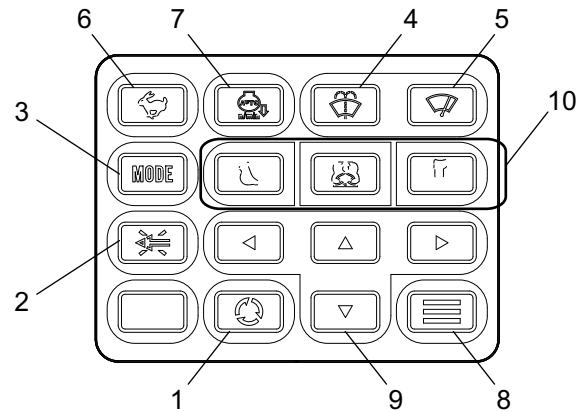


1. Turn the starter switch "ON" to display main screen (a). Press menu switch (8) to enter user menu screen (b).
2. Using the Up or Down arrow switch, move the cursor to "SCREEN SETTING". Press the Right arrow switch to enter the screen setting.
3. Using the up and down arrow switches, move the cursor to "Brightness (day)" as display (e).
4. Press the Right arrow switch to enter display (f). The background color of the value turns blue.
5. Using the Up and Down arrow switches, select the desired values.
Adjustable Range: 1 (Dark) to 100 (Bright)
* The default value is 100.
6. Press menu switch (8) to set the desired value.
At this time, the background color of the value turns black.
7. Press "Screen Change Switch" (1) to return to main screen (a).

[2. MACHINE FAMILIARIZATION]

BRIGHTNESS (NIGHT) ADJUSTMENT

- (1) Screen Change Switch
- (2) Buzzer Stop Switch
- (3) Work Mode Select Switch
- (4) Washer Switch
- (5) Wiper Switch
- (6) Travel Speed Select Switch
- (7) Auto Acceleration Switch
- (8) Menu Switch
- (9) Arrow Switch
- (10) Attachment Mode Select Switch



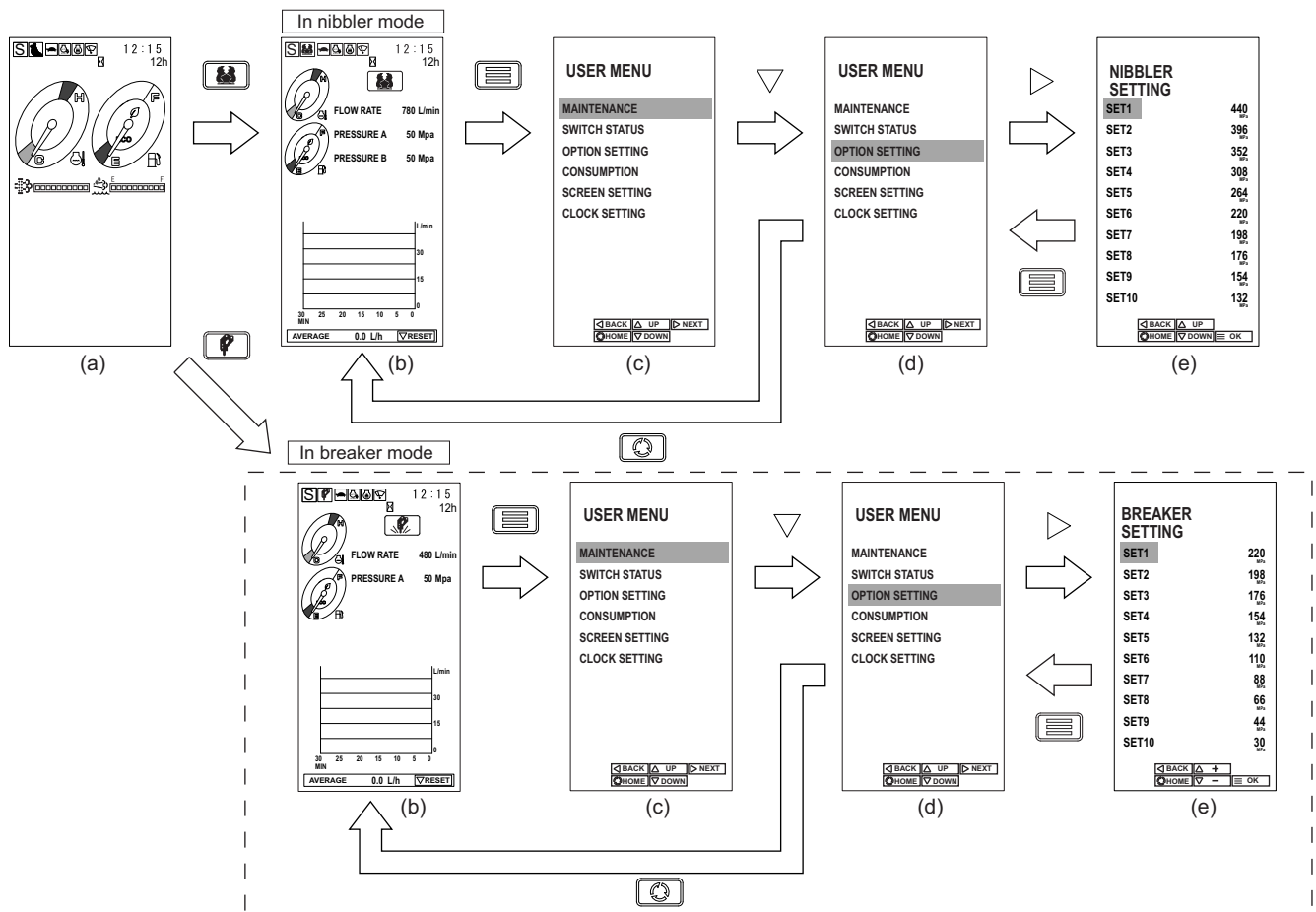
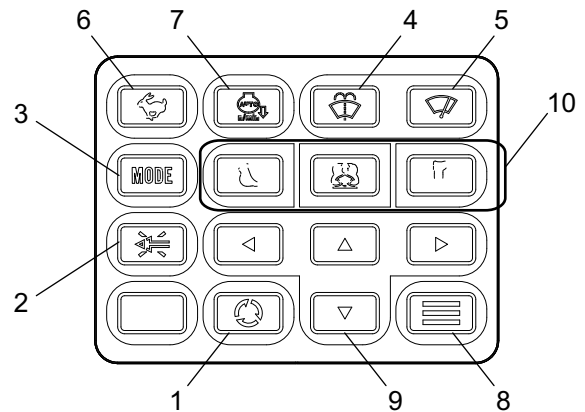
1. Turn the starter switch "ON" to display main screen (a). Press menu switch (8) to enter user menu screen (b).
2. Using the Up or Down arrow switch, move the cursor to "SCREEN SETTING". Press the Right arrow switch to enter the screen setting.
3. Using the up and down arrow switches, move the cursor to "Brightness (night)" as display (e).
4. Press the Right arrow switch to enter display (f). The background color of the value turns blue.
5. Using the Up and Down arrow switches, select the desired values.
Adjustable Range: 1 (Dark) to 100 (Bright)
* The default value is 5.
6. Press menu switch (8) to set the desired value.
At this time, the background color of the value turns black.
7. Press "Screen Change Switch" (1) to return to main screen (a).

PUMP FLOW RATE ADJUSTMENT (NIBBLER MODE/BREAKER MODE)

Notice

If there is no switch operation for 20 seconds, the display returns to the main screen.

- (1) Screen Change Switch
- (2) Buzzer Stop Switch
- (3) Work Mode Select Switch
- (4) Washer Switch
- (5) Wiper Switch
- (6) Travel Speed Select Switch
- (7) Auto Acceleration Switch
- (8) Menu Switch
- (9) Arrow Switch
- (10) Attachment Mode Select Switch



1. Turn the starter switch "ON" to display main screen (a).
2. From main screen (a), press "Nibbler" or "Breaker" switch of "Attachment Mode Select Switch" (10) to change the attachment mode from the digging mode to the nibbler mode or breaker mode. The flow rate indication screen (b) appears.
3. Press menu switch (8) to enter user menu screen (c).
4. Using the Up or Down arrow switch, move the cursor to "OPTION SETTING". Press the Right arrow switch to enter the nibbler or breaker setting.

[2. MACHINE FAMILIARIZATION]

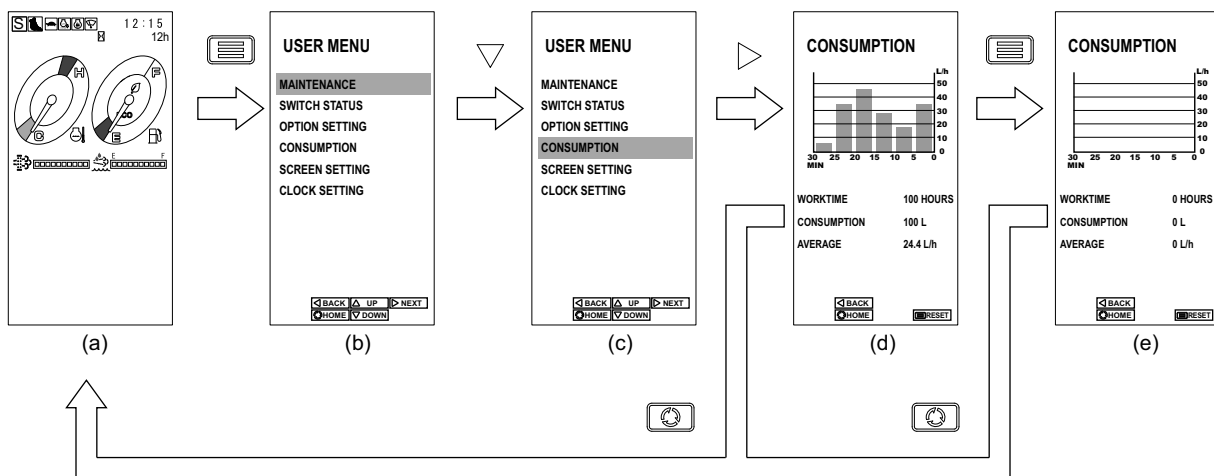
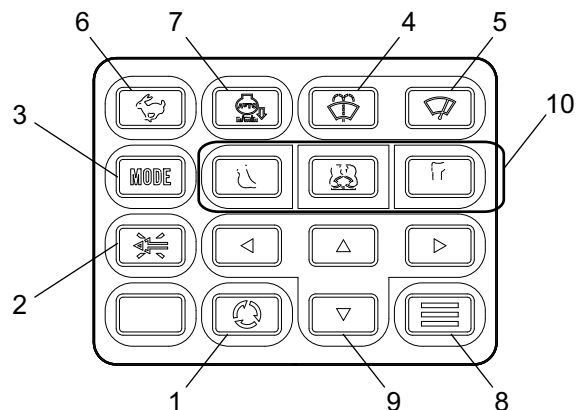
5. Using the Up and Down arrow switches, select the desired flow rate.
6. Press menu switch (8) to set the desired value.
7. Press "Screen Change Switch" (1) to return to main screen (a).

CONSUMPTION

Notice

Use the indicated average fuel consumption for reference.

- (1) Screen Change Switch
- (2) Buzzer Stop Switch
- (3) Work Mode Select Switch
- (4) Washer Switch
- (5) Wiper Switch
- (6) Travel Speed Select Switch
- (7) Auto Acceleration Switch
- (8) Menu Switch
- (9) Arrow Switch
- (10) Attachment Mode Select Switch



1. Turn the starter switch "ON" to display main screen (a). Press menu switch (8) to enter user menu screen (b).
2. Using the up and down arrow switches, move the cursor to "CONSUMPTION" as display (c). Press the Right arrow switch to enter the fuel efficiency setting.
3. The graph indicates the average fuel consumption by 2 hours for this 12 hours. The values of the operating time, fuel consumption and average fuel consumption are also displayed.
4. To reset these values, press the down arrow switch.
5. Press "Screen Change Switch" (1) to return to main screen (a).

2.3.17 DISPLAY FOR MAINTENANCE

From the Maintenance Information screen in the user menu, it is possible to display the remaining time to the end of recommended replacement interval specified for the filter/oil. After reaching to the end of replacement interval, inspect and maintain them following to "INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE" in Chapter 4.

This menu is available for confirmation of the following items.

Replacement Interval

Name	Default
Engine oil	500 hrs.
Fuel filter	500 hrs.
Hydraulic oil filter	1,000 hrs.
Hydraulic oil	5,000 hrs.

- **Engine oil**
This shows the remaining time of the recommended replacement time for the engine oil, as well as the date of the last oil change.
- **Fuel filter**
This shows the remaining time of the recommended replacement time for the fuel filter, as well as the date of the last fuel filter change.
- **Hydraulic oil filter**
This shows the remaining time of the recommended replacement time for the hydraulic oil filter, as well as the date of the last hydraulic oil filter change.
- **Hydraulic oil**
This shows the remaining time of the recommended replacement time for the hydraulic oil, as well as the date of the last hydraulic oil change.

	INTERVAL	REMAINDER	EXCHANGE DAY
ENGINE OIL	500 Hr	500 Hr	08/12/12
FUEL FILTER	500 Hr	-100 Hr	08/12/12
HYD. FILTER	1000 Hr	500 Hr	08/12/12
HYD. OIL	5000 Hr	3000 Hr	08/12/12

Notice

- For the time setting procedure for the next oil or filter change of each type, see "USER MENU SETTING" in Chapter 2.
- When the recommended replacement time is over for any items, the "REMAINDER" indication for that item turns red. When necessary to return to the initial value, reset it.

Notice

- The recommended replacement time of the engine oil is 500 hours. The multi-display warns of it without a buzzer.
- The recommended replacement time of the fuel filter is 500 hours. The multi-display warns of it without a buzzer.
- The recommended replacement time of the hydraulic oil filter is 1,000 hours. The multi-display warns of it without a buzzer.
- The recommended replacement time of the hydraulic oil is 5000 hours. The multi-display warns of it without a buzzer.

2.3.18 WARNING DISPLAY SCREEN



WHEN WARNINGS ARE DISPLAYED

















A warning displayed on the multi-display may lead to severe trouble. Stop the operation immediately, investigate the causes and take proper measures.

- The warning display has the order of priority and when many troubles such as level 1 and 2 in priority(A) occurred at the same time, level 1 is displayed in priority to level 2.
- The gauge cluster processes signals received from various sensors and switches via Mechatro Controller, outputs the signals to the multi-display and lamp display, and makes the buzzer sound.
- The start-up inspection should be performed according to not only the multi-display but also the instructions in "MAINTENANCE".

WARNING CLASSIFICATION CHART (PRIORITY A)

Display	Level	Warning Details	Required Actions
CPU DATA COMMUNICATION ERROR	1	Mechatro Controller does not send data.	Contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer for inspection/maintenance.
SWING BRAKE DISENGAGED	1	The swing parking brake release switch is switched to the "RELEASE LOCK" position.	
ENGINE STOP	1	An emergency stop is performed due to low engine oil pressure.	




















WARNING CLASSIFICATION CHART (PRIORITY B)















Display	Level	Warning Details	Required Actions
 NIBBLER AND BREAKER SWITCHING FAILURE PARK AND REPAIR MACHINE	1	Displayed when the selector valve malfunctions.	The attachment installed to the crusher or breaker specification machine does not match the selected attachment mode. Select an appropriate attachment mode by switching the attachment mode select switch. Breaker mode: When using a breaker Nibbler mode: When using a nibbler (crusher) Even when an adequate operation mode is selected and the indication of selector failure does not disappear, contact and ask your KOBELCO authorized dealer for inspection/maintenance.
 POOR DEF/ADBLUE QUALITY DETECTED  EXTREME POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS	1	Displayed when DEF/AdBlue sensor detects the quality failure of DEF/AdBlue, and the machine becomes inoperable.	Refer to Chapter 3 "CHECKING DEF/AdBlue LEVEL AND REFILLING" and Chapter 4 "DRAINING DEF/AdBlue" to drain the contents of DEF/AdBlue tank, and refill DEF/AdBlue.
 DEF/ADBLUE TANK IS EMPTY  EXTREME POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS	1	Displayed when DEF/AdBlue level gauge becomes Level 0 (No display), and the machine becomes inoperable.	Refer to Chapter 3 "CHECKING DEF/AdBlue LEVEL AND REFILLING", and supply DEF/AdBlue until DEF/AdBlue level gauge becomes Level 3 (Green) or more.
 NOx CONTROL SYSTEM FAILURE  EXTREME POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P204F	1	Displayed when each device and sensor of the NOx discharge control system fails or becomes abnormal, and the machine becomes inoperable. (The failure code is an example)	Contact your KOBELCO service shop.
 DEF/ADBLUE INJECTION FAILURE  EXTREME POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P204F	1	Displayed when DEF/AdBlue injection device fails or becomes abnormal, and the machine becomes inoperable. (The failure code is an example)	
 EGR VALVE FAILURE  EXTREME POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P1459	1	Displayed when the EGR valve fails or becomes abnormal, and the machine becomes inoperable. (The failure code is an example)	
 POWER BOOST ON	2	Displayed when the power boost switch (Yellow) on the upper grip of the right control lever is "ON". - Separate boom specification When operating nibbler (crusher) up (bucket out)	Displayed when the power boost switch (Yellow) on the upper grip of the right control lever is used.
WARM FINISH WARM-UP	2	Displayed when the automatic warming-up is done.	The warming-up operation of the engine and hydraulic oil are completed. Refer to "STARTING ENGINE" in "3. MACHINE OPERATION", and start the engine with proper procedures.
 1.LIFT UP LOCK LEVER 2.PUSH REGENERATION SW.	2	Displayed when soot is accumulated in DPF, and manual regeneration is necessary.	Refer to Chapter 4 "ABOUT MANUAL REGENERATION", and perform manual regeneration.
 REGEN. IS BEING CARRIED OUT HI TEMP. AROUND MUFFLER ※1	2	Displayed when regenerating DPF.	Refer to Chapter 4 "ABOUT AUTOMATIC REGENERATION" and "ABOUT MANUAL REGENERATION". If manual regeneration is in progress, wait until the display turns off.
 1.LIFT UP LOCK LEVER 2.PUSH REGENERATION SW.  EXHAUST GAS AFTER TREATMENT EQUIPMENT WILL BE DAMAGED	2	Displayed when soot accumulated in DPF becomes Level 7 (Red) or more of the soot deposition meter, and manual regeneration is necessary.	Refer to Chapter 4 "ABOUT MANUAL REGENERATION", and perform manual regeneration.

*1: This mark is also displayed during machine operation, when occasional automatic soot combustion is performed.

See "ABOUT MANUAL REGENERATION" in Chapter 4.

[2. MACHINE FAMILIARIZATION]

Display	Level	Warning Details	Required Actions
 POOR DEF/ADBLUE QUALITY DETECTED  POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS	2	Displayed when DEF/AdBlue sensor detects the quality failure of DEF/AdBlue, and the engine output is limited.	Refer to Chapter 3 "CHECKING DEF/AdBlue LEVEL AND REFILLING" and Chapter 4 "DRAINING DEF/AdBlue" to drain the contents of DEF/AdBlue tank, and refill DEF/AdBlue.
 DEF/ADBLUE LEVEL LOW  POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS	2	Displayed when DEF/AdBlue level gauge becomes Level 1 (Red), and the engine output is limited.	Refer to Chapter 3 "CHECKING DEF/AdBlue LEVEL AND REFILLING", and supply DEF/AdBlue until DEF/AdBlue level gauge becomes Level 3 (Green) or more.
 NOx CONTROL SYSTEM FAILURE  POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P204F	2	Displayed when each device and sensor of the NOx discharge control system fails or becomes abnormal, and the engine output is limited. (The failure code is an example)	Contact your KOBELCO service shop.
 DEF/ADBLUE INJECTION FAILURE  POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P204F	2	Displayed when the DEF/AdBlue dosing module fails or becomes abnormal, and the engine output is limited. (The failure code is an example)	
 EGR VALVE FAILURE  POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P1459	2	Displayed when the EGR valve fails or becomes abnormal, and the engine output is limited. (The failure code is an example)	
 NOx CONTROL SYSTEM FAILURE  TORQUE LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P204F	2	Displayed when each device or sensor of NOx discharge control system fails or becomes abnormal, and the engine output is limited. (The failure code is an example).	
 DEF/ADBLUE INJECTION FAILURE  TORQUE LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P204F	2	Displayed when the DEF/AdBlue dosing module fails or becomes abnormal, and the engine output is limited. (The failure code is an example)	
 EGR VALVE FAILURE  TORQUE LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P1459	2	Displayed when the EGR valve fails or becomes abnormal, and the engine output is limited. (The failure code is an exam)	
 POOR DEF/ADBLUE QUALITY DETECTED	3	Displayed when DEF/AdBlue sensor detects the quality failure of DEF/AdBlue, and the engine output is limited.	Refer to Chapter 3 "CHECKING DEF/AdBlue LEVEL AND REFILLING", and Chapter 4 "DRAINING DEF/AdBlue" to drain the contents of DEF/AdBlue tank, and refill DEF/AdBlue.
 DEF/ADBLUE LEVEL LOW	3	Displayed when DEF/AdBlue level gauge becomes Level 2 (Yellow).	Refer to Chapter 3 "CHECKING DEF/AdBlue LEVEL AND REFILLING", and supply DEF/AdBlue until DEF/AdBlue level gauge becomes Level 3 (Green) or more.
 EXHAUST GAS AFTER TREATMENT EQUIPMENT FAILURE	3	Displayed when the soot deposition meter level reaches 10 (Red), and no regeneration can be done.	Contact your KOBELCO service shop.

Display	Level	Warning Details	Required Actions
 LOW ENG OIL PRESS.	3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Displayed when the engine oil pressure is lower than a specified value, and the output reduction control is performed. - Displayed when a disconnection is detected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Stop the engine promptly, check the oil level, and disconnection place, and refill or replace the specified engine oil referring to "LUBRICANT, FUEL & COOLANT SPECIFICATIONS", if required. - If this is displayed while engine stop, the wire may be disconnected, etc. Contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer for repair.
 COOLANT OVERHEATING	3	Displayed when the coolant temperature exceeds a specified value.	Stop operation, and lower the engine speed to the low idle speed to cool the engine. When the warning display does not disappear after a few minutes, stop the engine, and check the coolant level, fan belt tension, and radiator clogging.
 LOW COOLANT LEVEL	3	Displayed when the water level of the radiator upper tank is low.	Stop the engine, and open the radiator cap after the coolant temperature becomes low to refill coolant. Also, check the radiator sub tank, and refill coolant if the coolant level is low.
 WATER ACCUMULATES IN FUEL FLTR	3	Displayed when the water level in the water separator (fuel filter) increases.	Drain water from the water separator.
 CLOGGED AIR FLTR	3	Displayed when the engine output reduces due to a clogged intake air filter.	Check and clean the filter. If necessary, replace the filter.
I113	3	Error code is displayed when failure occurred in the pressure sensor, proportional valve, etc.	Ask your KOBELCO authorized dealer for inspection/maintenance.
 CHARGE ERROR	4	Battery failure. (High voltage/low voltage/insufficient charge) The battery is not charged adequately if the warning does not disappear after a while from the engine is started or if the warning is displayed while the engine is running.	Check the usage condition of the electrical components and the charge circuit.
 LOW FUEL LEVEL	4	The fuel is below a specified quantity.	Refill the specified fuel.
 HIGH HYD. OIL TEMP.	5	Displayed when the temperature of hydraulic oil rises abnormally.	Stop operation, and ask your KOBELCO authorized dealer for inspection/maintenance.
WARM AUTO WARMING UP	5	Displayed during the automatic warming-up operation.	Automatic warming-up operation is being performed. Wait until "WARM FINISH WARM-UP" appears.
 CHANGE ENG OIL	5	The remaining time to the engine oil change becomes zero.	Refill the specified new engine oil with the specified quantity.
 LIFT UP LOCK LEVER BEFORE ENGINE START	5	Displayed when the key switch is turned to "START" position while the pilot control shut-off lever is down.	Set the key switch back to "ON" position, and secure safety by raising the pilot control shut-off lever. Turn the switch to "START" again to start the engine.
 CHANGE FUEL FLTR	5	Displayed when the remaining time to the fuel filter change becomes zero.	Replace with a specified new fuel filter.
 CHANGE HYD. OIL FLTR	5	Displayed when the remaining time to the hydraulic oil filter change becomes zero.	Replace with a specified new hydraulic oil filter.
 CHANGE HYD. OIL	5	Displayed when the remaining time to the hydraulic oil change becomes zero.	Replace with a specified new hydraulic oil.
 CHANGE EXH. GAS FLTR	5	Displayed when the DPF maintenance (clean or replace) time of 4500 hrs. has been reached.	Contact your nearest KOBELCO service shop.

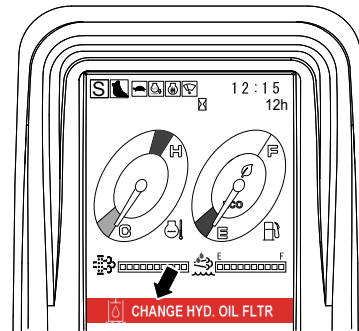
2.3.19 CLOGGING DETECTOR OF HYDRAULIC OIL FILTER

Change the hydraulic oil filter when "CHANGE HYD.OIL FLTR" appears on the display. (See "REPLACING RETURN FILTER" in Chapter 4 for replacement procedures.)

Note

When the clogging detector of the hydraulic oil filter is working, the pump operation noise becomes louder for approximately 3 seconds with the control lever in the neutral position, but it is not abnormal.

1. To release the warning, set the maintenance interval of the return filter again from the gauge cluster. (Default value: 1000 hrs.)
(See "USER MENU SETTING" in Chapter 2 for setting procedures.)



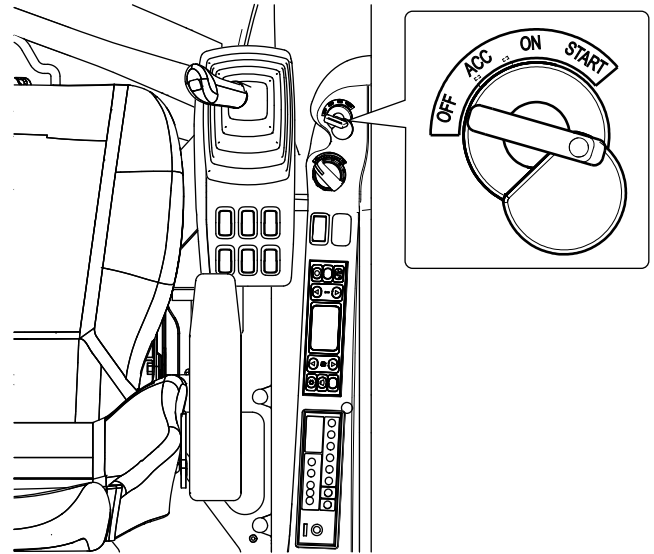
2. After the setting of 1. is completed, operate the machine for a while, then the warning is released automatically.

2.4 HANDLING OF SWITCHES AND METERS

2.4.1 STARTER SWITCH

This switch is used to start or stop the engine.

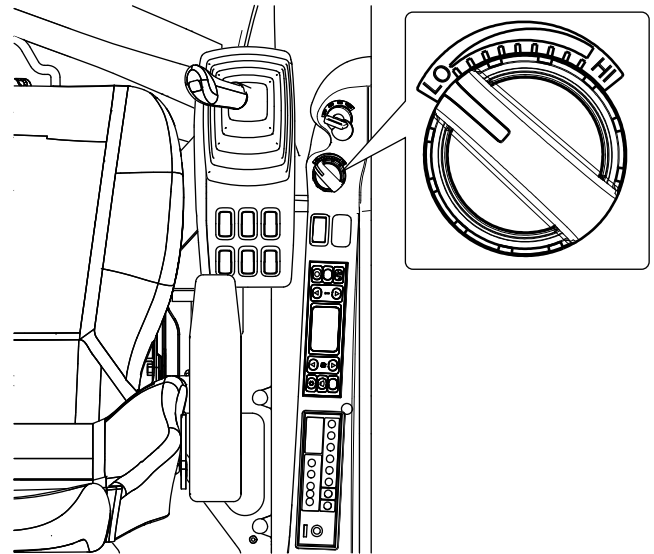
- **OFF (STOP):**
At this position, you can insert or remove the starter key. Before restarting or stopping the engine, turn the starter key to the "OFF" position.
- **ACC (Accessory):**
While the engine is stopped, power and the radio (FM/AM) can be used in the "ACC" position.
- **ON:**
Electricity flows in all circuits. During operation, the starter key should be in this position.
- **START:**
When starting the engine, turn the key to the "START" position. When the engine starts, release your hand from the starter switch. The starter key will return to the "ON" position by itself.



2.4.2 ENGINE THROTTLE

This dial adjusts the number of engine speed (output). This is a dial type rotary switch and a continuous adjustment type. If you release the dial at a rotated position, it stops at that position, and maintains assigned engine speed.

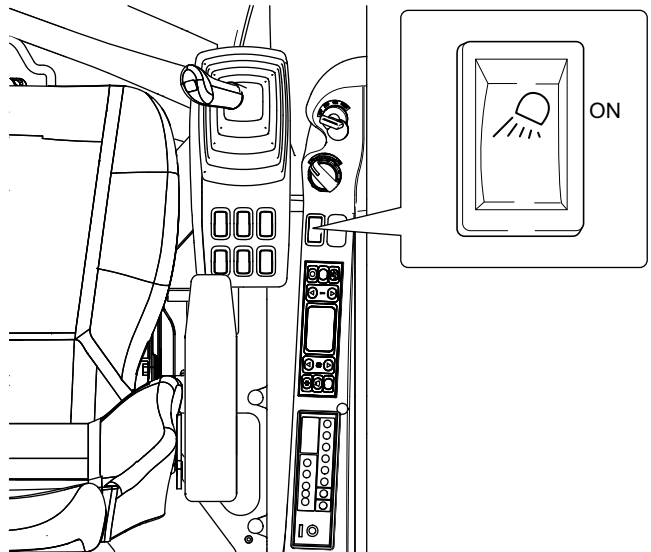
- **LO (Low idle)**
The number of engine speed is minimum at the end of left rotation.
- **H (High idle)**
The number of engine speed is maximum at the end of right rotation.



2.4.3 WORKING LIGHT (BOOM AND DECK)

Push the switch to turn on the working lights on the boom (left) and deck (right).

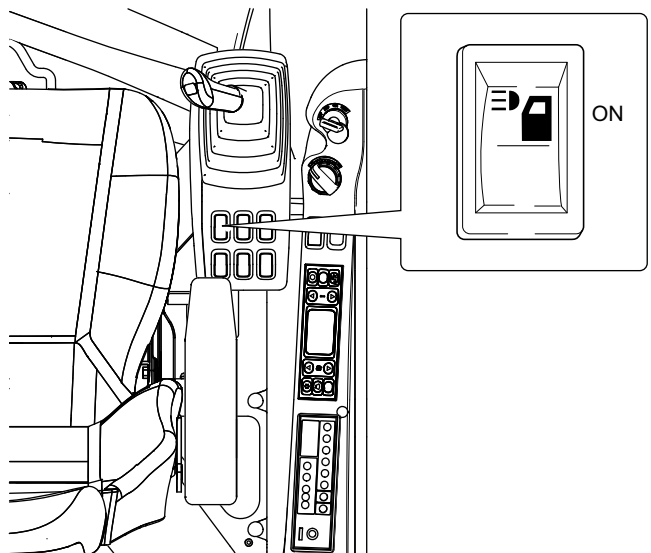
Push the no symbol mark side to turn off the working lights on the boom (left) and deck (right).



2.4.4 WORKING LIGHT SWITCH (CAB LIGHT)

Push the switch to turn on the working light of the cab.

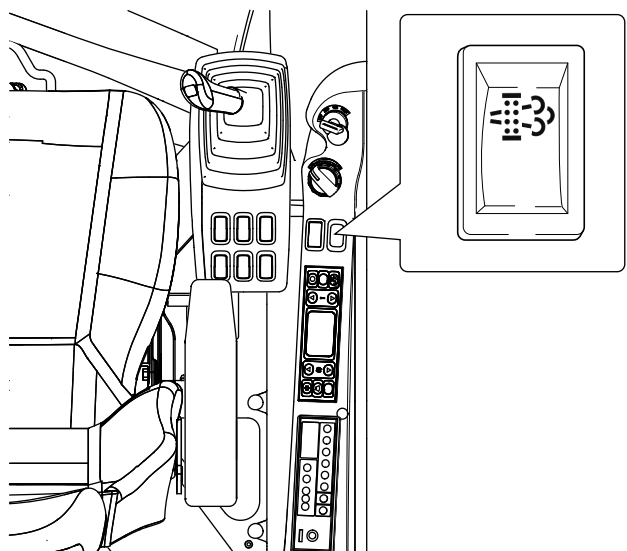
Push the no symbol mark side to turn off the working light on the cab.



2.4.5 DPF MANUAL REGENERATION SWITCH

When you press the DPF manual regeneration switch, DPF is regenerated.

For details, see "DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF)" in Chapter 4.

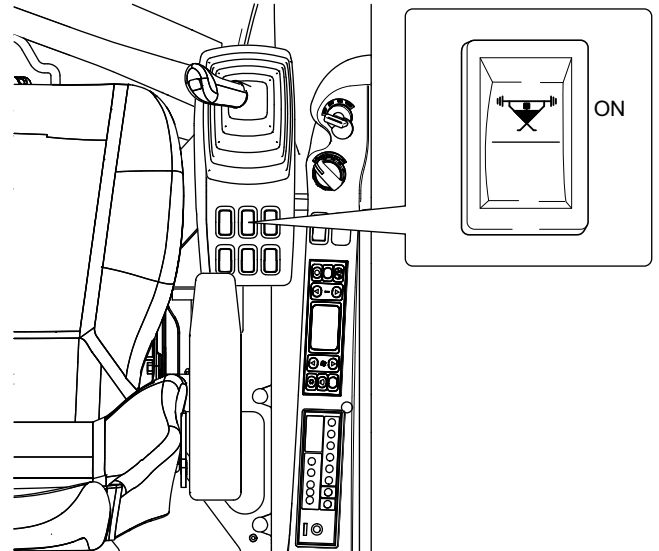


2.4.6 HEAVY LIFT SWITCH

This switch is used when lifting a heavy load and power is required for it.

If the switch is pressed, the heavy lift mode starts.

If the side without the symbol mark is pressed, the heavy lift mode is released.



2

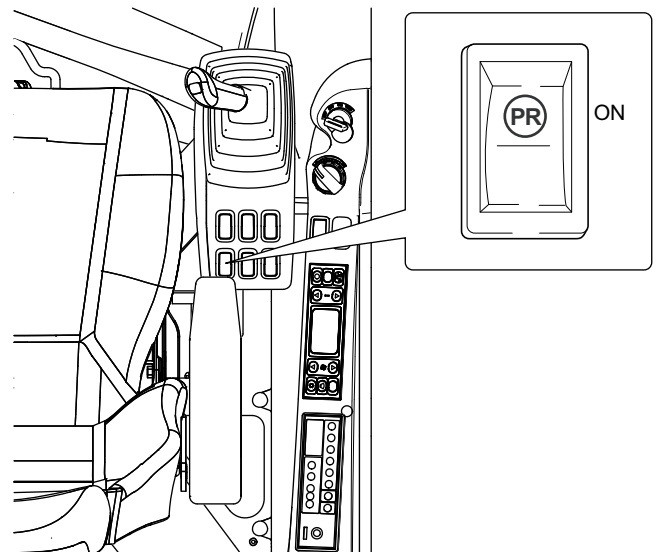
⚠ DANGER

Never turn off the heavy lift switch during any heavy lifting operation.

Sudden or unexpected movement of the lifted load could result in serious injury or death.

2.4.7 PRESSURE RELEASE SWITCH

The pressure release switch is used to release the inner pressure of hydraulic circuit.

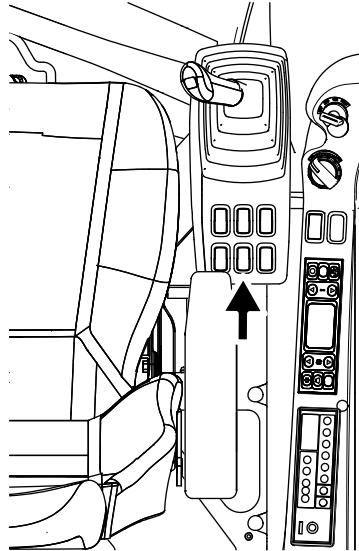


Notice

For pressure releasing procedures, see "RELEASING INNER PRESSURE IN HYDRAULIC SYSTEM" in Chapter 4.

2.4.8 CAP (OPTION SWITCH)

This is a place to install an optional switch.

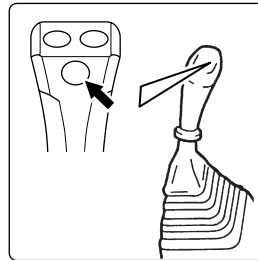


2.4.9 HORN SWITCH

CAUTION

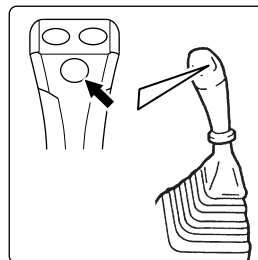
Be sure to sound the horn before starting this machine to warn surrounding personnel.

The horn sounds while the switch located on the top of the left control lever grip is being pressed.



2.4.10 POWER BOOST SWITCH

When power is required for a "particular situation" such as raising boulders and excavating rocks, a significant excavating power is generated while pressing the switch attached on the right control lever grip.



Notice

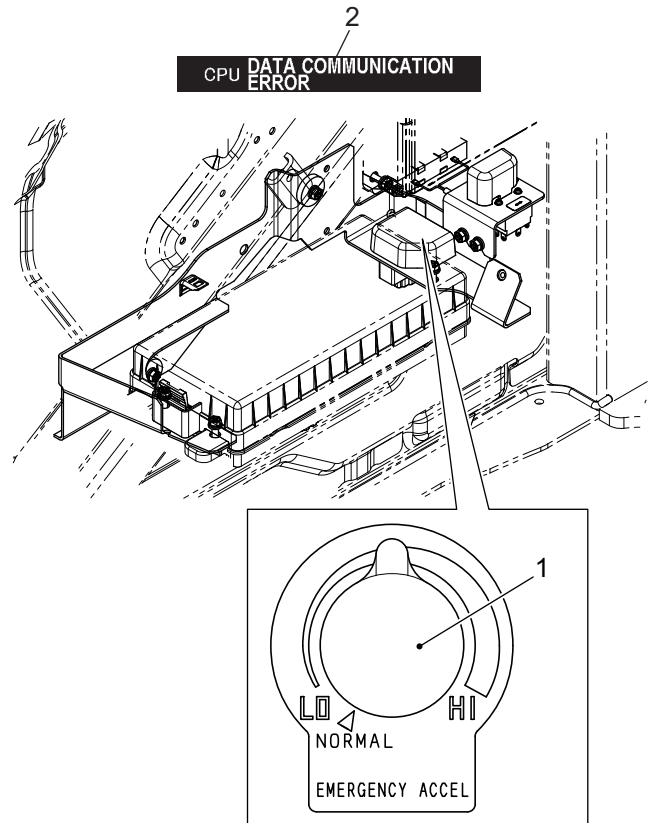
When a longer arm than standard is equipped, use of the power boost switch is prohibited.

2.4.11 ENGINE THROTTLE FOR REDUNDANT MODE

This dial is used when the controller that controls this machine has trouble. When the number of engine speed cannot be adjusted with the engine throttle due to controller trouble, operate this engine throttle for redundant mode (1) to adjust the number of engine speed.

Under normal conditions, do not operate engine throttle for redundant mode (1).

When controller warning (2) is displayed on the multi-display, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.



OPERATION PROCEDURES

When operating the emergency accel, follow the procedures below.



HOW TO HANDLE EMERGENCY ACCEL

Be sure to follow the procedures for the emergency accel. Because the engine speed may rise suddenly when the engine starts, and it is extremely dangerous.

1. Stop the engine, and set emergency accel (1) to "NORMAL".
2. Start the engine.
3. Turn emergency accel (1) to the HI side to adjust the engine speed.
4. When stopping the engine, set emergency accel (1) to "NORMAL".

2.4.12 SWING PARKING BRAKE RELEASE SWITCH



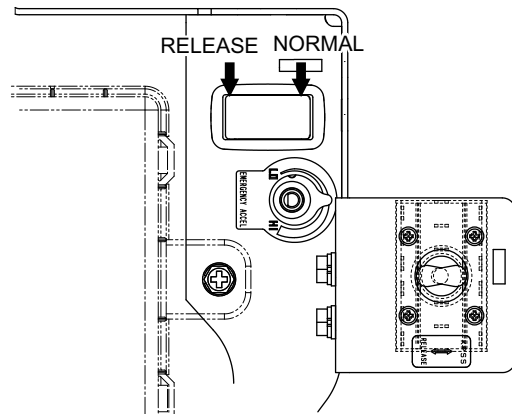
SWING PARKING BRAKE RELEASE SWITCH

Do not operate the swing parking brake release switch on slopes and soft grounds. The upper structure may turn unexpectedly and it is significantly dangerous.

This switch is used only when the swing parking brake cannot be released due to trouble. Set this switch to "RELEASE" to release the brake.

Generally, the switch should be on "NORMAL".

When trouble is found in the swing parking brake systems, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer promptly.

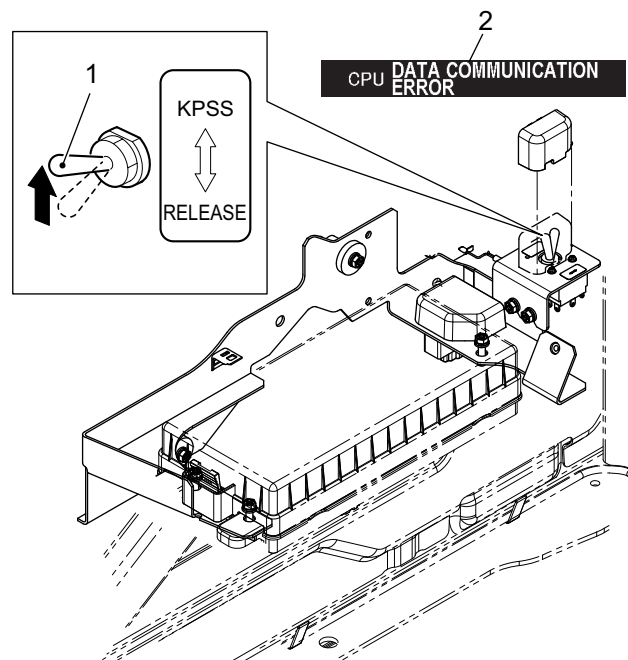


2.4.13 KPSS RELEASE SWITCH

This dial is used when the controller that controls this machine has trouble. When this machine cannot be operated due to the controller trouble, set KPSS release switch (1) to "RELEASE (OFF)" to operate the machine. However, the speed of the machine is limited.

Under normal conditions, the switch should be on "KPSS (WORK MODE)".

When controller warning (2) is displayed on the multi-display, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.

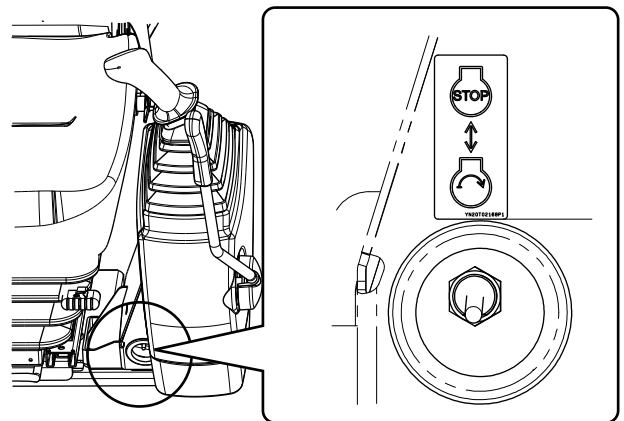


2.4.14 ENGINE STOP SWITCH

Notice

Do not use this switch to stop the engine under normal conditions.

When the engine does not stop due to trouble and damage of the machine even when turning the starter switch "OFF", lift up the switch near the lower left side of the seat to stop the engine. When not using this switch, always keep the switch down.



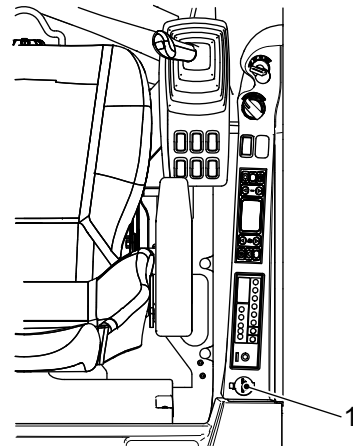
2

2.4.15 12 V POWER SUPPLY

12 V power supply (1) is installed on the back of the switch cover.

When using accessories such as a fan for general automobiles and other accessories that require the 12 V DC power supply, the 12 V power supply is required. Remove the cover from the 12 V power supply, and insert a 12 V male socket. After using the accessory, put the cover back on.

Maximum continuous output = 180 W



2.4.16 USB PORT/EXTERNAL INPUT TERMINAL (AUX)

Notice

- This part does not guarantee connection with all types of AUX terminals. Also, when each terminal does not match the inlet of this machine, connection is not available.
- For use of external sound devices, follow the manuals for them respectively.

Using the external input terminal (AUX), you can listen to music from a cell phone and external sound device. The USB port and external input terminal are located on the back of the seat in the cab. When using them, open cap (1), and connect each cable (sold separately). When they are is not used, close cap (1).

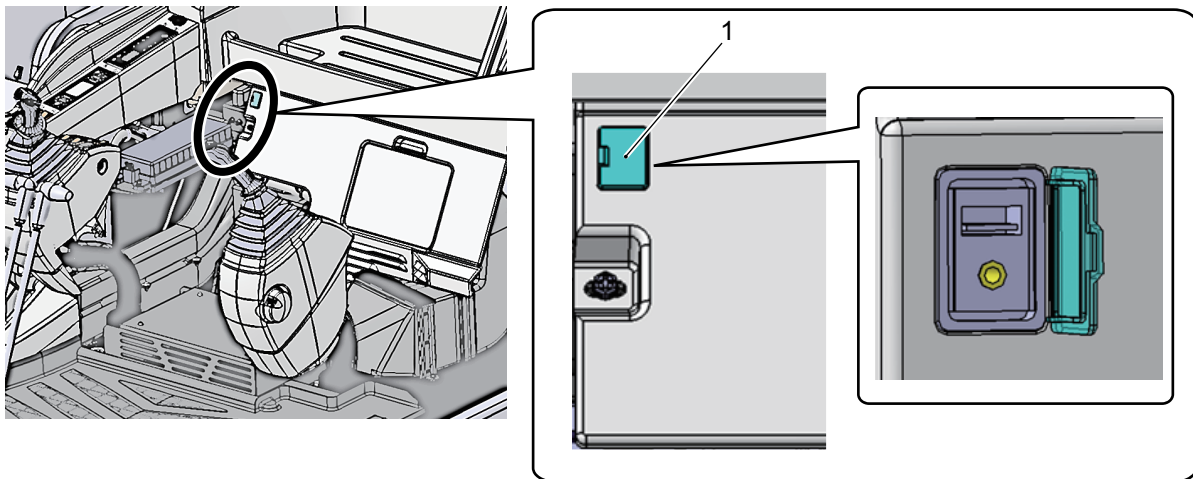
USB PORT

Charging is possible by connecting your cable to the USB connector (type A).

* Charging of all devices is not guaranteed.

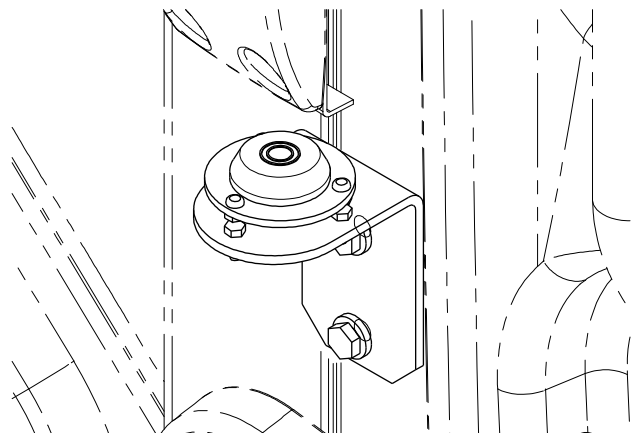
EXTERNAL INPUT TERMINAL (AUX)

Connect a digital audio player, etc. to listen to music from the machine's speakers. For connection cables, see "HANDLING OF RADIO" in Chapter 2.



2.4.17 Level Gauge

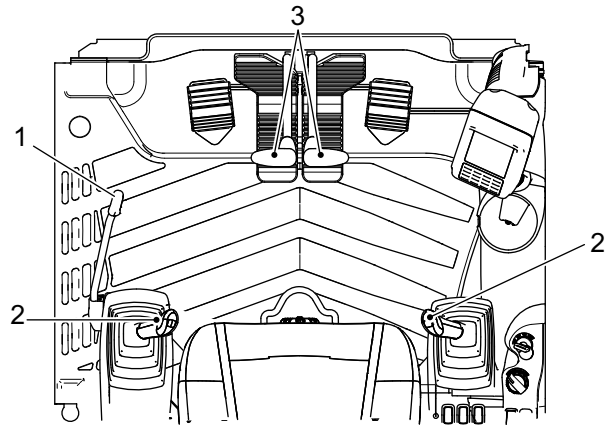
By monitoring this level-gauge, you can learn whether this machine is kept in a horizontal position.



2.5 HANDLING OF LEVERS AND PEDALS

2.5.1 LOCATION OF LEVERS AND PEDALS

- (1) Pilot Control Shut-Off Lever
- (2) Operator Control Levers
- (3) Travel Levers



2.5.2 CONTROL LOCK LEVER

The control lock lever is provided to prevent any unexpected operation due to unexpected contact with the left/right control levers or travel levers.

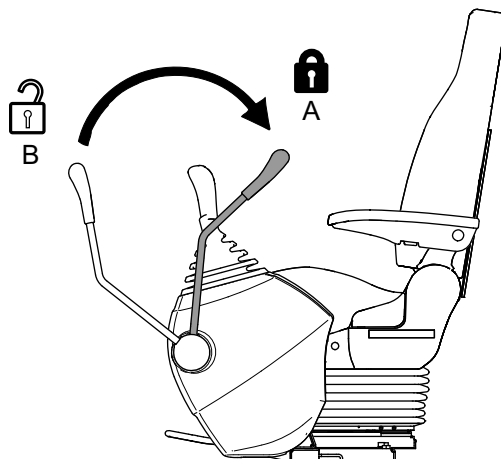


HANDLING OF CONTROL LOCK LEVER

- Do not stand up and move during operation, or unexpected contact with the control levers may cause a sudden movement of the machine. Raise the control lock lever securely to the "LOCKED" position before standing up or moving.
- Set the control lock lever to the "LOCKED" position securely, or it may not be locked. Make sure that the control lock lever is at the "LOCKED" position shown in the figure.
- When unlocking, do not touch other levers unintentionally. Touching other levers may cause danger due to unexpected machine movement.
- After completion of work or during transportation, be sure to set the control lock lever to the "LOCKED" position.
- Do not get on and off the machine holding the control lock lever.

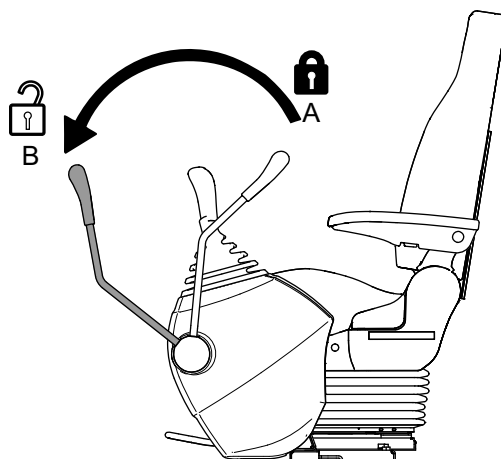
LOCKING HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

When the control lock lever is raised to "LOCKED" position (A), the operation control function is locked.



UNLOCKING HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

When the lever is lowered to the "UNLOCKED" position (B), the hydraulic system is unlocked.



2.5.3 OPERATOR CONTROL LEVERS



CONTROL OF LEVERS

- Before operation, be sure to pay attention to the safety of the surroundings and operate each lever slowly to fully make sure that the machine movement is in accordance with the control pattern indicated on the control pattern label in the cab.
- If you operate the machine while the control pattern label in the cab does not match the actual machine movement, it may cause severe personal injury.
- When the label does not match the actual machine movement, replace them with a proper one.
- When stopping swing operation, stop it earlier than your intended position by taking the swing distance after returning the swing lever to the neutral position into account.

The swing operation and the attachment/equipment are operated with the left and right control levers.

The left control lever is used for swing and arm operations.

The right control lever is used for boom and bucket operations.

Release the lever to return it to the neutral position and stop the attachment/equipment from moving. It is possible to perform various operations at the same time.

Left control lever

(1) Swing right

(2) Swing left

(3) Arm out

(4) Arm in

N (Neutral): Upper structure and arm are held in the position at that time

Right control lever

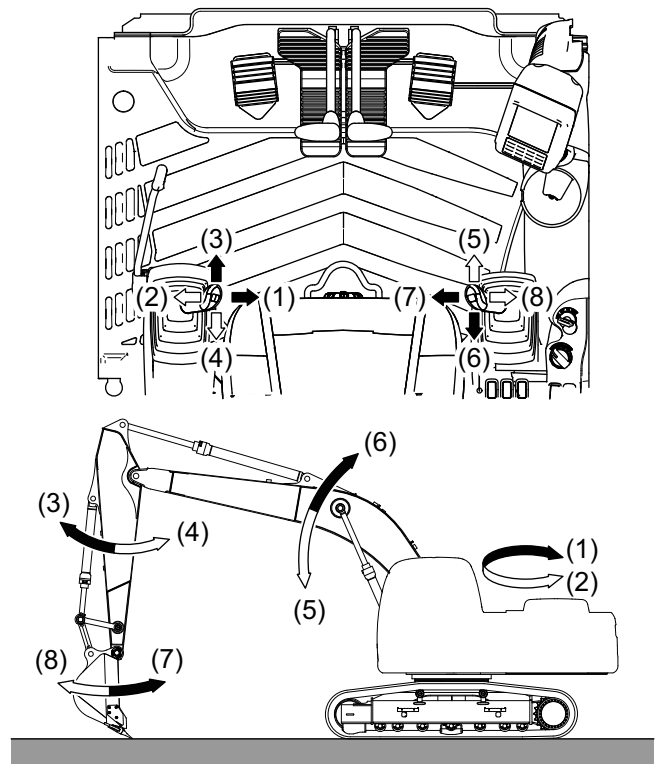
(5) Boom down

(6) Boom up

(7) Bucket in

(8) Bucket out

N (Neutral): Boom and bucket are held in the position at that time



2.5.4 TRAVEL LEVER & PEDAL



HANDLING OF THE TRAVEL LEVER & PEDAL

- During travel operation, pay attention to the control levers. There is a possibility of accident because the attachment is suddenly swung and moved by the unexpectedly touching and shifting the control lever.
- When operating the travel levers, check the crawler frame direction. When the travel motor is positioned on the front side, the traveling lever operation is reversed.
- If you put your foot on a pedal during work, there is a possibility of severe injury because the machine will start abruptly if the pedal is depressed unintentionally. Do not put your foot on a pedal, except for driving or turning with pedals.
- Pay attention when driving and operating with pedals.

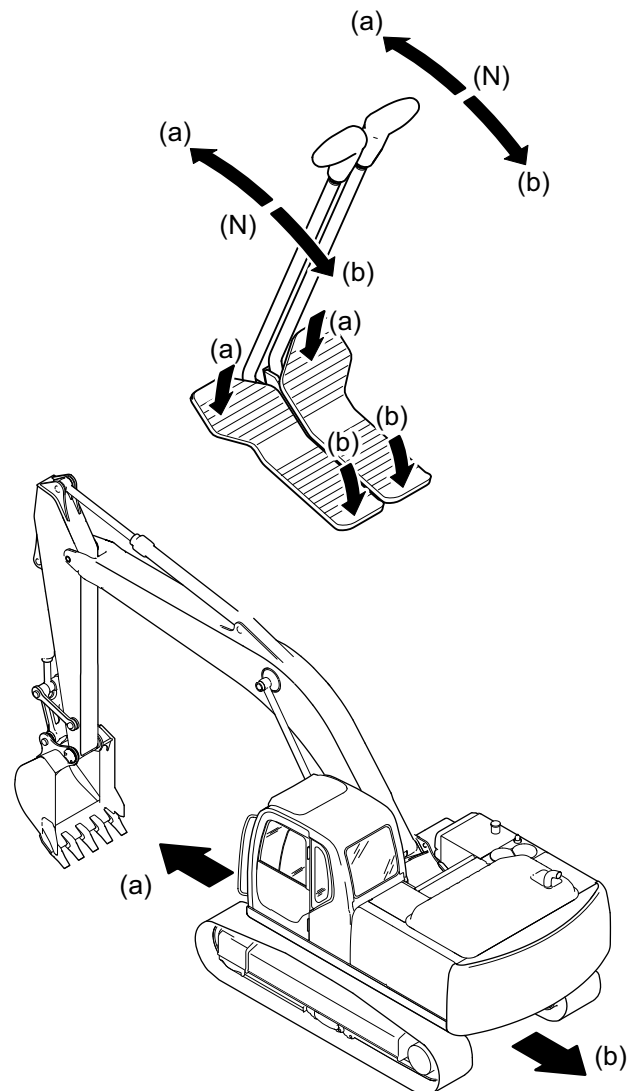
The manual levers and travel pedals are used for the travel operation of this machine.

(a) Travel forward: Push the travel levers to the front

(Depress the front of travel pedals)

(b) Travel backward: Pull the travel levers toward yourself (Depress the back of travel pedals)

(N) Neutral: The machine stops traveling.



2.6 HANDLING OF FUSE & RELAY BOX

2.6.1 ABOUT FUSE & RELAY BOX

The fuses protect the wiring and electrical components from damage of burning out due to excess current. If the electrical system does not work properly, check to replace any blown fuses with new ones. If there is a corroded fuse generating white powder on it, or if some looseness exists between a fuse and its fuse holder, replace it as well.

2.6.2 REPLACING FUSES

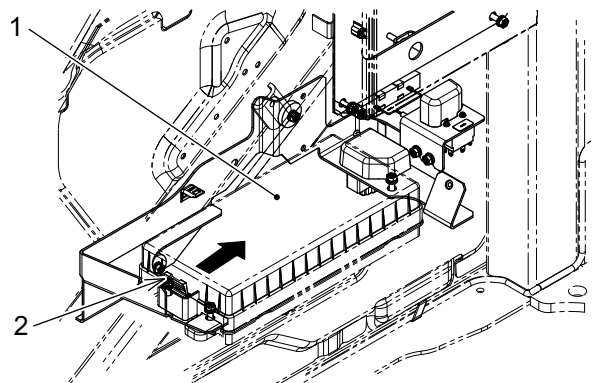
CAUTION

Make sure the starter switch is in the "OFF" position when replacing fuses.

Notice

- The spare fuses are stored in the fuse & relay box.
- A fuse must be replaced with a one of the same type and capacity of that of the blown fuses. The electrical system may be damaged if a different one is used.
If fuse replacement is frequently required, it may be due to a failure in the electrical system. Please contact KOBELCO authorized dealer/distributor.

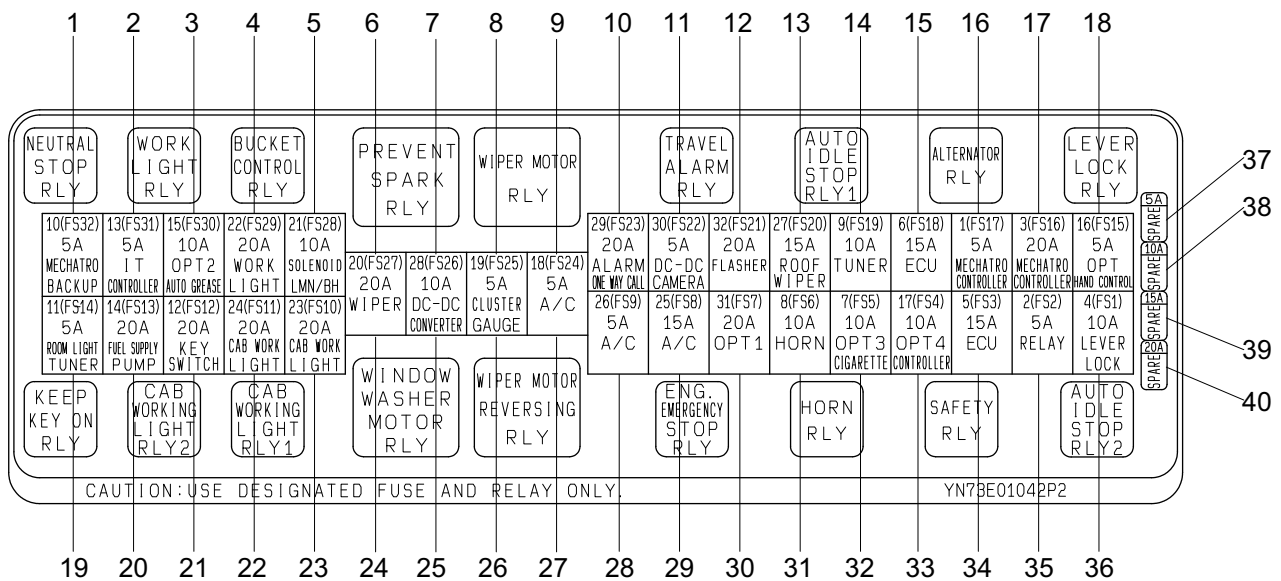
1. To remove the fuse box cover at the right side of the operator's seat, push lock part (2) of cover (1) inward and release the lock and then lift the cover.
2. When replacing the fuse, use a fuse extractor to remove it from the fuse box.
3. After replacing the fuse, install the cover securely.



[2. MACHINE FAMILIARIZATION]

2.6.3 FUSE CAPACITY AND CIRCUIT NAME

The following shows each fuse capacity and circuit name.



Item	Capacity	Circuit Name	Item	Capacity	Circuit Name
1	5A	Mechatro controller (backup)	21	20A	Key switch
2	5A	IT controller	22	20A	Cab working light
3	10A	Automatic greasing	23	20A	Cab working light
4	20A	Working light	24	20A	Wiper
5	10A	Solenoid valve, LMN/BH	25	10A	DC-DC converter
6	20A	Wiper	26	5A	Cluster gauge
7	10A	DC-DC converter	27	5A	Air conditioner
8	5A	Cluster gauge	28	5A	Air conditioner
9	5A	Air conditioner	29	15A	Air conditioner
10	20A	Travel alarm, public address system	30	20A	Option 1
11	5A	DC-DC for camera	31	10A	Horn
12	20A	Flasher	32	10A	Option 3
13	15A	Skylight wiper	33	10A	Option 4, controller
14	10A	Tuner	34	15A	Engine controller (ECU)
15	15A	Engine controller (ECU)	35	5A	Relay
16	5A	Mechatro controller	36	10A	Lever lock
17	20A	Mechatro controller	37	5A	Spare fuse
18	5A	(Option) hand control	38	10A	Spare fuse
19	5A	Room lamp, tuner	39	15A	Spare fuse
20	20A	Fuel supply pump	40	20A	Spare fuse

2.7 HANDLING OF FUSIBLE LINK (FOR STARTER)

Notice

The fusible link is a fuse wiring of big size provided in a large capacity circuit.
As with normal fuses, it protects electrical components and wiring from burn out due to excess current.

In case the starter does not work when the starter switch is turned "ON", disconnection of the fusible link is suspected. Check and replace it as needed.

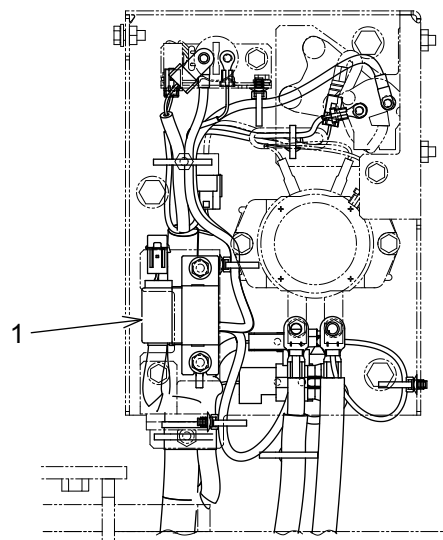
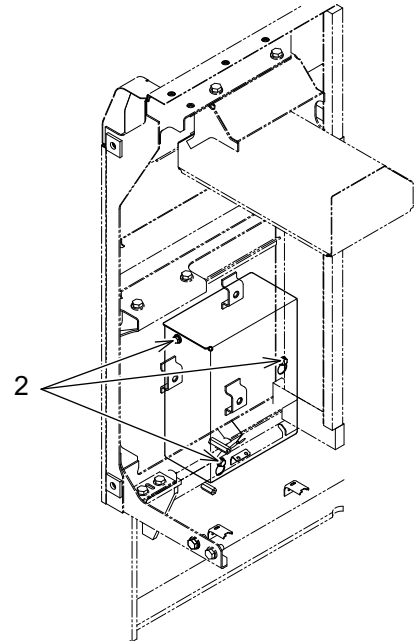
2.7.1 FUSIBLE LINK INSPECTION/REPLACEMENT

CAUTION

Remove the negative (-) terminal of the battery to shut down the flow of electricity to avoid electric shock and short circuit leading to damages of the component.

When the battery power-off switch is provided, set it to "OFF".

1. Use the starter key to open the side door at the left side of the machine and hold it with the stay.
2. Remove three mounting bolts (2) from the fuse and the relay box, and remove the cover.
3. Remove fusible link (1), and perform inspection or replace it with a new one.
4. Remove the supporting stay, and close the side door.

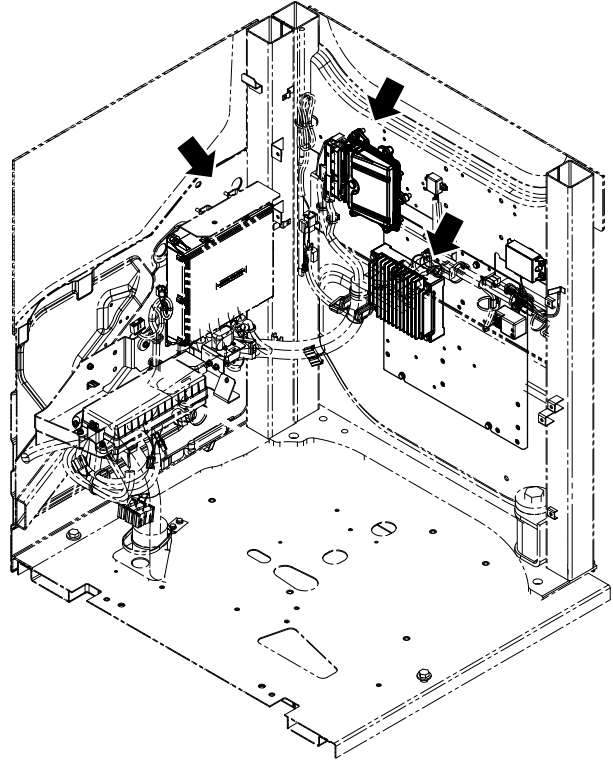


2.8 CONTROLLER

CAUTION

- Since the controller is equipped in the cab and the engine, do not splash water, dirt, or drinking water etc on it. It may cause failure of the machine.
- When the controller warning is displayed on the gauge cluster, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer. For warning, see "WARNING DISPLAY SCREEN" in Chapter 2.

The controller controlling the machine and the engine is equipped in this machine.



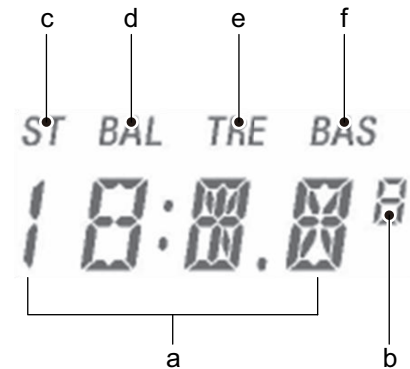
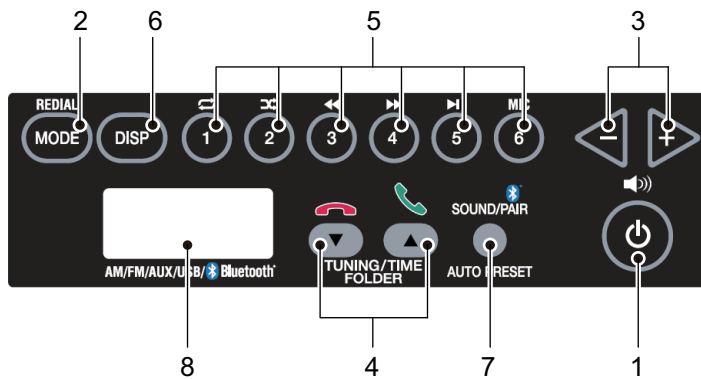
2.9 HANDLING OF RADIO TUNER

CAUTION

Do not operate the radio during operation.

Lower the attachment to the ground, pull up the control lock lever to the "LOCKED" position, and then operate the radio.

2.9.1 NAME OF EACH PART



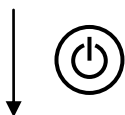
Item	Name	Function
1	[PWR] Key	Turns the power of the radio ON/OFF. In each explanation, "ON" is described as "OnAir".
2	[MODE] Key	Switches the band (AM/FM1/FM2) and the radio (AM/FM1/FM2), AUX, and BT(Bluetooth). If pressed and hold, redial is performed.
3	[VOL+] [VOL-] Key	Adjusts the volume.
4	[UP] [DOWN] Key	Switches the frequency, adjusts steps at the sound adjustment, and adjusts the clock. Also, when a call is received, press [UP] to start conversation, and press [DOWN] to finish the conversation.
5	[PRESET] Key (1 to 6)	Recalls and registers preset frequency. Also, in use of BT(Bluetooth), performs repeat, random, track forward/backward, and pause.
6	[DISP] Key	Switches the display (frequency/clock).
7	[SOUND PAIR] Key	Adjusts the sound (balance/bass/treble) and performs pairing.
8	LCD Display	Displays the frequency and the clock.
a	Segment (Large)	Displays the letter/value information such as the name of the source, the frequency, and the clock.
b	Segment (Small)	Displays the frequency at the step of FM50kHz.
c	ST Pict	Turns on if stereo sound is received with FM1/FM2 selected.
d	BAL Pict	Turns on at balance adjustment in sound adjustment.
e	TRE Pict	Turns on at treble adjustment in sound adjustment.
f	BAS Pict	Turns on at bass adjustment in sound adjustment.

2.9.2 ON-AIR (NORMAL CONDITION)

With the radio component in the OFF condition, press [PWR] key to turn the radio ON (on-air condition). Then the frequency selected now starts to be received.



OFF (clock display)
{Colon blinks (ON: 700 ms, OFF: 300 ms)}



After 1 sec.



ON (on-air): Band name display

In this condition, press [DISP] key to switch the frequency display and the time display.

If the source is AUX, the AUX display and the clock display are switched.

(When the clock display is switched to the frequency display, the band name is displayed for 1 sec. and then the display is changed to the frequency display.)



Frequency display



Clock display
{Colon blinks (ON: 700 ms, OFF: 300 ms)}

After 1 sec.



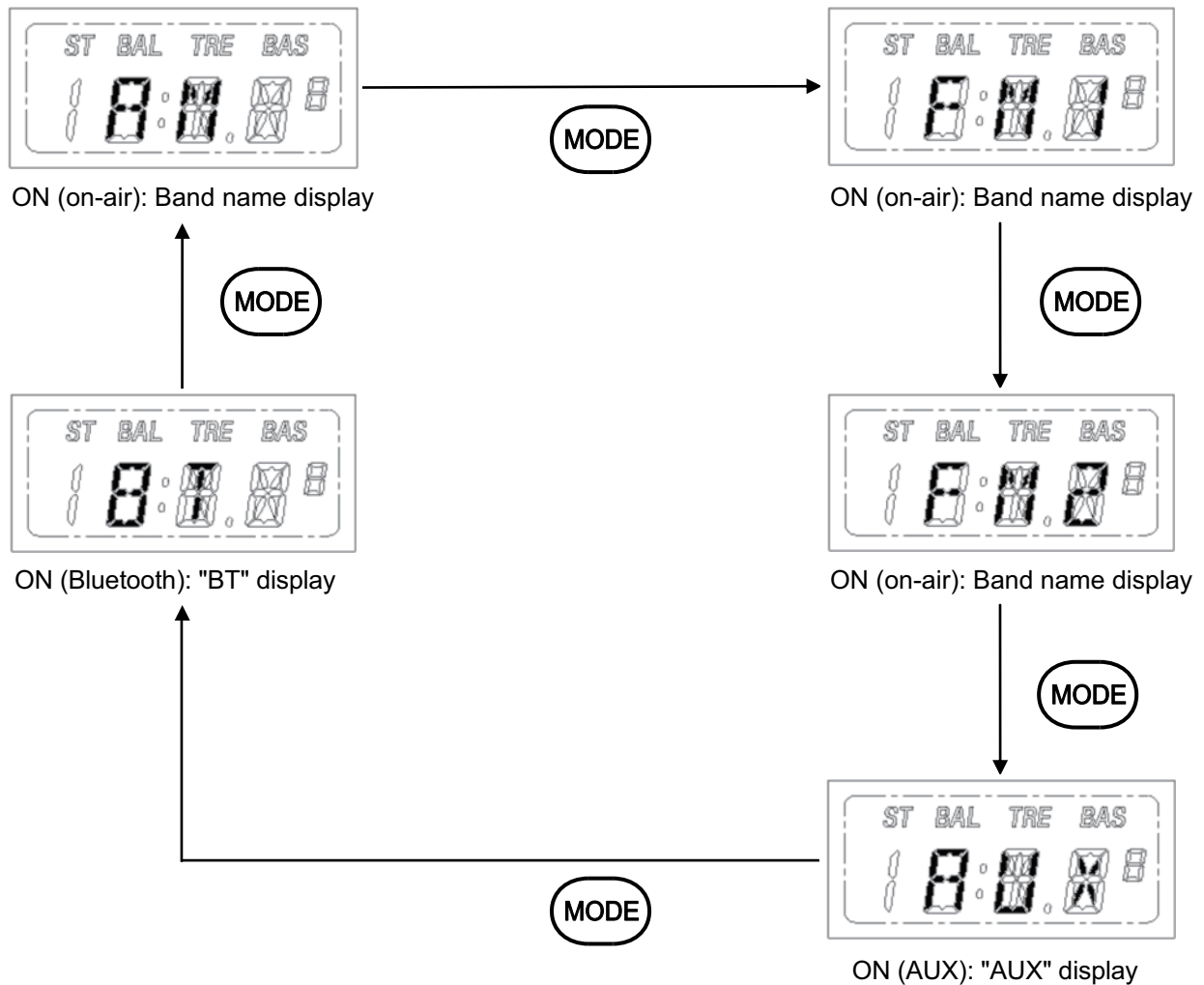
ON (on-air): Band name display

2.9.3 SWITCHING SOURCE

With the radio component in the on-air (normal) condition, press [MODE] key to switch the source.
After the source is switched, each source works as follows.

- AM/FM: Receives the frequency received at the previous time by the selected band.
- AUX: Outputs the sound of the device connected to the AUX terminal from the speakers of this radio component.
- BT: Outputs the sound of the device connected though Bluetooth (A2DP) from the speakers of this radio component.

The sources are switched in the order of AM→FM1→FM2→AUX→BT→AM.



2.9.4 FM/AM

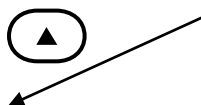
FREQUENCY ADJUSTMENT (1 STEP UP OR 1 STEP DOWN)

With the radio component in the on-air (normal) condition, press [UP] key to increase the frequency by 1 step. Also, press [DOWN] key to decrease the frequency by 1 step.

(In case that selected band is FM1/FM2)



Frequency display
(When stereo sound is received, "ST" pict turns on)



Frequency display
(When stereo sound is not received, "ST" pict turns off)

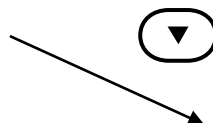
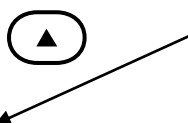


Frequency display
(When stereo sound is not received, "ST" pict turns off)

(In case that selected band is AM)



Frequency display
(When AM is selected, "ST" pict always turns on)



Frequency display
(When AM is selected, "ST" pict always turns on)



Frequency display
(When AM is selected, "ST" pict always turns on)

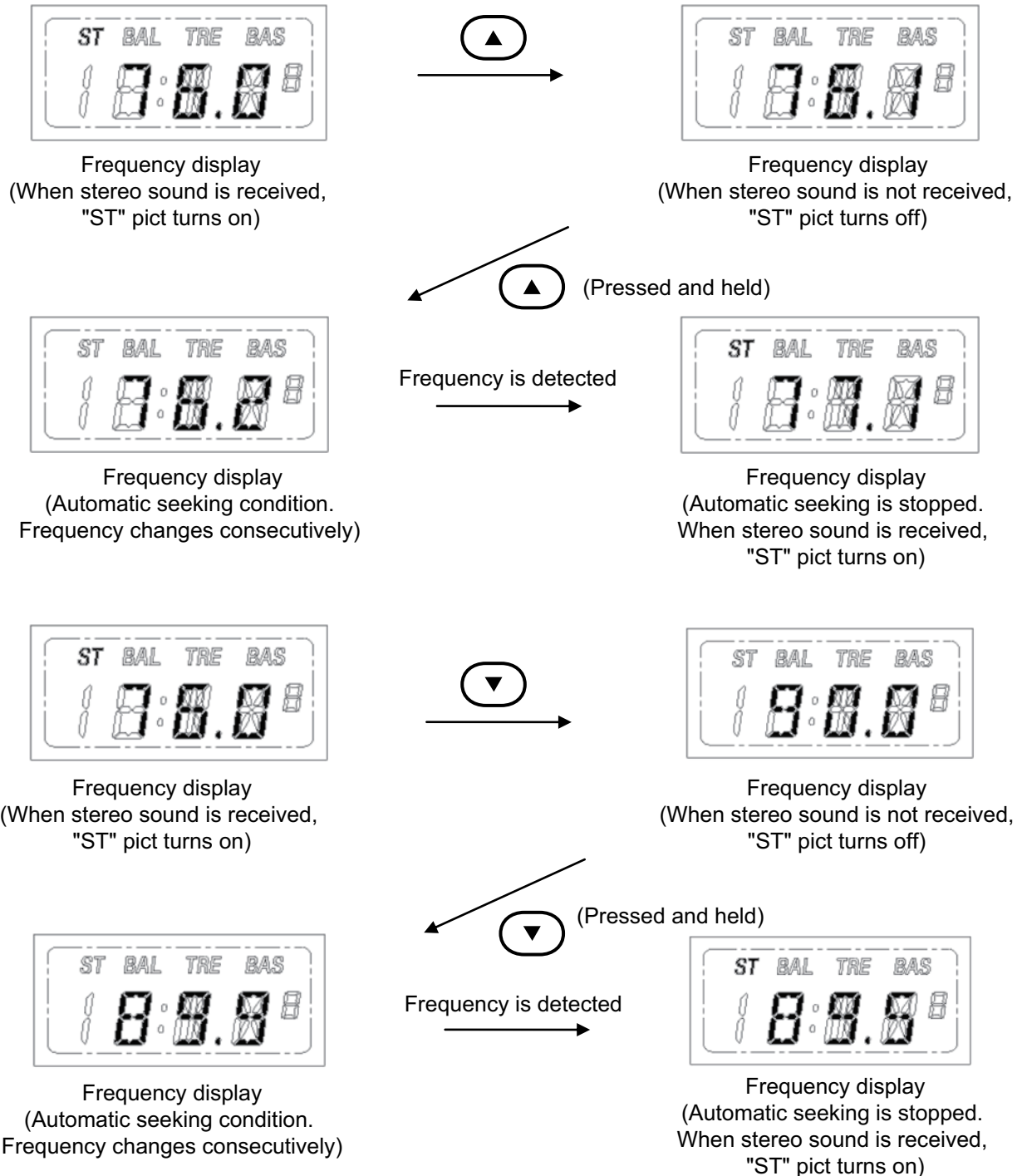
FREQUENCY ADJUSTMENT (AUTOMATIC SEEKING)

With the radio component in the on-air (normal) condition, press and hold [UP] key to increase the frequency by 1 step consecutively.

Also, press and hold [DOWN] key to decrease the frequency by 1 step consecutively.

When the well-received frequency is detected, the auto seeking operation stops and the radio becomes the on-air condition.

(In case that selected band is FM1)



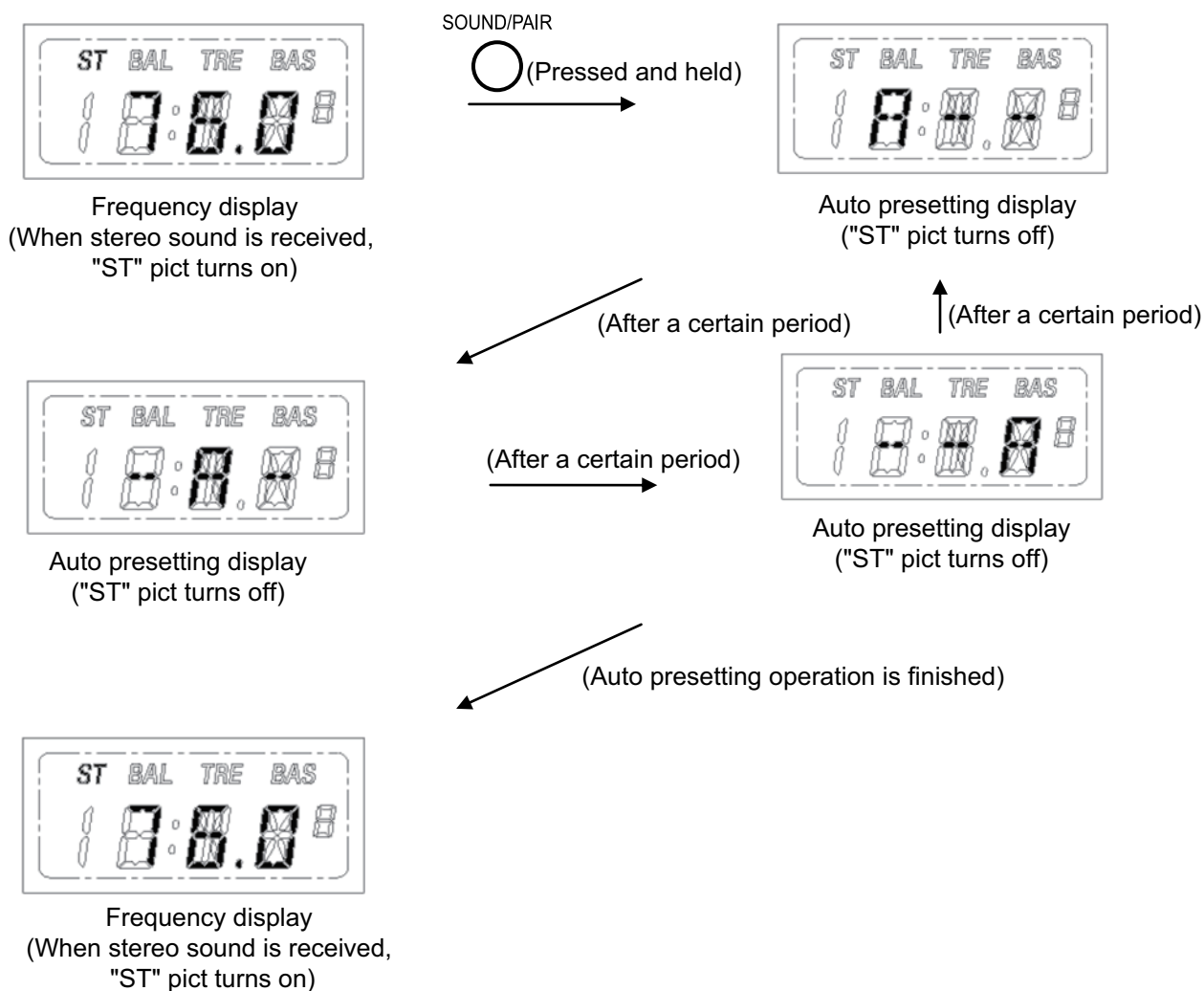
FREQUENCY ADJUSTMENT (AUTOMATIC PRESETTING)

With the radio component in the on-air (normal) condition, press and hold [SOUND/PAIR] key to start the automatic presetting function of which the well-received frequency is detected and stored in the preset memories of 1 to 6 automatically.

In the presetting function, the frequencies are set to the preset memories of 1 to 6 in the order of strongly received radio waves.

During operation of the automatic presetting function, the following automatic presetting display (the display position of "A" is renewed at every certain period) is displayed and when the operation is finished (with 2 beep sounds), this display is turned off and the frequency stored in preset 1 is on-aired.

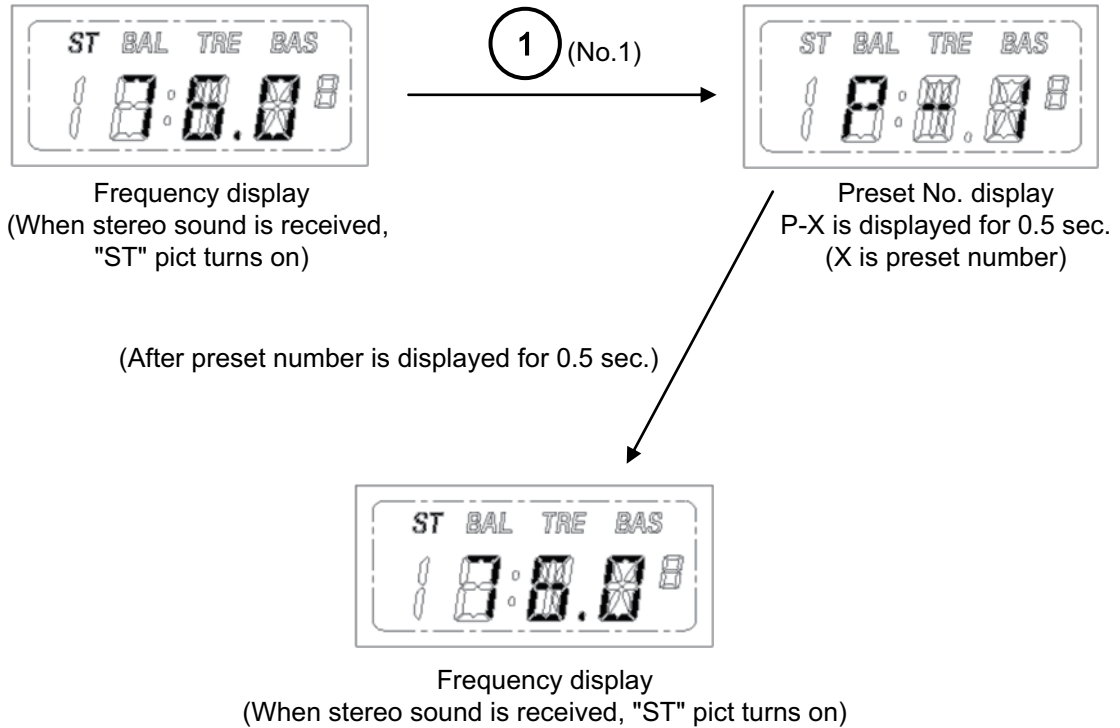
(In case that selected band is FM1)



RECALLING PRESET FREQUENCY

With the radio component in the on-air (normal) condition, press any of [PRESET] key (1 to 6) to recall the frequency stored in that preset number and on-air it.

{In case that selected band is FM1 (76.0 MHz has already been stored in preset No.1)}

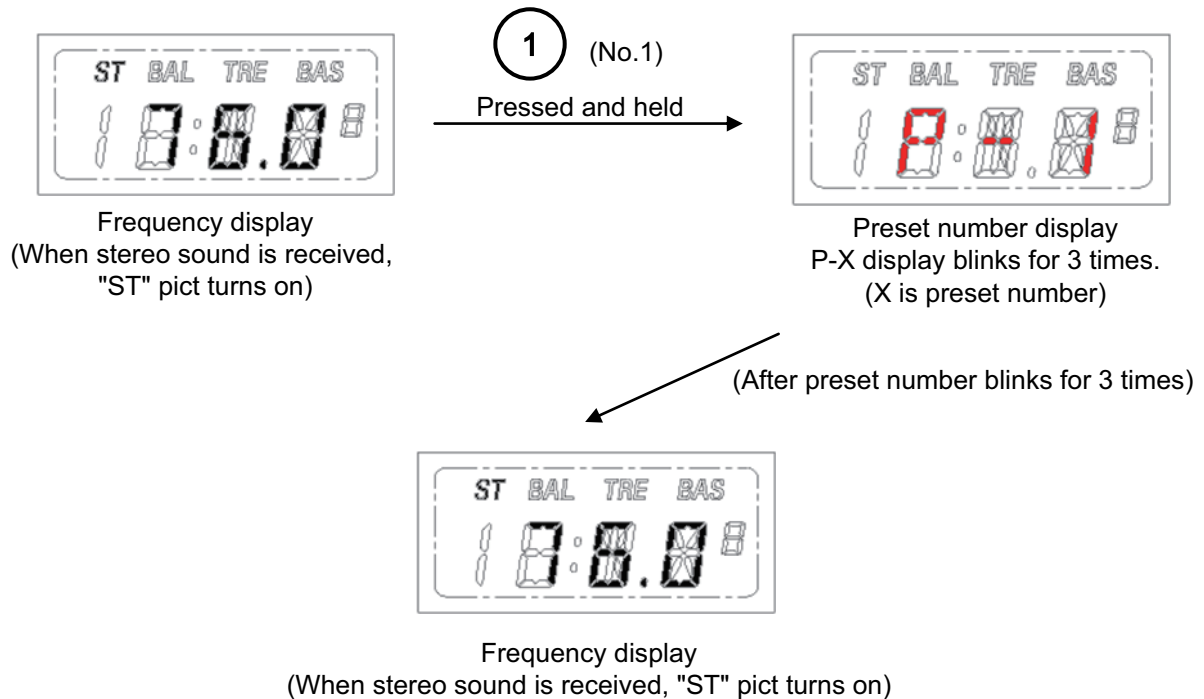


PRESET MEMORY

If any one of [PRESET] keys (1 to 6) is pressed and held under the on-air (normal) condition, the frequency received now is stored to that preset number.

At this time, the preset number display blinks 3 times and then the frequency display turns on.

(In case that selected band is FM1)



2.9.5 BLUETOOTH AUDIO FUNCTION, AND EXTERNAL INPUT TERMINAL

Using the Bluetooth Audio function, and external input terminal (AUX) of this machine, you can listen to music from a cell phone and external sound device.

Notice

Bluetooth Audio

- The Bluetooth Audio function of this machine does not guarantee wireless connection with all types of devices supporting Bluetooth. Devices like cell phones, etc. to be connected need to meet the Bluetooth standard determined by SIG and to be certified. Even if devices to be connected meet the Bluetooth standard, some devices may have connection problems, display/operation differences, or skipping sound.
- For the use of Bluetooth, follow the instruction manual of each device.
- Bluetooth in this machine may adversely affect some medical electric devices such as a cardiac pacemaker. When using Bluetooth Audio near medical electric devices, be very careful and ask applicable medical electric device manufacturers beforehand for use of Bluetooth.

EXTERNAL INPUT TERMINAL (AUX)

- External input terminal in this machine do not guarantee connection with all types of AUX terminal. Also, when each terminal does not match the inlet of this machine, a connection is not available.
- For use of external sound devices, follow the manuals for them respectively.

Basic specification of Bluetooth

Item	Contents
Bluetooth version	5.0
Field intensity	Class 1
Maximum number of devices for pairing registration	8 units
Supported profile	A2DP / AVRCP / HFP / SPP
Frequency range	2402 — 2480 MHz
Modulation system	GFSK, $\pi/4$ -DQPSK, 8-PSK
Output power	Max. 10.0dBm e.i.r.p

USB CHARGE

- Charging is possible by connecting your cable to the USB connector (type A).
- * Charging of all devices is not guaranteed.

2.9.6 PAIRING (REGISTRATION OF DEVICES)

Bluetooth devices need prior registration of devices to be connected by each other. This registration is called "pairing".

The pairing is required between this radio component and a mobile phone or other Bluetooth device.

With the OnAir (normal) condition, push the [MODE] key and switch the band to Bluetooth condition.

With the band selecting Bluetooth, press and hold [SOUND/PAIR] to display "WA" and start the preparation of the pairing.

After the preparation of this radio component is finished, "PA" is displayed, and this radio component enters the pairing waiting condition.

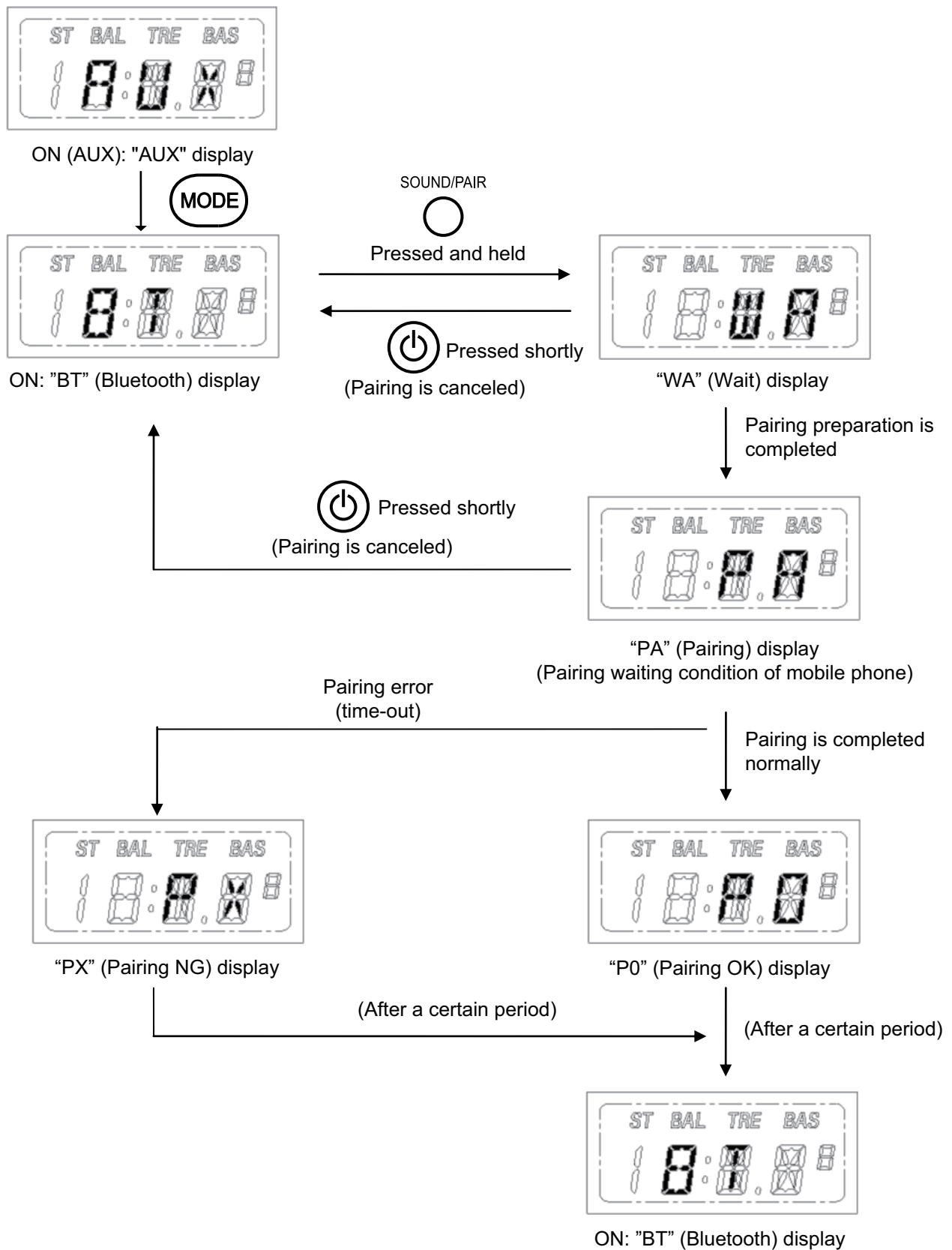
If a device is searched from the Bluetooth device to be connected to this radio component, the screen of that Bluetooth device displays "BT-****" (* is 4 digits of English letters and numbers). The pairing operation shall be performed from the Bluetooth device to be connected.

If the pairing is performed normally, "P0" is displayed and the pairing is finished normally.

When the pairing is not completed within the limited time (180 sec.) or error occurs, "PX" is displayed and the radio component returns to the Bluetooth ON condition.

During the pairing operation, by pressing [PWR] key, the pairing is canceled.

* Some mobile phones need entering of a pass key. Enter "0000" as a pass key.



2.9.7 TELEPHONE FUNCTION

Before using this function, perform pairing (registration of a device).

CONVERSATION

If the mobile phone connected through Bluetooth receives a phone call, regardless of the band selected at that time, "CL" is displayed and blinked and the ringtone is output from the speakers.

Even when this radio component is OFF, it automatically turns ON when receiving a phone call, and then displays and blinks "CL", and outputs the ringtone.

With the radio component receiving a phone call, press [UP] key to answer the phone call.

If the telephone number for which incoming call rejection has been performed is received, the radio component does not enter the communication status but changes to the band selected before receiving the phone call.

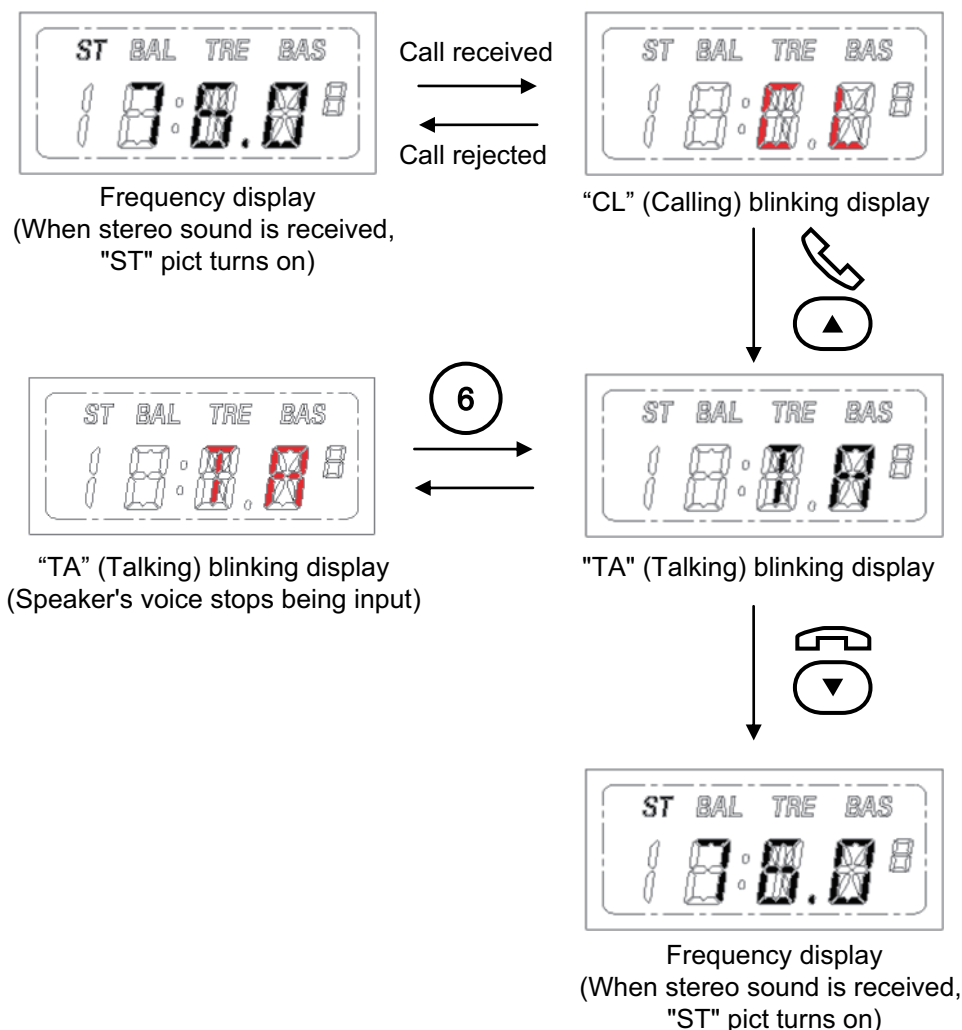
During the telephone conversation, by pressing [DOWN] key, the conversation is finished and the radio component changes to the status before receiving the phone call.

Moreover, by pressing [PRESET 6] key, the microphone can be turned OFF/ON.

When the microphone is turned OFF, input of the speaker's voice is stopped.

The previous turning OFF of the microphone is not stored. It is canceled by every time.

(In case that selected band is FM1)



REDIALING

Regardless of the band selected now, by pressing and holding [MODE] key, "RE" is displayed for 3 sec. and after redialing is started, "DL" is displayed and blinked, and the ringtone is output from the speakers.

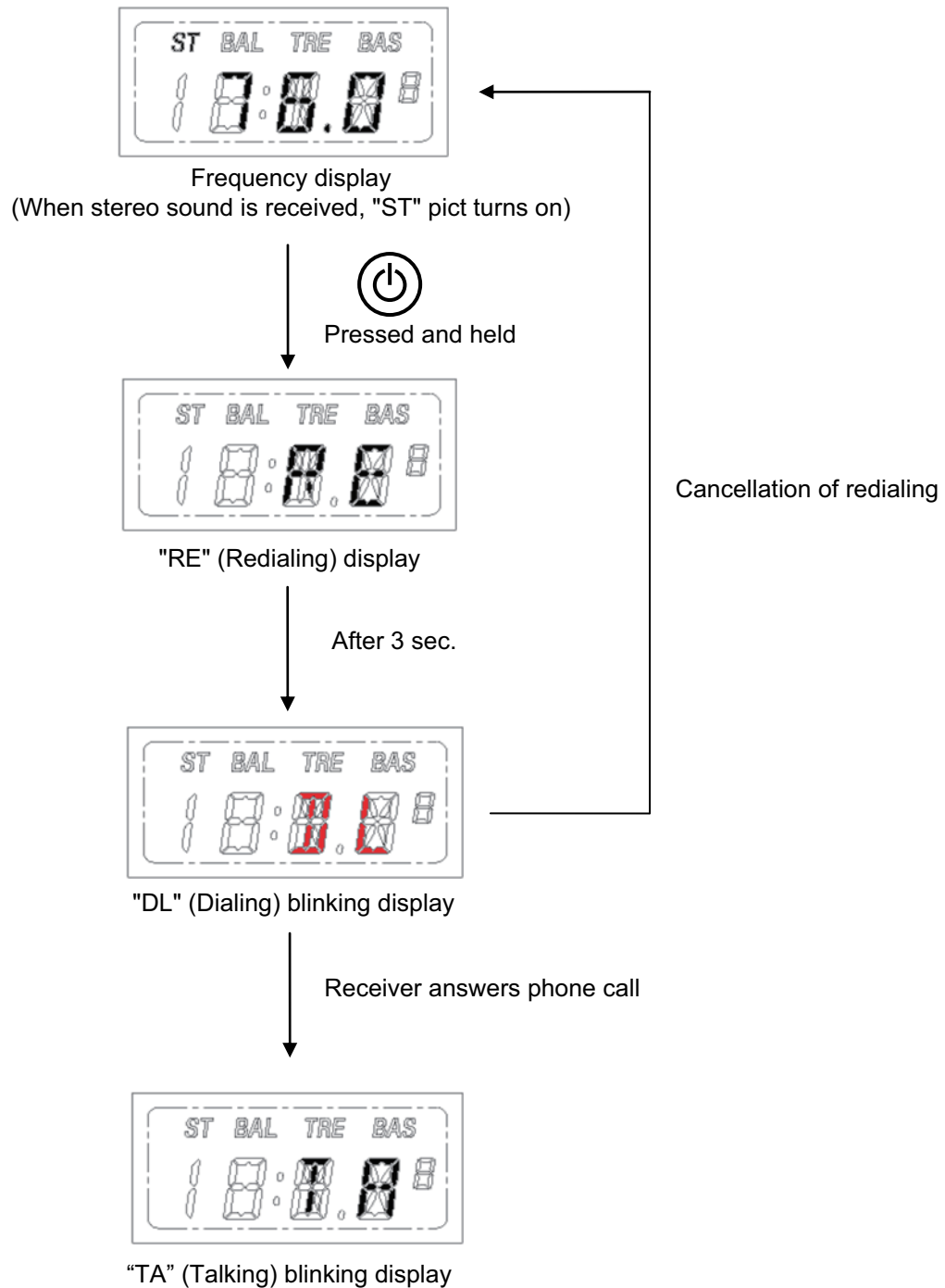
Even when this radio component is OFF, it automatically turns ON when performing redialing and enters the redialing process.

While making a phone call, if it is canceled, the radio component returns to the status before making the phone call.

The redialing function redials the telephone number received last time, after ACC ON.

If a phone call is received for a short time, some mobile phones cannot be applied to redialing.

(In case that selected band is FM1)



2.9.8 FILE PLAYING FUNCTION

Before using this function, pairing (registration of a device) shall be done.

TRACK FORWARD/BACKWARD (BT-AUDIO)

While a BT-Audio is being played, press [PRESET 3] or [PRESET 4] to change the track forward/backward.

If moving track backward is operated after less than 1 sec. from the start of playing the track, the track moves to the previous track, however, in case of 1 sec. or more from the start, the playing part moves to the beginning of the same track.

Due to the Bluetooth device limitation, the track number cannot be displayed.

PAUSE (BT-AUDIO)

While the BT-Audio is being played, press [PRESET 5] to pause the track.

By pressing [PRESET 5] again, the track starts playing.

Due to the Bluetooth device limitation, during pause, the display does not blink.

2.9.9 VOLUME CONTROL

If [VOL +] key is pressed under the on-air (normal) condition, the volume level is increased by 1 step.

The setting range is 0 to 32 steps.

Pressing and holding the key makes the volume increase consecutively.

By pressing [VOL -] key, the volume level is decreased by 1 step.

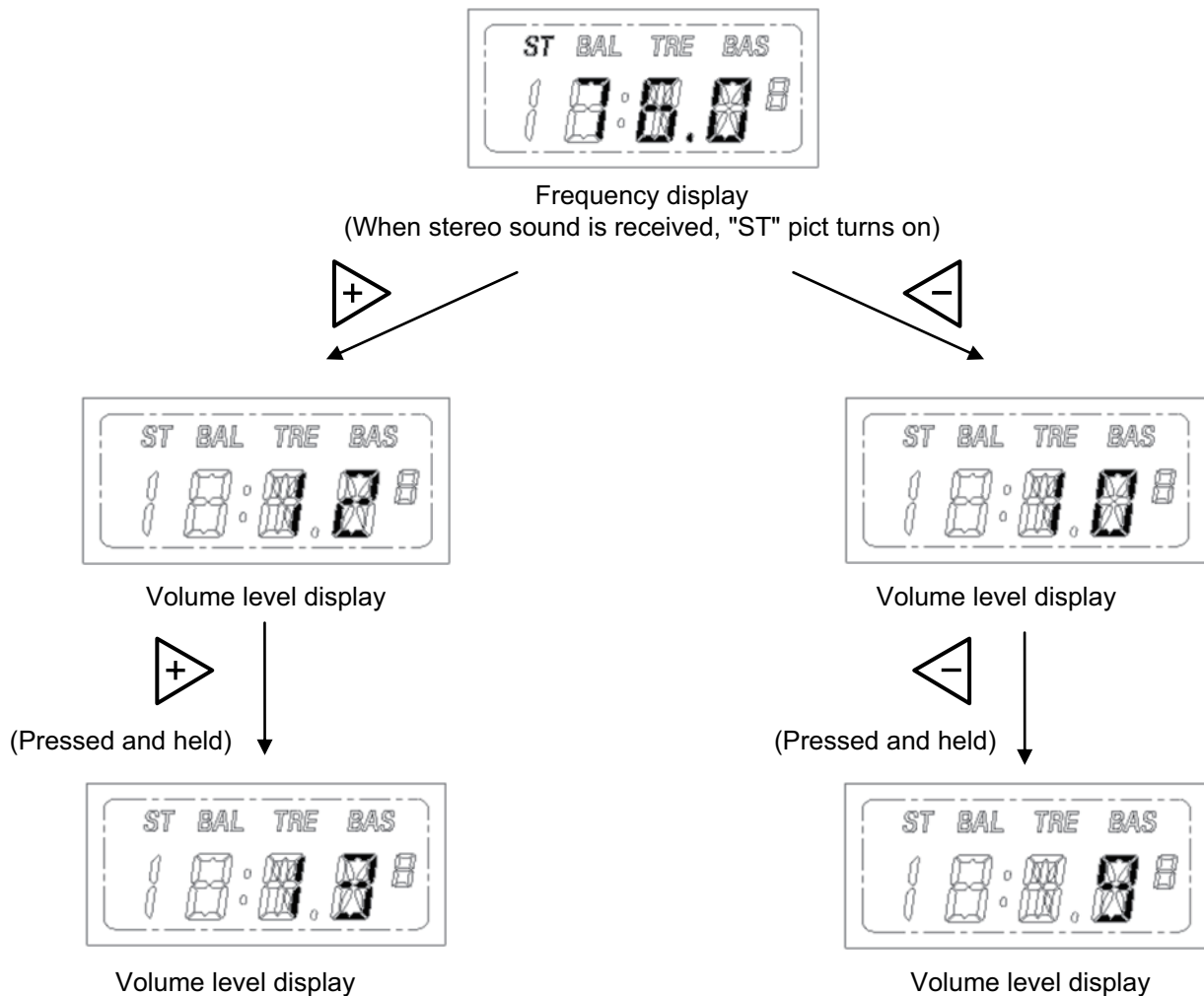
Pressing and holding the key makes the volume decrease consecutively.

Approximately 1.0 sec. after the finish of the operation, the display returns to the on-air condition.

As for the volume level, at the status of radio (AM/FM1/FM2), AUX, and Bluetooth Audio, it is controlled respectively.

{As for "SOUND ADJUSTMENT" (TRE, BAS, BAL) described below, the radio, AUX, and Bluetooth Audio are set commonly.}

{In case that selected band is FM1 (sound level of 11)}

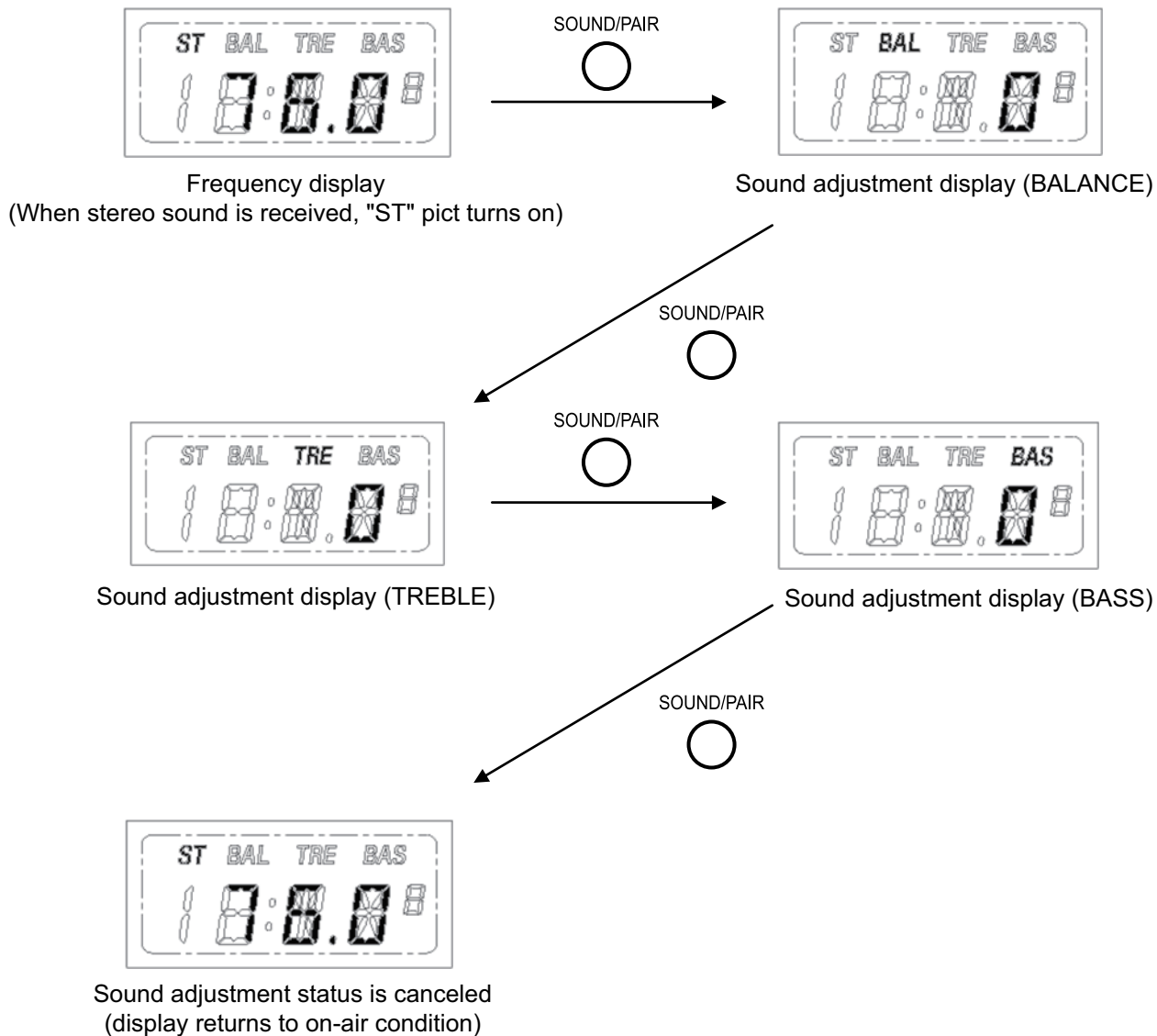


2.9.10 SOUND ADJUSTMENT

SOUND ADJUSTMENT

With the radio component in the on-air (normal) condition, press [SOUND/PAIR] key to enter the sound adjustment. By pressing [SOUND/PAIR] key repeatedly, the adjustment item is switched through BAL→TRE→BAS. With the radio component in the BAS condition, by pressing [SOUND/PAIR] key, the sound adjustment status is canceled and the display returns to the on-air condition.

(In case that selected band is FM1)

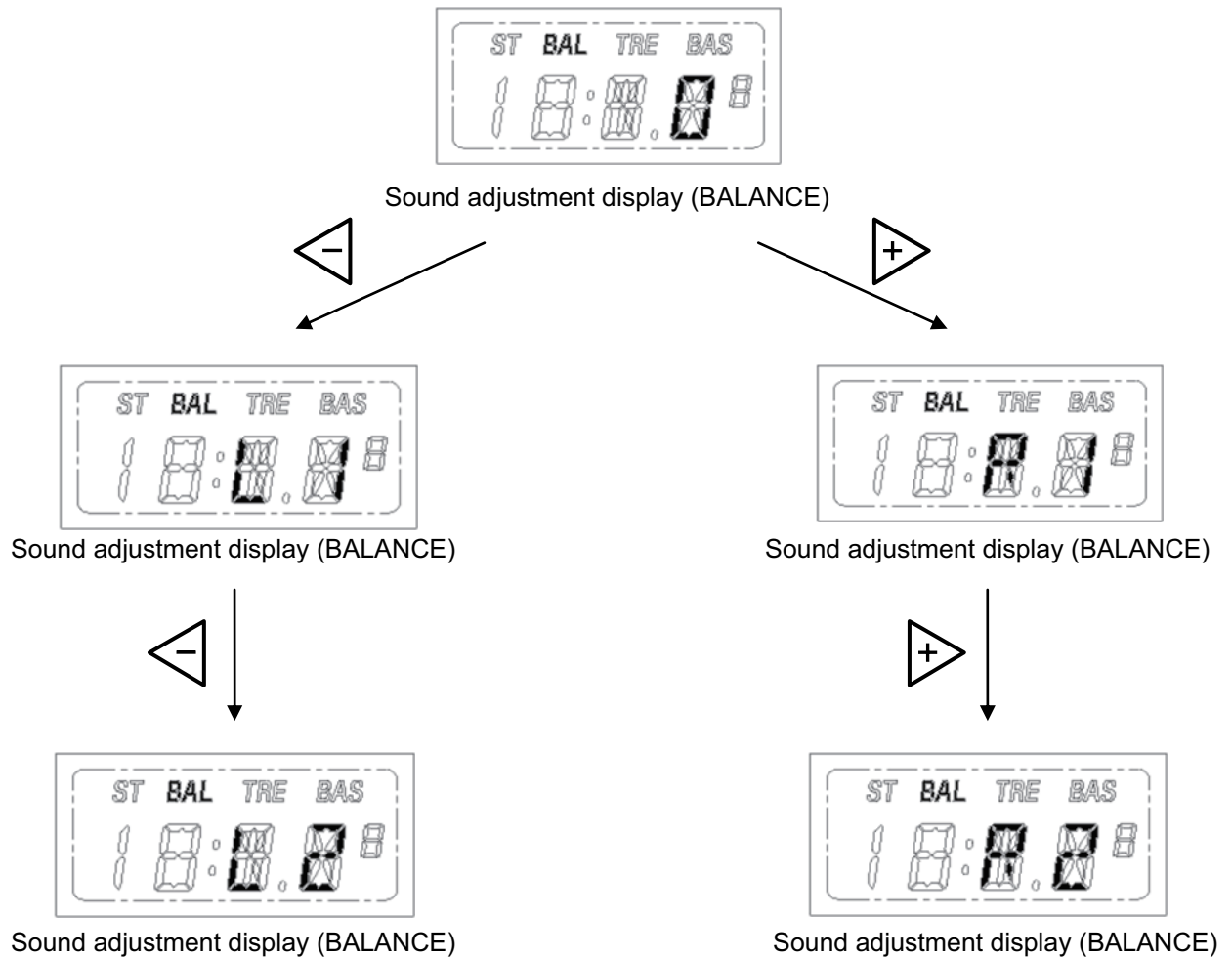


SOUND ADJUSTMENT (BALANCE)

With the radio component in the sound adjustment (balance) condition, press [UP] key to increase the speaker output by 1 step towards the R output.

Press [DOWN] key to increase the speaker output by 1 step towards the L output.

The setting range is L7 to R7 regarding 0 as the center. (L7 - 0 - R7)



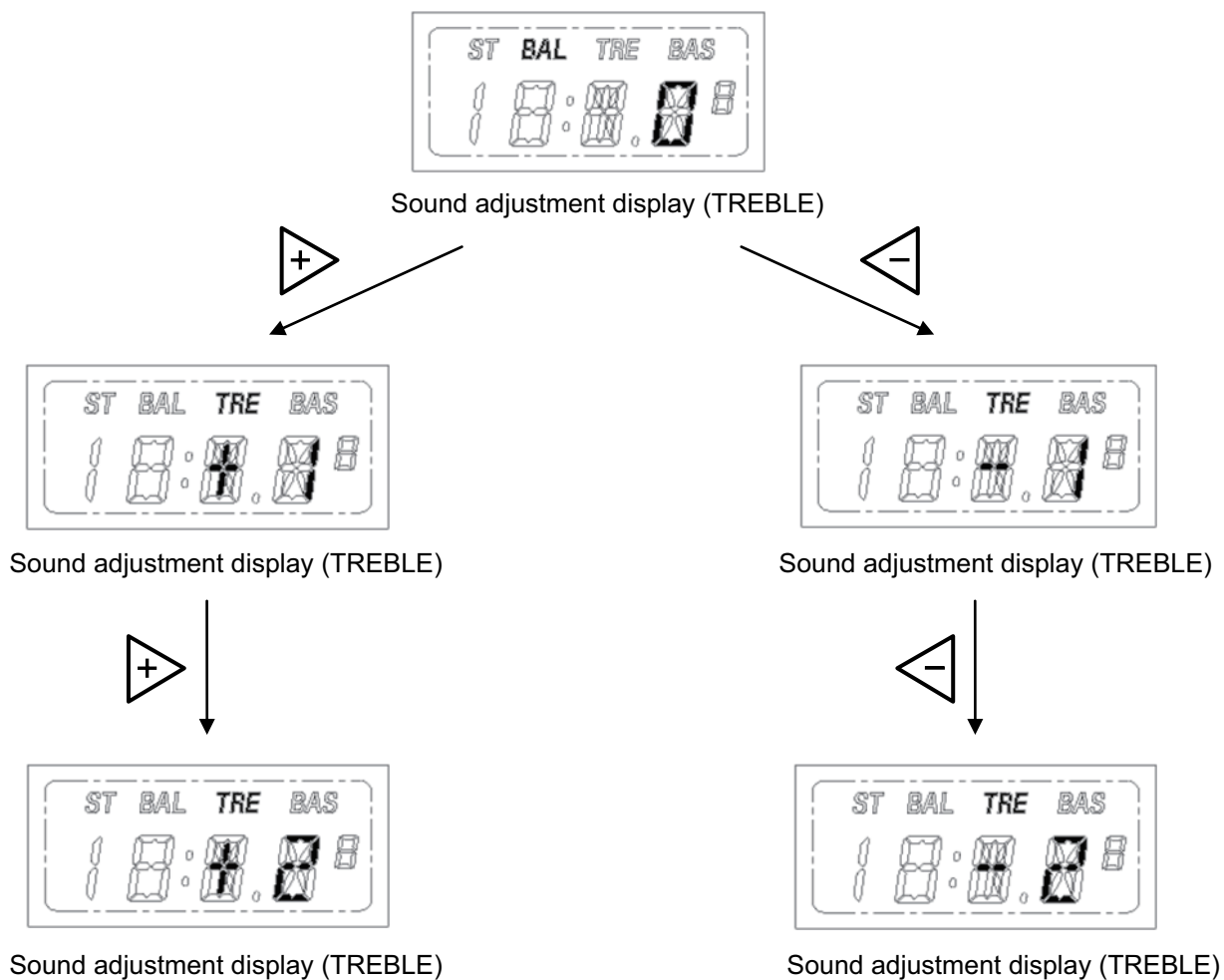
[2. MACHINE FAMILIARIZATION]

SOUND ADJUSTMENT (TREBLE)

With the radio component in the sound adjustment (treble) condition, press [UP] key to increase the treble level by 1 step.

Press [DOWN] key to decrease the treble level by 1 step.

The setting range is -7 to +7 regarding 0 as the center. (-7 - 0 - +7)

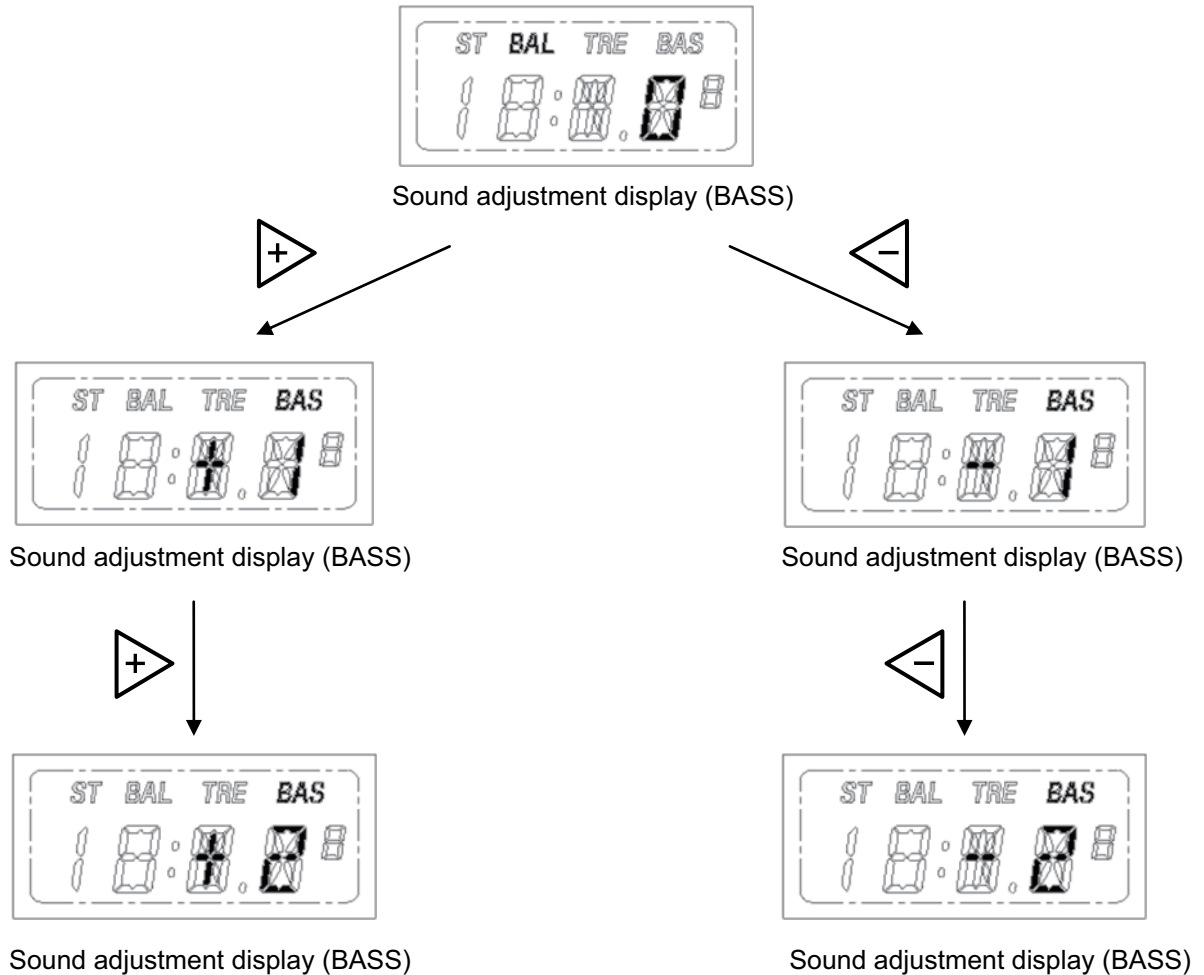


SOUND ADJUSTMENT (BASS)

With the radio component in the sound adjustment (bass) condition, press [UP] key to increase the bass level by 1 step.

Press [DOWN] key to decrease the bass level by 1 step.

The setting range is -7 to +7 regarding 0 as the center. (-7 - 0 to - 7)



2.9.11 CLOCK ADJUSTMENT

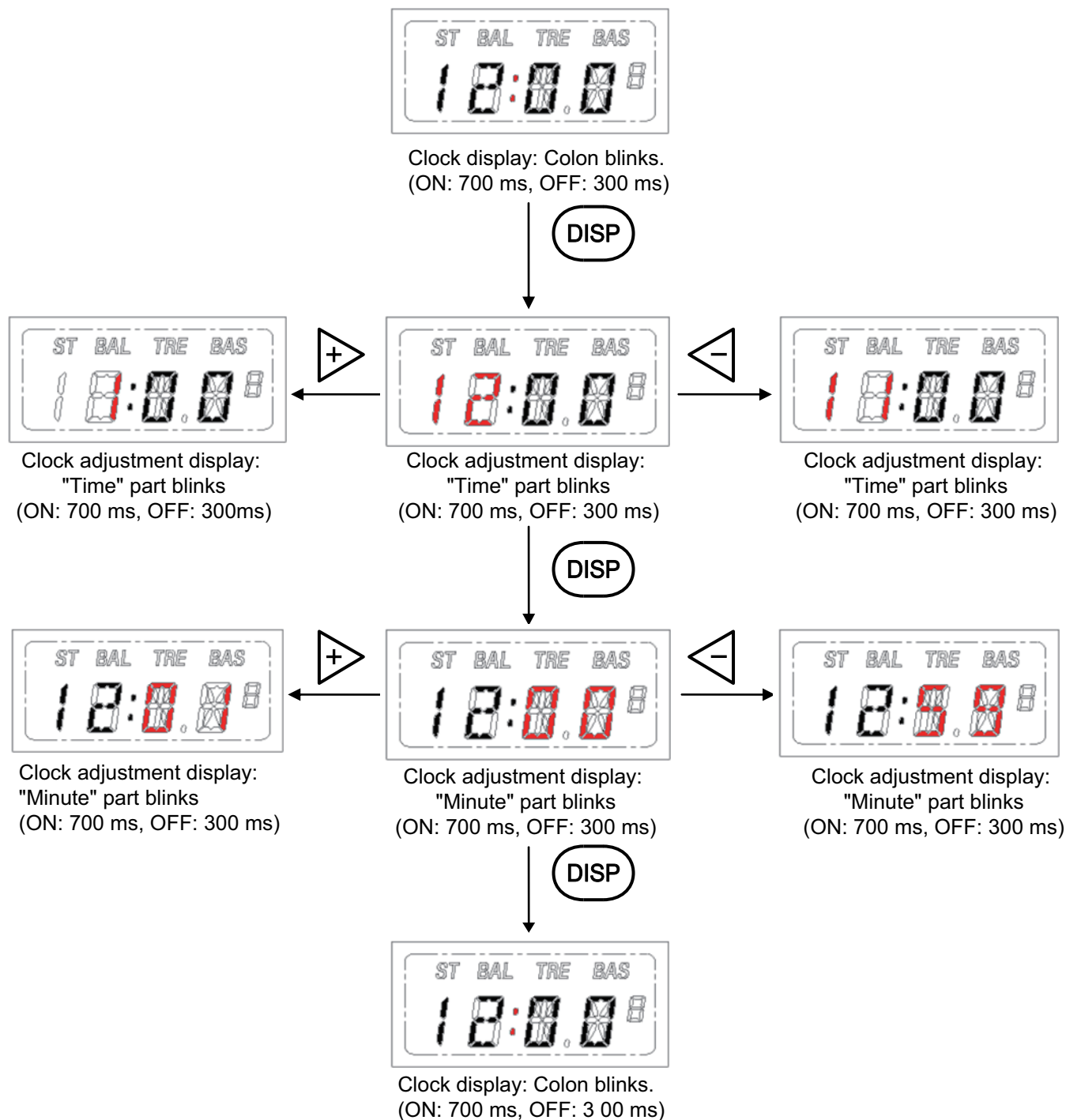
With the radio component in the clock display condition, press [DISP] key to enter the clock adjustment.

In the clock adjustment, by pressing [DISP] key, the adjustment target changes from time to minute (the adjustment target blinks). Then press [UP] or [DOWN] key to adjust time and minute respectively.

With the radio component in the minute adjustment condition, by pressing [DISP] key, the clock adjustment status is canceled.

(From this time, the second counting starts internally.)

* The clock display is 12 hours display.



2.10 AIR CONDITIONER

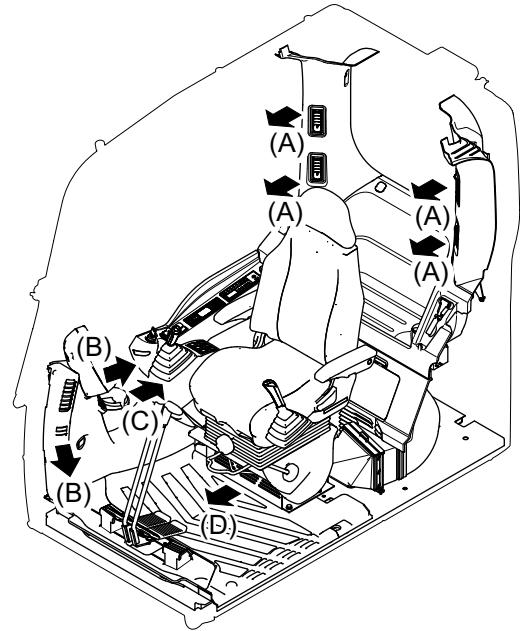
The air conditioner can adjust the temperature inside the cab and dehumidify the cab.

The air conditioner is located under the cover at the back of the operator's seat and sends out warm and cool air in the cab.

2.10.1 GRILLE (AIR OUTLET)

Select air stream in preferable direction by hand.

(A), (B), (C), and (D): Air Outlet



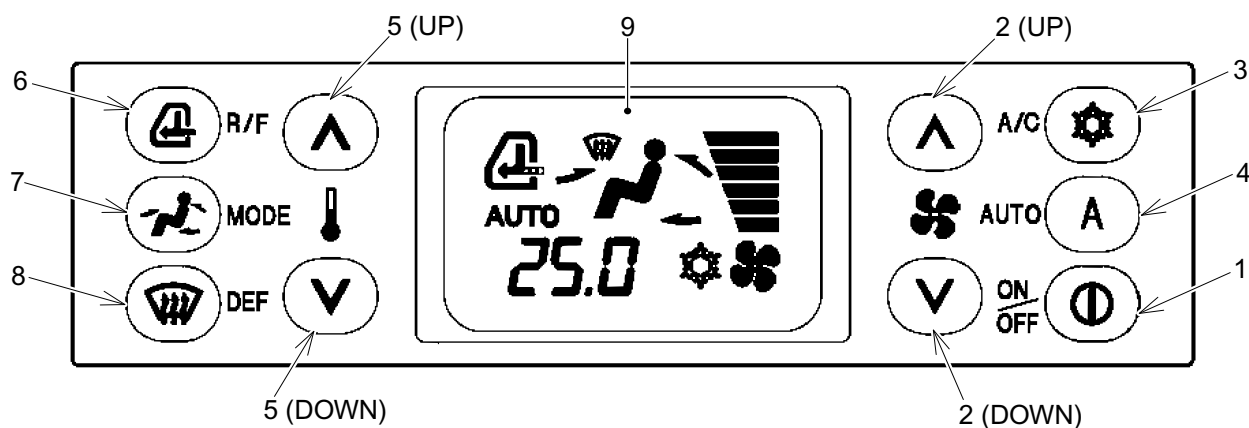
CAUTION

After replacing the parts, or charging or replacing refrigerant gas, break in the air conditioner.

When breaking in the air conditioner, be sure to set the engine speed to low speed.

Never start the air conditioner with the high engine speed. This might cause failure of the air conditioner.

2.10.2 AIR CONDITIONER CONTROL PANEL



Item	Name	Item	Name	Item	Name
1	Main power switch	4	AUTO control switch	7	Air outlet mode selector switch
2	Fan speed selector switch	5	Temperature setting switch	8	Defroster switch
3	Air conditioner switch	6	Internal and external air selector switch	9	LCD display

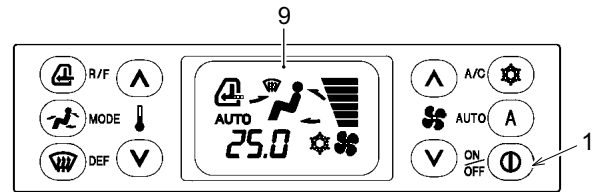
Notice

- The LCD display on the center shows temperature, air outlet mode, compressor ON-OFF, AUTO, internal and external air, and blower air amount.
- Each switch, fan mark of the blower, and TEMP mark have the night light (green).
- Electronic sound is output as each switch is pressed (However, when its operation is active only. For example, when the fan speed is "LO" in manual operation, no electronic sound is output even if pressing the switch to "DOWN" the fan speed further).

2.10.3 AIR CONDITIONER OPERATION PANEL

MAIN POWER SWITCH AND DISPLAY

- LCD display (9) is on when the air conditioner is operating.
The LCD is off when the air conditioner is not operating.
- Press main power switch (1), and all functions of air conditioner are ON or OFF. Every time you press this switch, the functions cycle between ON-OFF. When the power is ON, the air conditioner starts operating with the setting (If the setting was AUTO, it starts with AUTO, and if manual operation was selected, it starts with that selection) just before turning OFF.
- The air conditioner operation becomes OFF when the starter switch is turned OFF. But if the air conditioner is turned OFF with this switch, the air conditioner may not start with the previous operation status of control panel just before turning OFF, when the starter switch is turned ON.



FAN SPEED SELECTOR SWITCH AND DISPLAY

In the manual selection, the LCD fan speed display is like the following.

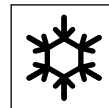
Fan speed	Lo (Min. Flow)	M1	M2	M3	M4	Hi (Max. Flow)
Display						

By pressing UP(2) or DOWN (2) of fan speed selector switch (2) manually, the AUTO control of fan speed is released, and "AUTO" display in LCD display (9) becomes OFF.

AIR CONDITIONER SWITCH AND DISPLAY

With the condition that the symbol of the right figure turns OFF on the LCD display, press air conditioner switch (3).

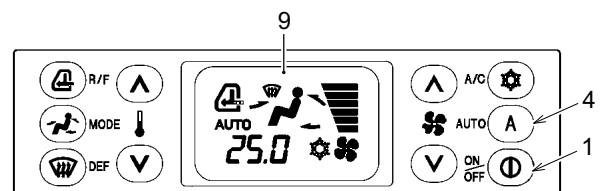
Then the compressor turns ON and the symbol of the right figure turns ON on LCD display (9). When the air



conditioner switch is pressed again, the compressor turns OFF and the symbol of the right figure turns OFF on LCD display (9).

AUTO CONTROL SWITCH AND DISPLAY

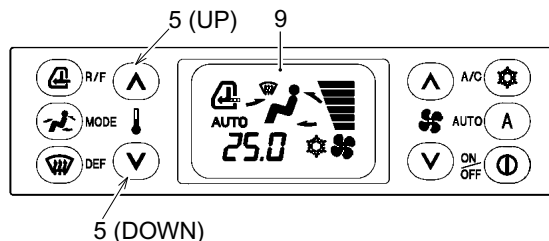
- "AUTO" on LCD display (9) turns ON only when both fan speed and air outlet control are "AUTO".
- When AUTO control switch (4) is pressed, the fan speed and the air outlet become under the AUTO control, and "AUTO" turns ON on LCD display (9).
- When main power switch (1) is OFF, turn the switch ON, and the air conditioner functions are also turned ON same as the main power switch. However, both fan speed and air outlet control become under the "AUTO" control.



[2. MACHINE FAMILIARIZATION]

TEMPERATURE SETTING SWITCH AND DISPLAY

- The digital set temperature appears on LCD display (9).
The set temperature range is 18 degrees C to 32 degrees C.
- When changing the set temperature, press "UP" and "DOWN" of temperature setting switch (9). The increment and decrement of UP (5) and DOWN (5) is 0.5 degrees C. When the switch is pressed and held down, the set temperature can decrease or increase continuously.
- The set temperature of 18 degrees C is the maximum cooling and that of 32 degrees C is the maximal heating control. And the both control do not operate by targeting the set temperature.
- The set temperature display can be switched between "Fahrenheit \longleftrightarrow Celsius". While the fan is operating, press and hold "UP" and "DOWN" of temperature setting switch (9) together for 5 seconds to switch the display between "Fahrenheit \longleftrightarrow Celsius". (No unit is displayed)



LCD DISPLAY

Celsius (degrees C): LO, 18.5 to 31.5, HI

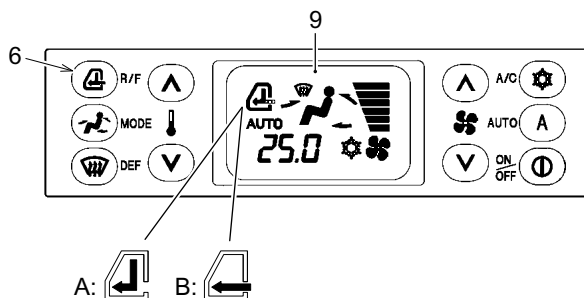
Fahrenheit (degrees F): LO, 64F to 89F, HI

INTERNAL AND EXTERNAL AIR SELECTOR SWITCH AND DISPLAY

- The current inlet mode is displayed in LCD display (9).
- Each time internal and external air selector switch (6) is pressed, the mode is switched to air recirculation or fresh air intake.

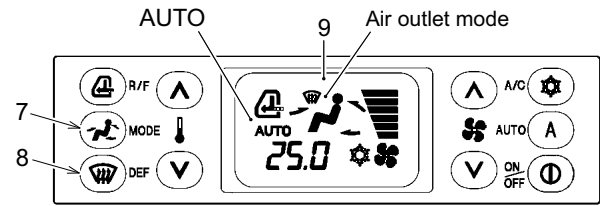
A: Air recirculation

B: Fresh air intake



AIR OUTLET MODE SELECTOR SWITCH AND DISPLAY

- The current air outlet mode position is displayed with arrow(s) on the LCD display.
- When air outlet mode selector switch (7) is pressed while "AUTO" is ON, the air outlet mode is fixed with the mode at that time and "AUTO" on the LCD display turns OFF, and the AUTO control of the air outlet mode is released.

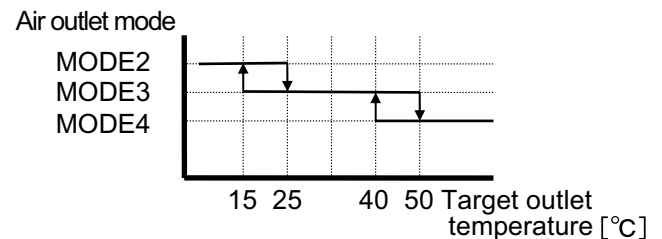


<Air outlet mode display>

Mode	1	2	3	4	5
Outlet mode	FACE	VENT	HIGH-LEVEL	F/D	DEF
	UP (Front side only)	UP	UP&DOWN	DOWN&WINDSHIELD	DEFROST
LCD display					

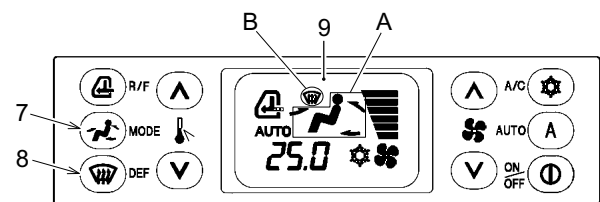
- When air outlet mode selector switch (7) is pressed in the manual control, it switches through Mode 1 → Mode 2 → Mode 3 → Mode 4 → Mode 1....
For the defroster switching, press defroster switch (8).
- Air outlet mode under the AUTO control switches as shown in the figure.

<Air outlet mode under auto control>



DEFROSTER SWITCH AND DISPLAY

- Press defroster switch (8), and the display A on LCD display (9) turns OFF, and the B mark is displayed.
- To go back to a mode other than the defroster, push air outlet mode selector switch (7), and the mode returns to the air outlet mode before the defroster switch was pressed.
- When defroster switch (8) is pressed while "AUTO" is ON, "AUTO" on LCD (9) turns OFF, and the AUTO control of the air outlet is released.



2.10.4 HOW TO USE AIR CONDITIONER

Close the cab door and windows to get the best performance as an automatic air conditioner.

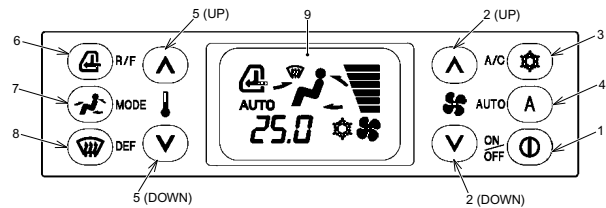
COOLING METHOD

CAUTION

To avoid freezing of the evaporator, do not operate the air conditioner for a long time in the COOL-MAX set temperature with the LO airflow.

If it is frozen and cool air does not flow any longer, turn air conditioner switch (3) off, set the temperature high, operate the air conditioner with the maximum airflow "HI", and then turn air conditioner switch (3) "ON".

1. Press main power switch (1).
2. Press fan speed selector switch (2), and select "HI".
3. Press temperature adjustment switch (5), and set your desired temperature.
4. Press air conditioner switch (3).
5. Press internal and external air selector switch (6), and select the air recirculation.
6. Press air outlet mode selector switch (7), and select the vent air outlet (Mode 2).
7. When the temperature inside the cab becomes low, adjust to the temperature and the fan speed to desired levels.
Press auto switch (4) to automatically control a temperature and mode.

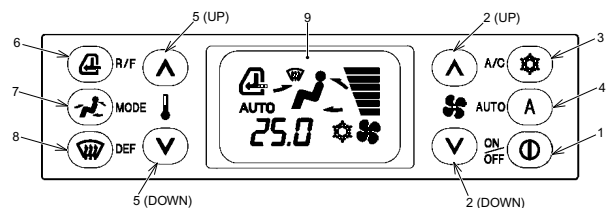


HEATING METHOD

CAUTION

The engine coolant is used for heating, and it is possible to heat the air when the temperature of the coolant is high.

1. Press main power switch (1).
2. Press fan speed selector switch (2), and select "HI".
3. Press temperature adjustment switch (5), and set your desired temperature.
4. Press internal and external air selector switch (6), and select the fresh air intake.
5. Press air outlet mode selector switch (7), and select the down air outlet (Mode 4).
6. When the temperature inside the cab becomes high, adjust to the temperature and the fan speed to desired levels.
Press auto switch (4) to automatically control a temperature and mode.

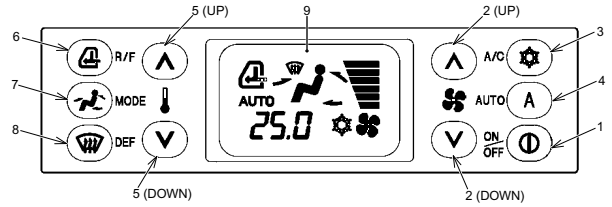


METHOD OF HEATING WITH DEHUMIDIFICATION AND DEMISTING

CAUTION

When the outdoor temperature is 0 degrees C or lower, the air conditioner (compressor) may not work.




1. Press main power switch (1).
2. Press fan speed selector switch (2), and select your desired fan speed.
3. Press temperature adjustment switch (5), and set your desired temperature.
4. Press internal and external air selector switch (6), and select the fresh air intake.
5. Press air conditioner switch (3), and operate the air conditioner (compressor).



2.10.5 SELF-DIAGNOSIS FUNCTION IN DISPLAY MONITOR

If there are problems on the input circuit of the driving line in the motor actuator, they can be checked on the panel display.

<Disconnection detection of the motor actuator and the motor lock detection display>

Error Location	Error Display	
Air mix	• Displays "HLE" on temperature display segment	
Air outlet mode	• Flashes human indication	
Switching internal and external air	• Flashes internal and external air symbols	

If there are problems on the input circuit of the evaporator and recirculation air sensors, they can be checked on the panel display.

<Disconnection detection display of evaporator and recirculation air sensors>

Error Location	Error Display	
Evaporator sensor	• Displays "E" on the temperature display, first decimal point	18 degrees C : LO.E 25 degrees C : 25.E 32 degrees C : HO.E
Recirculation air sensor	• Displays "H L" on the temperature display and "0 to 9" on the first decimal point	HL. 0 to HL. 9

Error detection of each sensor from monitor mode (showing failure control of the control panel)

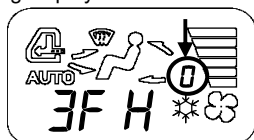
- To start the monitor display, press and hold the internal and external air selector switch and the main power switch simultaneously for one second or more while the air conditioner is running. Then the display switches to the monitor mode. Follow the same procedure to exit the mode.
- The normal status, disconnection, and short circuit of the recirculation air sensor and evaporator sensor are shown as segment display.

<7seg display for monitor>

Sensor Name	7seg Display for Monitor
Recirculation air sensor	0
Evaporator sensor	1
Solar radiation sensor	2

<Example:

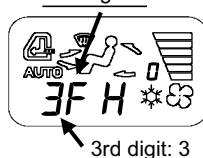
7seg display for monitor location>



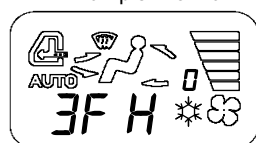
<Example:

Digits display location>

2nd digit: F



<Example: Normal>



<List table of 3rd digit segment>

		2nd digit segment display															
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
3rd digit segment display	0	Recirculation air sensor disconnection "0CH" display															
	1	Evaporator sensor disconnection "0CH" display															
	2	Each sensor is normal															
	3																
	4																
	5																
	6																
	7																
	8																
	9																
	A																
	B																
	C																
	D																
	E																
	F																
		Recirculation air sensor short "F6H" Display															
		Evaporator sensor short "F6H" Display															

2.10.6 HANDLING AT IN-SEASON/OFF-SEASON

IN-SEASON

To use the air conditioner for a long time comfortably, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer for inspection and maintenance of the air conditioner at the beginning of in-season of cooling.

OFF-SEASON

During off-season, operate the air conditioner at least once a week for several minutes.

The oil shortage at each part of the compressor will be prevented by operating the air conditioner and it will always be kept in the best condition.

2.11 HANDLING OF SEAT BELT

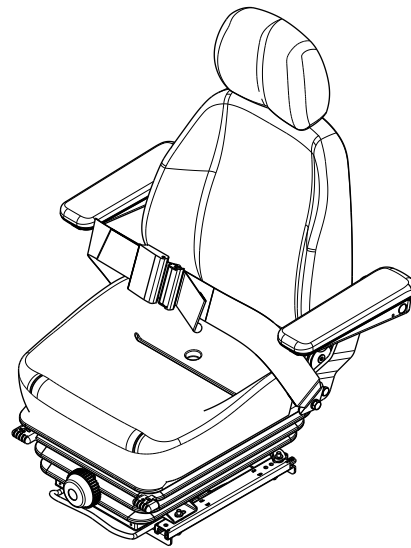


INSTALLATION OF SEAT BELT

- Be sure to fasten your seat belt during operation. If not followed, it can result in serious accidents or death caused by being heavily hit inside the cab or thrown out of the cab when the machine tips/rolls over.
 - Check the mounting bolts installed to the seat for looseness and retighten the bolts if required.
 - Change the seat belt every three years, even if there is no abnormality in the appearance. The manufacturing date is woven into the back side of the belt.
-

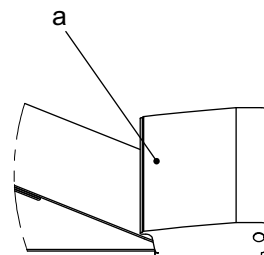
2.11.1 HOW TO FASTEN SEAT BELT

1. Check that the seat belt is not twisted, and insert it into buckle until it clicks.
2. Adjust the seat belt to remove excess slack.



2.11.2 HOW TO UNFASTEN SEAT BELT

- To unfasten the seat belt, pull "a" of the buckle.

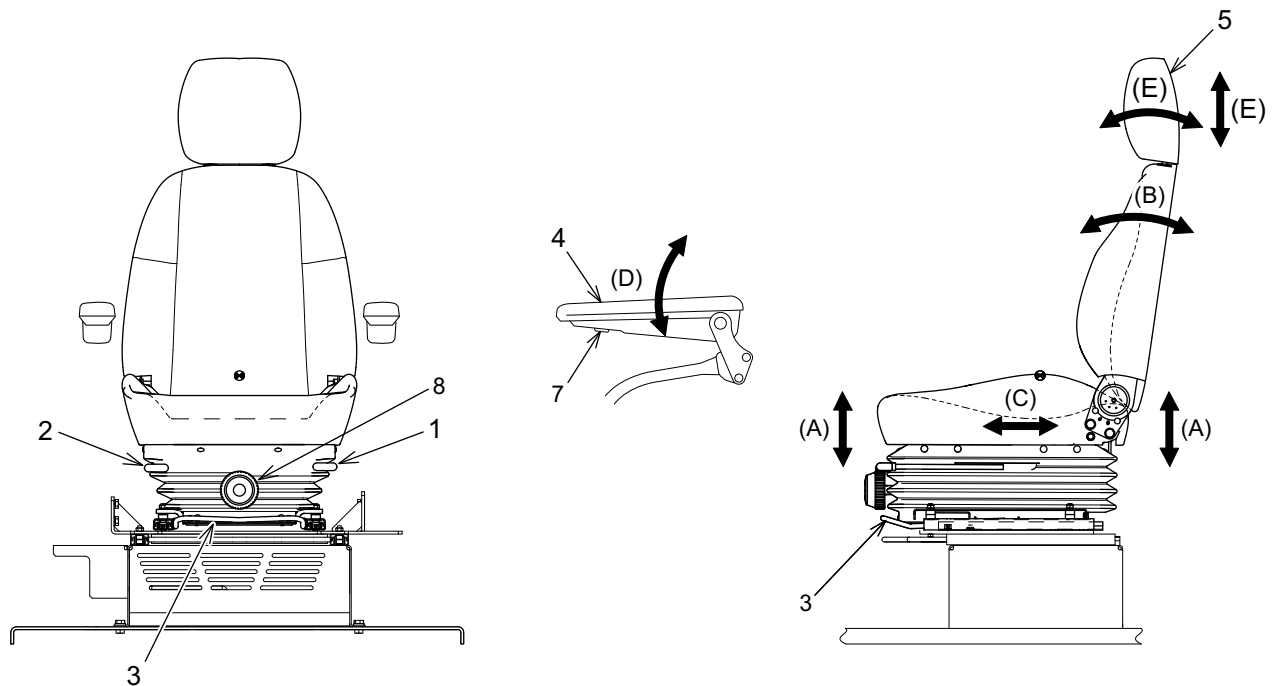


2.12 HANDLING OF OPERATOR'S SEAT

The position of operator's seat can be adjusted. Adjust the seat to the position at which you can operate the control levers and pedals easily.

CAUTION

When adjusting the operator's seat, pay attention to hands in order not to be caught between the handle and seat stand.



2.12.1 HEIGHT AND TILT ADJUSTMENT

(A) The height and angle of operator's seat can be adjusted.

- Pull lever (1) up to tilt the front of the seat up/down. (5 levels tilting)
- Pull lever (1) down to tilt the rear of the seat up/down. (5 levels tilting)
- The height of the seat is adjusted by tilting the front and rear of the seat alternatively.

2.12.2 RECLINING ADJUSTMENT

(B) The reclining angle can be adjusted.

- Pull lever (2) up, and recline the backrest to your desired angle. After adjustment, release the lever to fix the angle.

2.12.3 FRONT/REAR SEAT ADJUSTMENT

(C) The position of operator's seat can be adjusted back and forth.

- To slide the seat back and forth, pull handle (3) up. After adjusting the seat to your desired position, release the handle and check that the seat is locked securely. (Adjustable length: 160 mm)

2.12.4 ARM REST ADJUSTMENT

(D) The arm rest can be lifted up, and its angle can be adjusted.

- Arm rest (4) can be lifted up backward.
- Turn control dial (6) at the bottom of arm rest (4) by hand to fine adjust the angle of the arm rest in regular position up/down.

2.12.5 HEAD REST ADJUSTMENT

(E) The head rest can be moved up, down, back, and forth.

- To adjust the head rest up and down, hold the head rest with both hands, and move it up or down slowly.
- To adjust the head rest back and forth, hold the head rest with both hands, and move it back and forth to your desired position.

2.12.6 SUSPENSION ADJUSTMENT

(F) The suspension can be adjusted.

- Turn dial (8) to adjust the displayed weight of the adjustment grip to match with your weight.

2.13 HANDLING PARTS INSIDE CAB



LEAVING OPERATOR'S SEAT

Do not leave the cab with the engine running.

When necessary to leave the operator's seat, be sure to lock the control lock lever and then stop the engine.

If the control lever is unexpectedly touched without the control lock lever locked, it may cause severe accident resulting in severe injury.

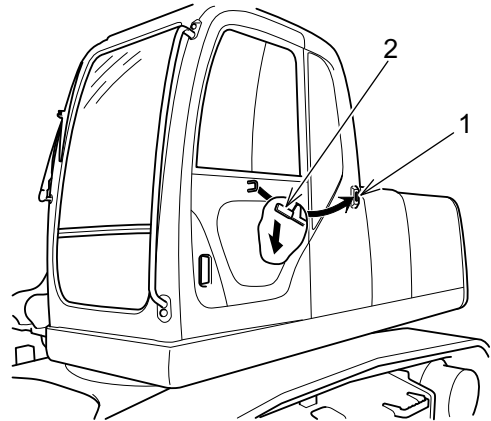
2.13.1 CAB DOOR LOCK



In operation, lock the door securely either open side or close side. If not locked, the door may open or close unexpectedly and this may cause danger and failure of the machine.

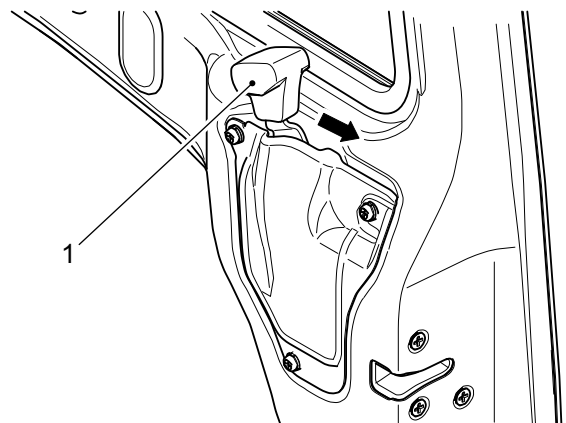
This is used to fix the door in the condition where the door is open.

- Push the door against catch (1) and door is fixed.
- To close the door, push down lever (2) on the left side of the operator's seat to release the catch.
- When necessary to fix the door, fix the door to the catch securely.



2.13.2 OPENING DOOR FROM INSIDE OF CAB

- To open the door from the inside of the cab, move lever (1) to the direction of the arrow.



2.13.3 OPENING/CLOSING FRONT WINDOW (UPPER)



WARNING

OPENING/CLOSING FRONT WINDOW (UPPER)

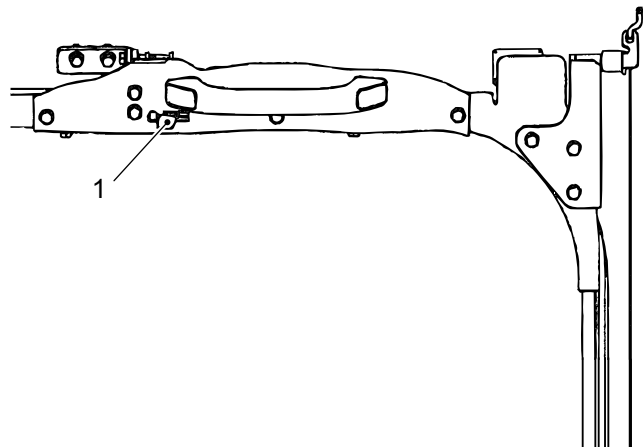
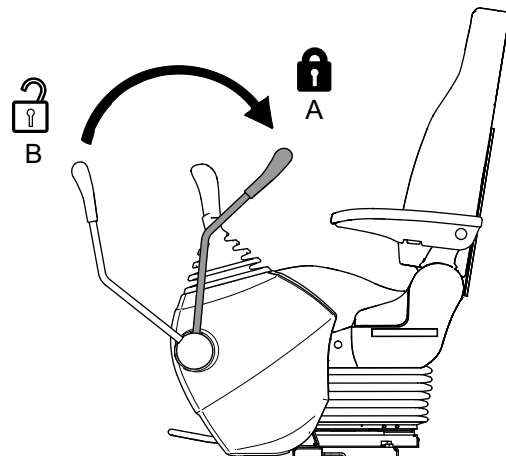
- Opening/closing the front window with the machine in a level position and lock the front window securely. If the lock is released in the forward tilting position of machine there is a possibility of falling of the front window.
- When closing the front window, the closing speed increases due to the weight of front window. Hold and close it by both hands securely.
- When opening/closing the front window in, pull up the control lock lever to the "LOCKED" position and stop the engine.



CAUTION

To prevent your hand from being caught between the windows, open and close the front window slowly. It is dangerous to work with the front window not or incompletely locked. Confirm that the front window is surely locked.

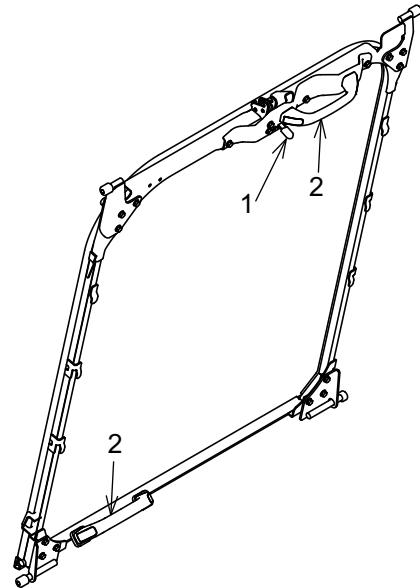
1. Move the machine to a level and firm place.
2. Put the bucket on the ground.
3. Stop the engine and move the control lock lever to the "LOCKED" position.
4. Push lock lever (1) on the center of the front window (upper) right to release the lock.



5. Hold and lift up the handles(2) on the upper and lower part of the front window (upper), and move the front window (upper) fully toward the back of the ceiling to automatically set it to the locked condition; however, check it is locked securely.

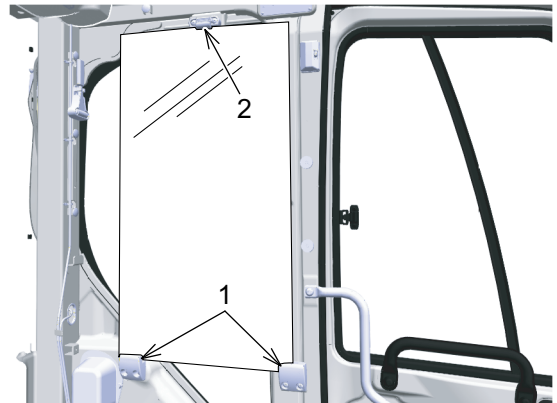
When closing front window

1. Hold handles (2) at the upper and lower parts of the front window (upper) and push lock lever (1) right to release the lock.
2. When the front window (upper) is returned to the original position, it is locked automatically. However, check that the window is securely locked.



2.13.4 RETRACTING FRONT WINDOW (LOWER)

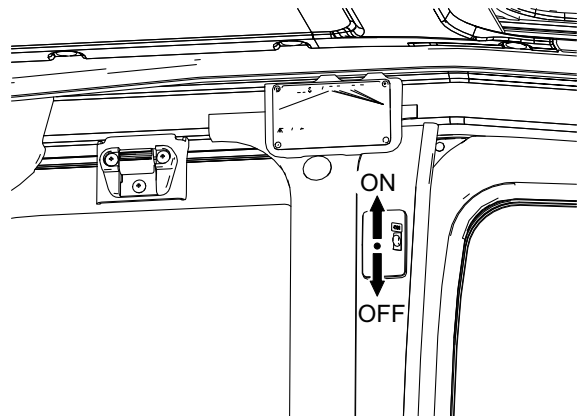
1. After retracting the front window (upper) in the ceiling, hold the front window (lower) by hands and remove it from the window frame. The removed front window (lower) should be stored in holder (1) on the left back side of the cab for secure storage.
2. Insert the glass into right and left holders (1), and fix the glass with lock (2) on the upper window frame.



2.13.5 CAB ROOM LAMP

Operate the switch in accordance with the purpose.

- Turn the switch "ON" to turn on the lamp.
- The lamp does not turn on when the switch is on the "OFF" side.



2.14 EMERGENCY ESCAPE FROM OPERATOR'S STATION

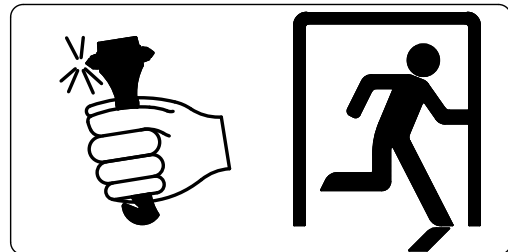
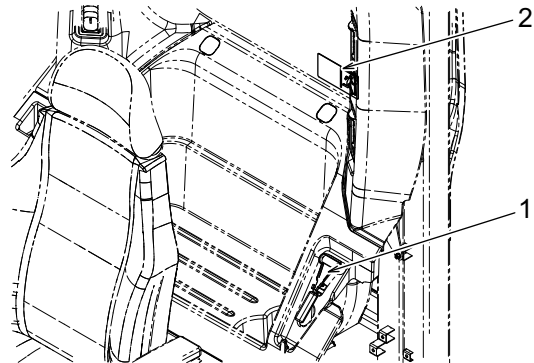
If it is impossible to open the cab door in an emergency, escape from the cab by the following way.

1. Open the front window and escape through the front window.

Notice

For how to open the front window, see "OPENING/CLOSING FRONT WINDOW" in Chapter 2.

2. If the front window cannot be opened, break the front or rear window glass by using hammer for emergency exit (1) placed on the right rear of the cab.



CAUTION

Pay attention to the broken pieces so as not to be injured when breaking the window glass.

Notice

Label (2) indicating the emergency exit are affixed on the rear window.

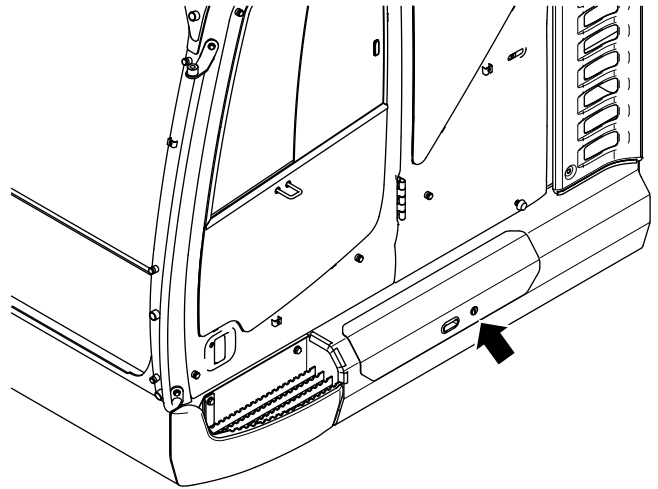
2.15 OTHER ACCESSORIES

2.15.1 TOOL BOX

Use the tool box for storing tools and fixtures. The storage place is positioned at the step portion of the cab entrance.

Use the starter key to release the lock on the door, and hold it with the stay.

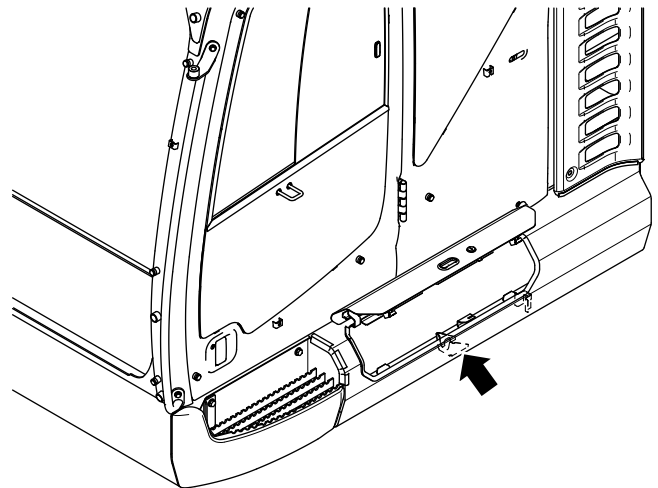
After using tools, remove the stay, close the cover, and lock it with the starter key.



2.15.2 GREASE GUN HOLDER

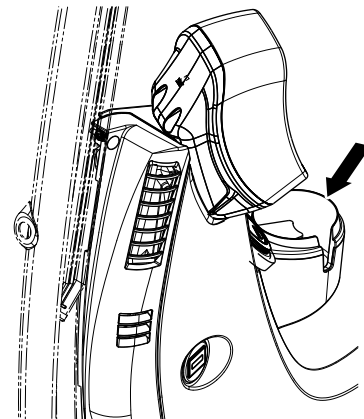
The grease gun holder is positioned at the step portion of the cab entrance.

When the gun is not used, put it on this holder.



2.15.3 CUP HOLDER

This is located on the right inside the cab.
Store plastic bottles, etc.



2.15.4 GUARD/SIDE DOOR (WITH LOCK)

CAUTION

Be sure to stop the engine before opening the engine hood, battery cover, and side cover, etc.

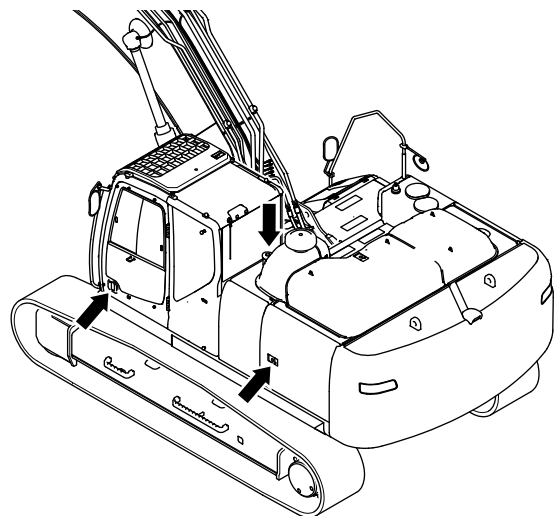
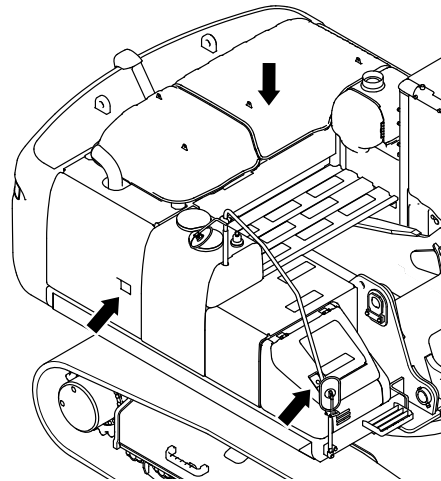
The engine hood, fuel inlet, right and left side doors, and cab door covers are provided with the lock mechanism. To open/close them, use the starter key. When using the starter key, fully insert it and then turn it. If it is not fully inserted, it may be broken.

HOW TO UNLOCK AND OPEN GUARD AND SIDE DOOR

1. Insert the starter key into the keyway.



2. Turn the starter key counterclockwise and pull the door handle to open the door.
3. If the door is provided with a stay, support the door securely using the stay.



HOW TO LOCK GUARD AND SIDE DOOR

1. If a stay is provided, return the stay to the original position.
2. Close the door.
3. Turn the starter key clockwise and remove it.

2.16 BATTERY POWER-OFF SWITCH

CAUTION

When turning the battery power-off switch to the "O (OFF)" position, turn the starter switch to the OFF position and wait 5 minute or more. And then operate the battery power-off switch.

If the battery power is turned off immediately after stopping the engine, it may cause damage to the exhaust gas cleaning device.

Notice

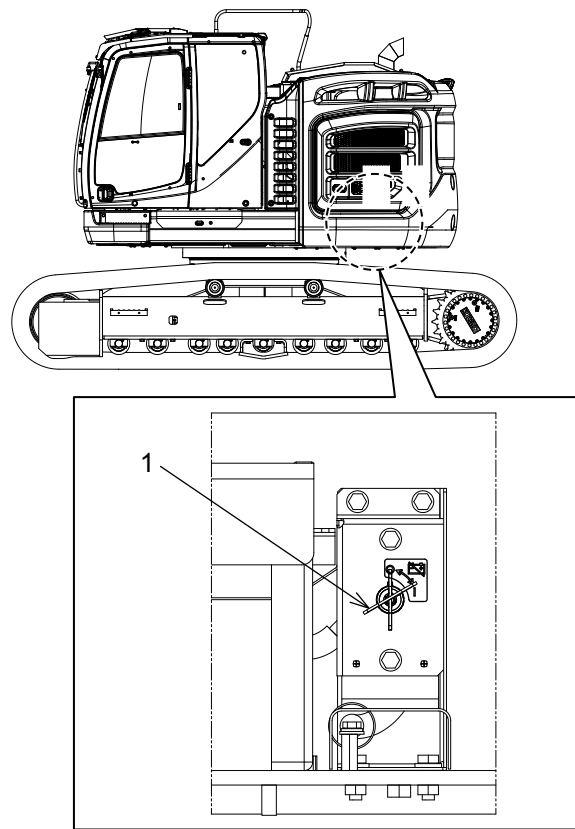
When setting the switch to the OFF position, all electrical circuits are shut down, and the preset memory and clock memory of the radio are cleared.

The battery power-off switch shuts down the battery circuit.

The switch is located on the right of the opened left side door. It is usually set to the "I (ON)" position.

ON(I): Turn key (1) right to connect the electrical circuit.

OFF(O): Turn key (1) left to shut down the electrical circuit.



Notice

Set the battery power-off switch to "OFF" for the following purposes:

To stop operation of the machine for a long period (one month or longer)

Shut down the power circuit to prevent battery discharge, short circuit, or electric leakage.

To perform maintenance of the electrical system or electric welding

Shut down the power circuit to prevent damage of electrical components, fire and so on.

3. MACHINE OPERATION

3.1 DAILY MAINTENANCE CHECKS

Before starting the engine, walk around the machine to check for any loose nuts and bolts, any oil, fuel or coolant leakage, and the condition of the attachment/equipment, body structure, and hydraulic system. Check for any looseness in the electrical wiring and for any accumulated material (leaves, dirt, etc.).



MACHINE FIRE PREVENTION

The deposit of flammable materials, fuel leakage and oil leakage in heated area around the engine, or muffler and battery may cause fire of machine. Check the area sufficiently, and if the abnormality is found, repair it or contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.

- Clean all slippery substances such as grease, oil, hydraulic oil, mud, ice, and others attached to the steps, handrails, crawlers, ladders, and platforms.
- Check the engine for any oil, fuel or coolant leakage. Repair as required.
- Check the area around the engine and radiator for any accumulated material and remove as required.
- Check the hydraulic devices, hydraulic oil tank, hoses and joints for oil leakage, and repair as required.
- Check the travel system, such as the crawler, front idlers and sprockets, for any damage or wear, and the bolts for looseness, and the rollers for oil leakage, and repair as required.
- Check the attachment/equipment, body structure, and cylinders for any cracking, damage or looseness, and repair as required.
- Check the doors, covers, steps and handrails for damage, and the bolts for looseness. Repair any damages and tighten loose bolts.
- Check the monitor for damage and replace it as required.
- Check the rearview mirrors for abnormality and replace it with a new one when it is broken. Clean the surface of the mirror and adjust the angle so that the operator can see the rear from the operator's seat.
- If the machine is equipped with the rearview camera and the side cameras, clean the lenses to display clear images from the rearview and side cameras to the monitor.
- Check the seat belts and the mounting hardware for the abnormality and if any damage is found, replace it with a new one.

3

3.1.1 LOCK LEVER

Lock levers are located on the side doors and the engine hood.

When opening the side doors and the engine hood, be sure to hold the doors open with the lock lever.



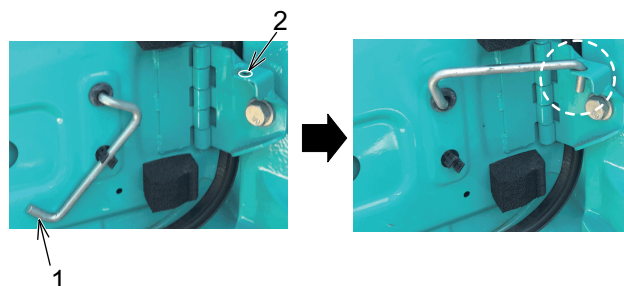
Before performing inspection or maintenance, be sure that the door or engine hood is securely fixed with the lock lever to prevent it from moving.

Unfixed door or engine door might cause injury.

Swing door lock lever

Open the door and insert the lock lever (1) into the lock hole (2) to secure the lock lever.

Before closing the door, remove the lock lever from the lock hole, put it back to the original position and then close the door.

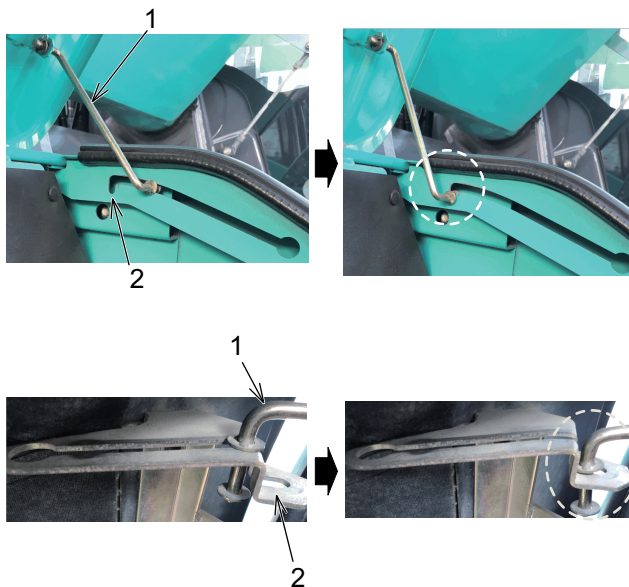


[3. MACHINE OPERATION]

Slide lock lever

Open the door, slide the lock lever(1) to support the part (2) of the guide to secure the lock lever.

Before closing the door, remove the lock lever from support the part (2) and then close the door.



3.2 CHECK BEFORE STARTING ENGINE

The following checkup should be performed once before the first engine startup in a day.

3.2.1 CHECKING COOLANT LEVEL AND REFILLING



HANDLING OF COOLANT AND CAP

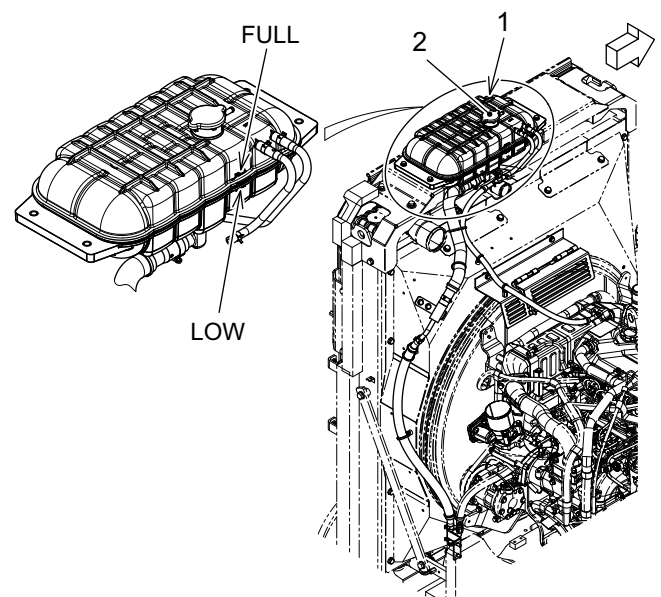
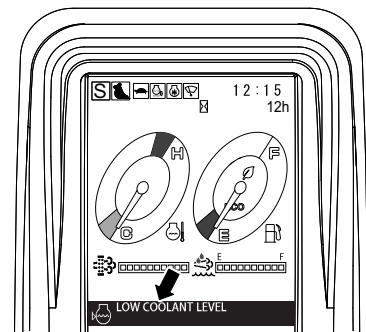
Do not loosen or remove the reserve tank cap and the radiator cap when the coolant is under high pressure and high temperature. High temperature steam and coolant will spout and could cause burns.

- When opening the cap, wait until the coolant cools down, and then slowly turn and open the radiator cap.
- The antifreeze is poisonous, so prevent it from contacting with skin. If the antifreeze gets into your eyes or on your skin, flush the eyes or skin with plenty of water, and seek medical attention.



- Do not open the radiator cap to prevent the coolant from spouting. Check or refill the coolant of the reserve tank when the coolant is cooled down.
- Securely close the cap after opening it.
- When "LOW COOLANT LEVEL" is displayed on the multi-display, immediately refill the coolant.
- If the coolant level reduces frequently in a short time, it may be caused by water leakage, so contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.

1. Open the engine hood and hold it with the stay.
2. Check the coolant level of reserve tank (1).
If the coolant level is at between FULL (upper limit) and LOW (lower limit), it is proper.
3. If the coolant level is lower than LOW (lower limit), check the parts for water leakage and then refill the coolant.
4. Loosen reserve tank cap (2) slowly. After checking that the pressure is completely released, push the cap down, loosen it further, and then remove it. Here is the reserve tank filler opening.
5. Refill the coolant to the level between FULL (upper limit) and LOW (lower limit) of the reserve tank.
6. Close cap (2) and close the engine hood.



3.2.2 CHECKING ENGINE OIL LEVEL OF ENGINE OIL PAN AND REFILLING



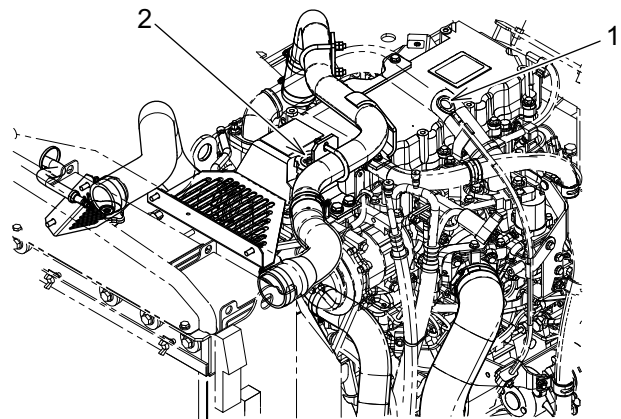
TEMPERATURE AFTER STOPPING ENGINE

Immediately after the engine is stopped, there is a possibility of getting burn with heated parts and oil. Start working after the temperature goes down.

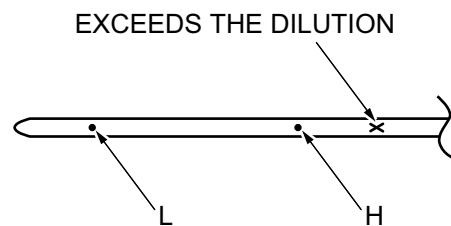
Notice

- Make sure the machine is in a level and firm condition when checking the engine oil level.
- Be sure to check the engine oil level before starting the engine.
- When checking the engine oil level after operation, wait approximately 30 minutes from engine stop before checking it.

1. Open the engine hood with the starter key and hold it with the stay.
2. Pull out oil level gauge (1) and wipe off the oil with a waste cloth.
3. Insert oil level gauge (1) completely once again and pull it out.



4. When oil level gauge (1) indicates the oil level between "H" (upper limit) and "L" (lower limit), it is proper. When the oil level does not reach "L" level, refill the engine oil from oil filler cap (2). If the oil is significantly contaminated or deteriorated, change it ahead of the periodic replacement interval. Also, when the oil level exceeds the mark that shows the dilution end point, change the engine oil. For engine oils to use, see "LUBRICANT, FUEL & COOLANT SPECIFICATIONS" in Chapter 4.

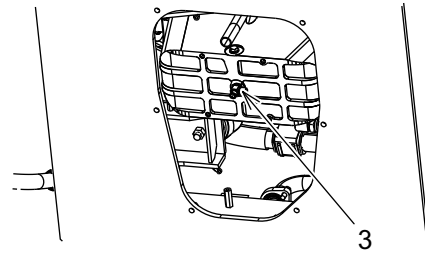


Notice

The dilution end point is the amount of limit when the engine oil is diluted because of intrusion of fuel at regeneration.

If the engine oil exceeds the dilution end point, the viscosity of the engine oil decreases and this can cause damages to the engine.

5. When the oil level is above the "H" level, loosen drain cock (4) to drain the excess engine oil and check the oil level once again.
6. Check that the oil level is proper and insert level gauge (1) securely.
7. Remove the support stay and close the engine hood.



3.2.3 CHECKING FUEL LEVEL AND REFUELING



REFUELING

- Never use the oil other than diesel fuel as fuel. Check the fuel type again before refueling.
- Be sure to stop the engine before refueling.
- Do not overflow fuel while refueling. Wipe off spilled fuel completely.

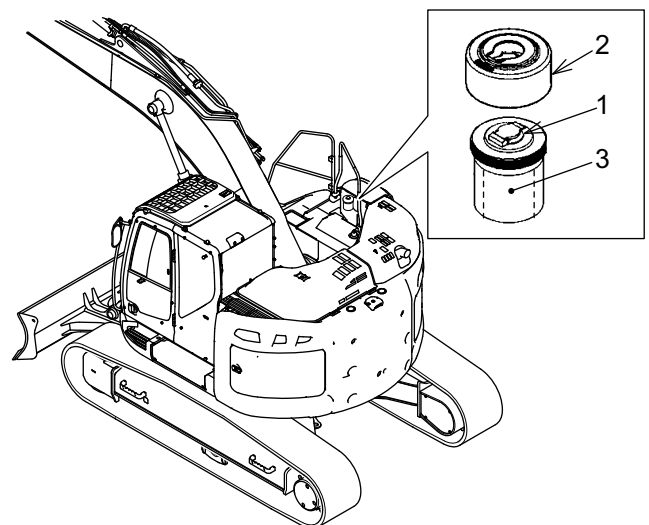


When getting on and off the machine, use the steps and handrails to prevent yourself from falling down or off from the machine.

Notice

- Be careful not to refuel the tank to a level more than necessary (to the top end of tank). There is a possibility of overflowing because the fuel expands as the outside air temperature rises.
- Be sure to use diesel fuel as fuel, which meets the standard of each country. To achieve a good fuel efficiency and exhaust gas property, the engine of this machine uses the electronically controlled fuel injector. Because this device requires high parts precision and high lubricating ability, when low viscosity fuel with low lubricating ability is used, the durability may decrease significantly.

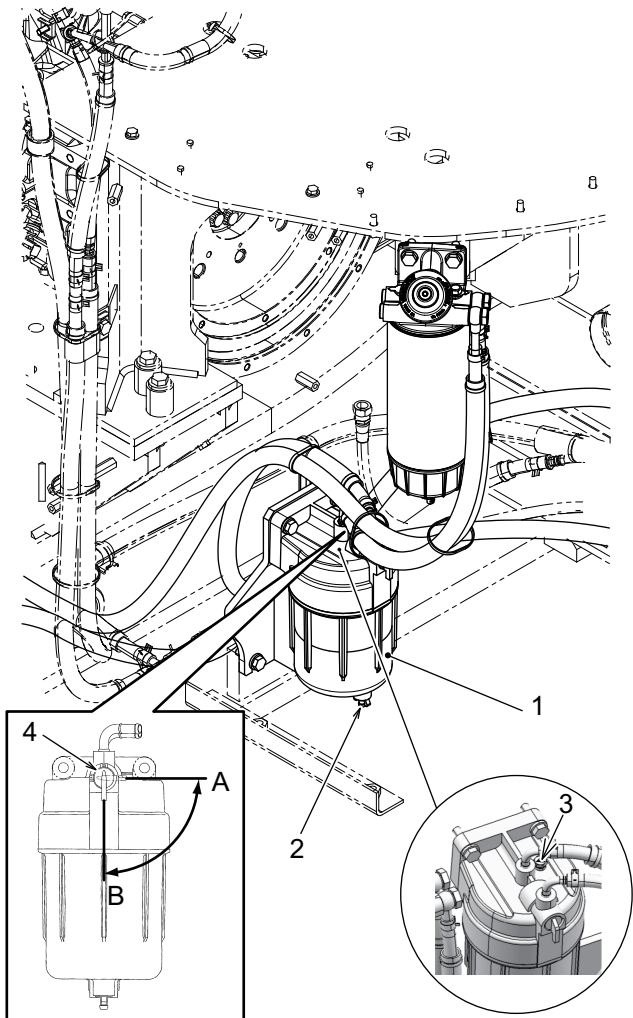
1. Use the gauge cluster to check the fuel level.
After turning the starter switch ON, the fuel level meter is displayed. When the fuel level is low, the pointer points E.
2. Refuel only after stopping the engine.
3. When refueling, climb up from the right front side of the machine and stand on the step above the control valve.
4. Remove rubber cover (2), if equipped, from the filler port and turn filler cap (1) to open it.
5. Refuel the machine with strainer (3) attached to the filler port.
When dirt is adhered on strainer (3), take out strainer (3), wash it with light oil or clean it by air blowing, and then attach it to the filler port again.
Fuel tank capacity: 350L (93Gal)
6. After refueling, tighten filler cap (1) securely. Attach rubber cover (2) according to the orientation of the cap.



3.2.4 DRAINING FUEL PRE-FILTER

The fuel pre-filter is a device which separates water mixed in fuel. When water is accumulated in the fuel pre-filter, drain the water.

1. Use the starter key to open the side door on the right side of the machine and hold it with the stay.
2. Place a drain oil container under drain valve (2).
3. Raise fuel shutoff valve (4) to "Close" position (A).
4. Loosen drain valve (2) and air bleeder plug (3) to drain water accumulated in fuel filter (1) into the container.
5. After draining the water, tighten drain valve (2) and air bleeder plug (3) securely. Check the water drained to the container. If that is contaminated significantly, clean the element and the inside of the case.
6. Lower fuel shutoff valve (4) to "Open" position (B).
7. Remove the support stay and close the side door.



3.2.5 CHECKING OIL LEVEL OF HYDRAULIC OIL TANK



WARNING PRESSURE WITHIN HYDRAULIC OIL TANK

The inside of the hydraulic tank is dangerous because it is high temperature and pressurized.

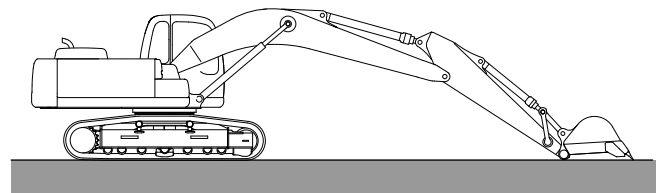
Before removing the filler port plug, stop the engine, remove breather head cap (1), and then press the valve to release the pressure in the hydraulic oil tank.

Notice

For refilling procedures of the hydraulic oil, see "5000 HOUR INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES" in Chapter 4.

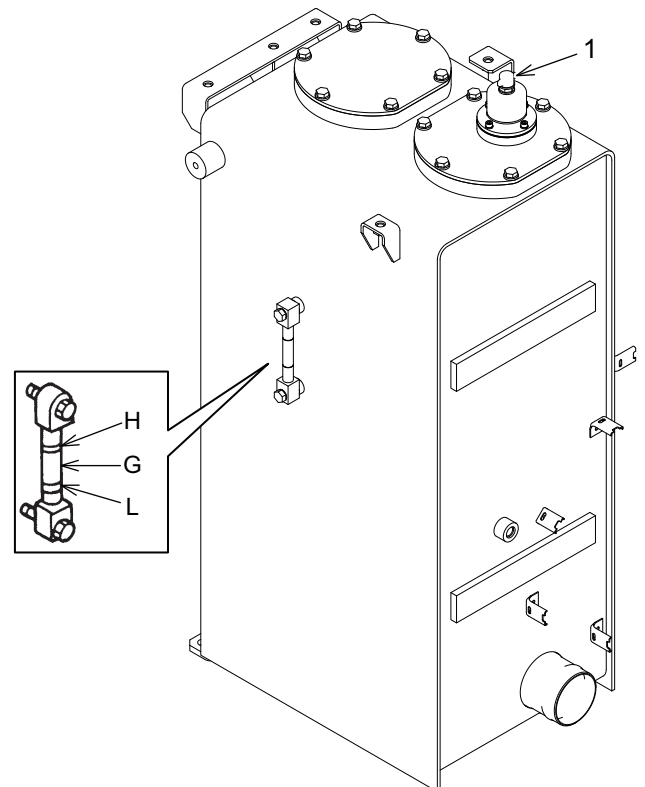
The hydraulic oil tank is on the right side.

1. Move the machine to a level and firm place.
2. Retract the arm cylinder and bucket cylinder, and place the bucket and dozer (when installed) on the ground.
3. Stop the engine and move the pilot control shut-off lever to the "LOCKED" position.



3

4. Check the oil level through sight level gauge (G) provided on the side of the hydraulic oil tank.
The oil level varies depending on the oil temperature. Use the following rough standard at inspection.
 - Before operation: Near the "L" level (oil temp. 10 to 30 degrees C (50 to 86 degrees F))
 - During normal operation: Near the "H" level (oil temp. 50 to 80 degrees C (122 to 176 degrees F))



Notice

Do not supply oil to the "H" level or more.

If the hydraulic oil tank becomes full, it can cause damages to the tank and the components and spray of the hydraulic oil.

3.2.6 CHECKING FAN BELT AND AIR CONDITIONING COMPRESSOR BELT



INSPECTING AND MAINTAINING THE BELT

Be sure to stop the engine before inspection and maintenance of the engine.

Inspecting and maintaining the running engine may cause severe injury by being caught in the rotating parts, such as the fan and the belt.



Replace the belt with a new one if cracking or breakage is found on the belt by the inspection, slip occurs excessively, or the belt cannot be adjusted to within the adjustment range. Keep the belt away from oils. The service life may be shortened if it slips by oil.

Notice

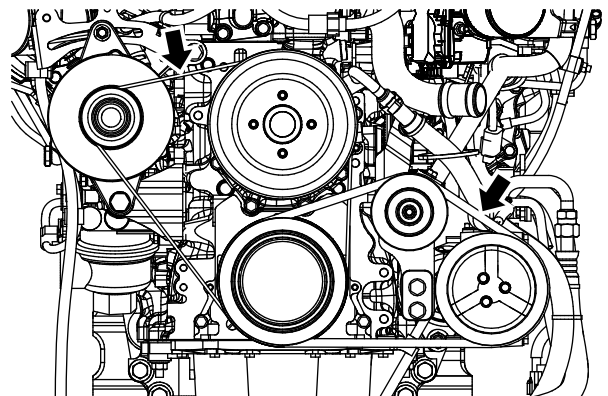
- When the belt is replaced by a new one, run engine at idle for 3 to 5 minutes and recheck and or adjust tension as necessary.
- After running the engine for about 2 hours, a new belt obtains a complete initial elongation.
- When replacing a set of two belts, be sure to replace both two with new ones.

The engine of this machine is equipped with the alternator, the fan, and air conditioning compressor belts. Check the belts for wear and damage, and also for tension, and adjust them properly in order to maintain the maximum engine performance and the service life.

Notice

For adjustment procedures for each belt, see "ADJUSTING FAN BELT AND AIR CONDITIONING COMPRESSOR BELT" in Chapter 4.

- To check the belt tension, press on the center of the belt with your thumb. If the deflection falls within the range shown in the following table, it is normal.



Belt	New Belt Tension mm (inch)	At Inspection mm (inch)	Pushing Force N (lbf)
Fan alternator	3 to 5(0.12 to 0.20)	—	98(22)
Air conditioning compressor belt	2.5(0.10)	2.5(0.10)	New: 26 to 32(5.8 to 7.2) Inspection: 13 to 16(2.9 to 3.6)

3.2.7 CHECKING DEF/ADBLUE LEVEL AND REFILLING

CAUTION

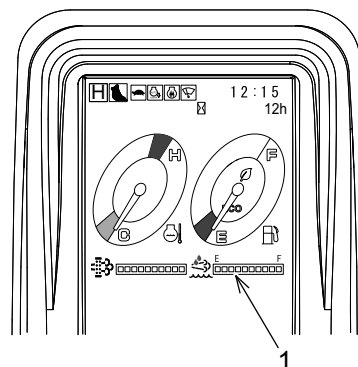
- Use DEF/AdBlue which meets ISO 22241-1 or JIS K2247-1.
- Do not fill the DEF/AdBlue tank with diesel fuel or water.
- Comply with the precautions specified by the manufacturer when handling DEF/AdBlue.
- For handling of a long term storage of the machine, see Section "PRECAUTIONS FOR LONG-TERM STORAGE".

Notice

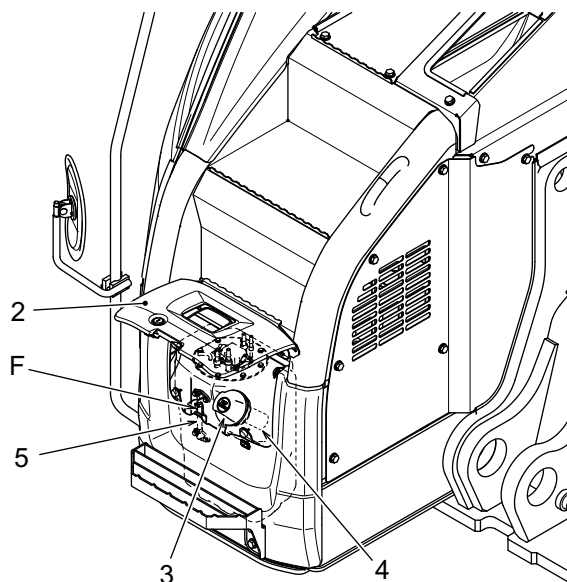
When the level gauge of gauge cluster indicates Level 2 (Yellow), Level 1 (Red), or Level 0 (No display), refill DEF/AdBlue immediately to Level 3 (Green) or over.

DEF/AdBlue shortage restricts the engine output.

1. Use the gauge cluster to check the level of DEF/AdBlue.
After turning the starter switch ON, level gauge (1) is displayed on the multi-display.
The levels are displayed in ten levels. As the amount of remaining DEF/AdBlue decreases, the number of levels decreases.



2. Use the starter key to open tool box cover (2) on the right front of the machine.
3. Turn inlet port cap (3) to open it.
When dirt is adhered on strainer (4) of the inlet port take out strainer (4), wash it with water, dry it completely, and then attach it to the inlet port again.
4. Refill DEF/AdBlue from the inlet port. Refill it until the level reaches the line F, while checking level gauge (5) on the right side of the tank.
Full capacity of tank: 24.4L(6.4Gal)
5. After refilling, tighten inlet port cap (3) securely and close tool box cover (2).



3.2.8 ADJUSTMENT OF OPERATOR'S SEAT

**WARNING****ABOUT ADJUSTMENT OF OPERATOR'S SEAT**

- Adjust the operator's seat before the operation or when the operator changes.
- When adjusting the operator's seat, pay attention to hands in order not to be caught between the handle and the seat stand.

Notice

For adjusting procedures of operator's seat, see "HANDLING OF OPERATOR'S SEAT" in Chapter 2.

Adjust the operator's seat in a way so that the operator can operate the control levers, pedals and switches freely, with his/her back contacting with the backrest of the operator's seat.



3.2.9 ADJUSTMENT OF MIRRORS



WARNING

ABOUT ADJUSTMENT OF MIRRORS

Be sure to adjust the mirrors before operation.

When the mirrors are poorly adjusted, visibility cannot be ensured and it could cause severe injury.

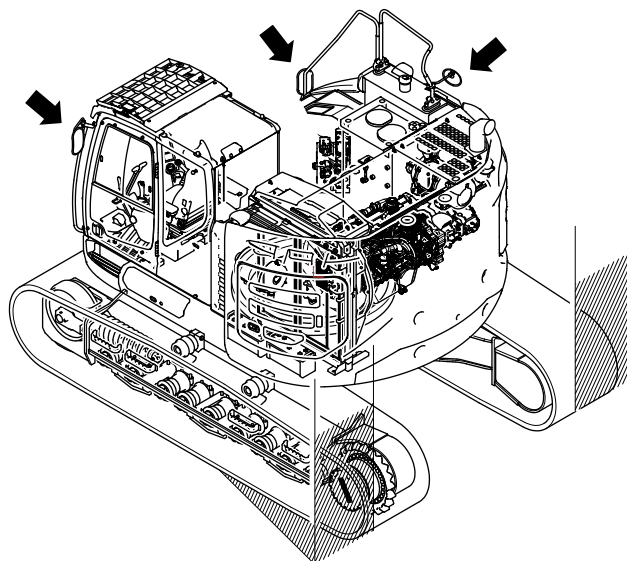


CAUTION

Use genuine mirrors only.

When the mirrors are attached to a non-specified place, such as the handrail of the cab entrance, the strength of handrail may be decreased and it may cause damage or falling off of the mirror.

Adjust cab left mirror and handrail mirror in a way so that the blind spot can be minimized when seeing it from the operator's seat.



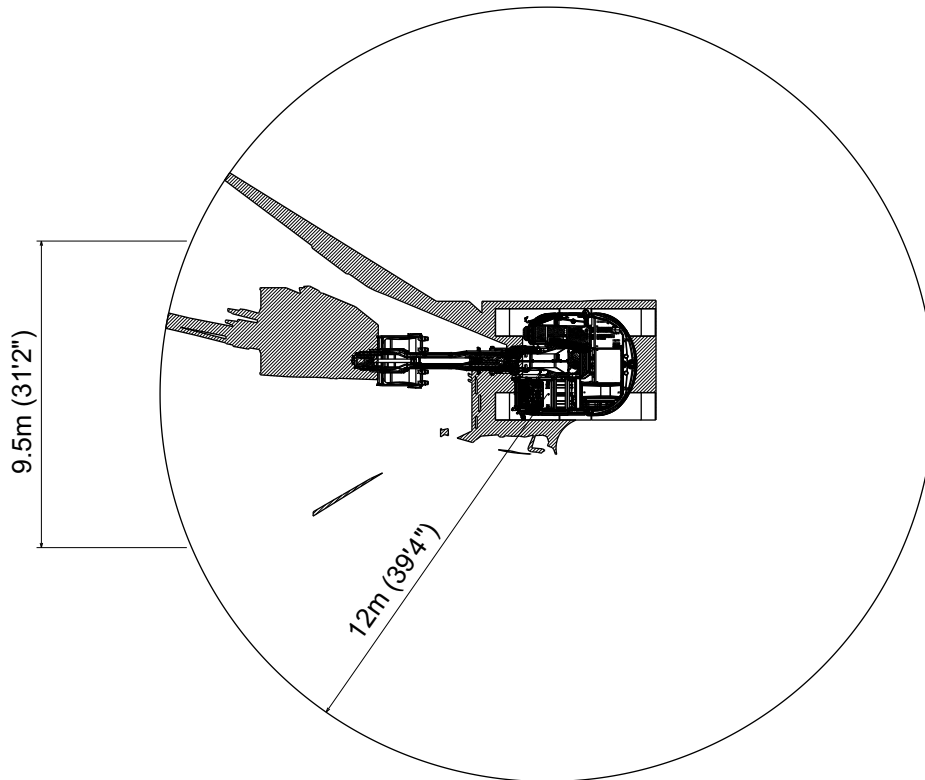
VISIBILITY MAP

- The following visibility map is a rough standard of areas (hatched areas) where the operator cannot see both directly and indirectly (through the mirrors and the cameras). The operator can use this map as a reference to improve field rules or enhance visibility by adding an auxiliary device.
 - This machine complies with the visibility requirements stipulated in EN474-1.
 - This map is not the same as the visibility requirements stipulated in EN474-1.
 - This map was made according to the standard specification. Be cautious that the map may change according to the machine specification.
-

Note

This map is a rough standard at the ground surface within the radius of 12 m (39'4"), centering the operator reference point (680 mm (26.8") above and 20 mm (0.79") forward from Seat Index Point) from near areas of the machine.

Direct and indirect visibilities (from both side mirrors, and in synthetic view of three cameras)

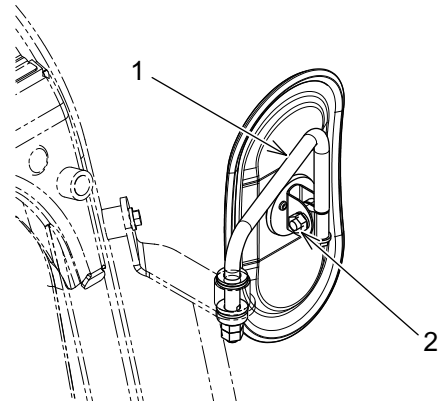


Hatched area: blind spot

MIRROR A (CAB LEFT SIDE)

Adjust the mirror in the way that a person (or the object of 1.2 m (3'11") high and 30 cm (11.8") in diameter) who stands on the left rear end of the machine can be identified by the operator in the operator's seat.

- Install the mirror to the position shown in the figure.
- Install the mirror in the way not to come in contact with stay (1) of the mirror.
- If the movement of the mirror is not smooth, loosen nut (2) of the mirror to adjust it.
Tightening torque of nut (2)
M10: 18.6 to 25.5 N·m (13.7 to 18.8 lbf·ft)
- Adjust the mirror to reflect the machine side face.

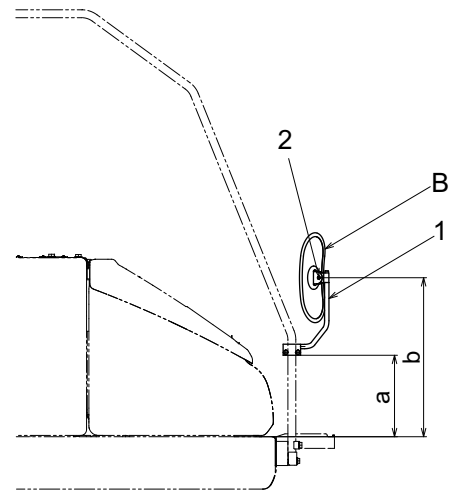


[3. MACHINE OPERATION]

MIRROR B (MACHINE RIGHT SIDE)

Adjust the mirror in the way that a person who stands on the right rear end of machine can be identified by the operator in the operator's seat.

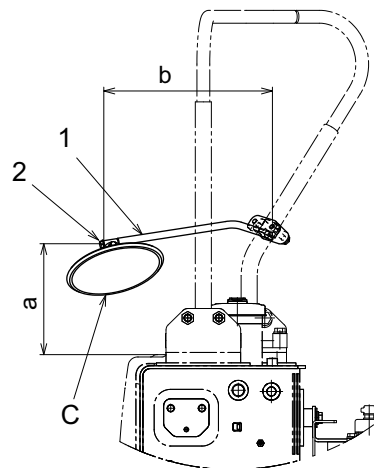
- Install the mirror to the position shown in the figure.
a: 391mm(15.4")(Reference value)
b: 658mm(25.9")(Reference value)
- Install the mirror in the way not to come in contact with stay (1) of the mirror.
- If the movement of the mirror is not smooth, loosen nut (2) of the mirror to adjust it.
Tightening torque of nut (2)
M10:18.6 to 25.5N·m(13.7 to 18.8 lbf·ft)
- Adjust the mirror to reflect the machine side.



MIRROR C (MACHINE RIGHT SIDE)

Adjust the mirror in the way that a person who stands on 1 m off from the right side of the machine can be identified by the operator in the operator's seat.

- Install the mirror to the position shown in the figure.
a: 235mm(9.3")(Reference value)
b: 357mm(14.1")(Reference value)
- Install the mirror in the way not to come in contact with stay (1) of the mirror.
- If the movement of the mirror is not smooth, loosen nut (2) of the mirror to adjust it.
Tightening torque of nut (2)
M10:18.6 to 25.5N·m(13.7 to 18.8 lbf·ft)
- Adjust the mirror to reflect the machine side.



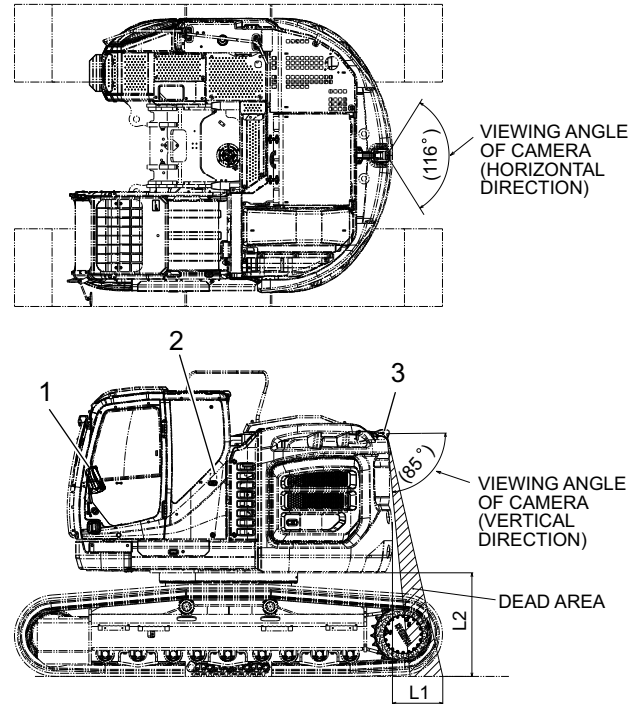
CAMERA (MACHINE REAR SIDE)

- (1)Gauge cluster (Monitor)
- (2)Converter
- (3)Rearview camera

Blind spot range

L1:583mm(23.0")

L2:1237mm(4'1.7")



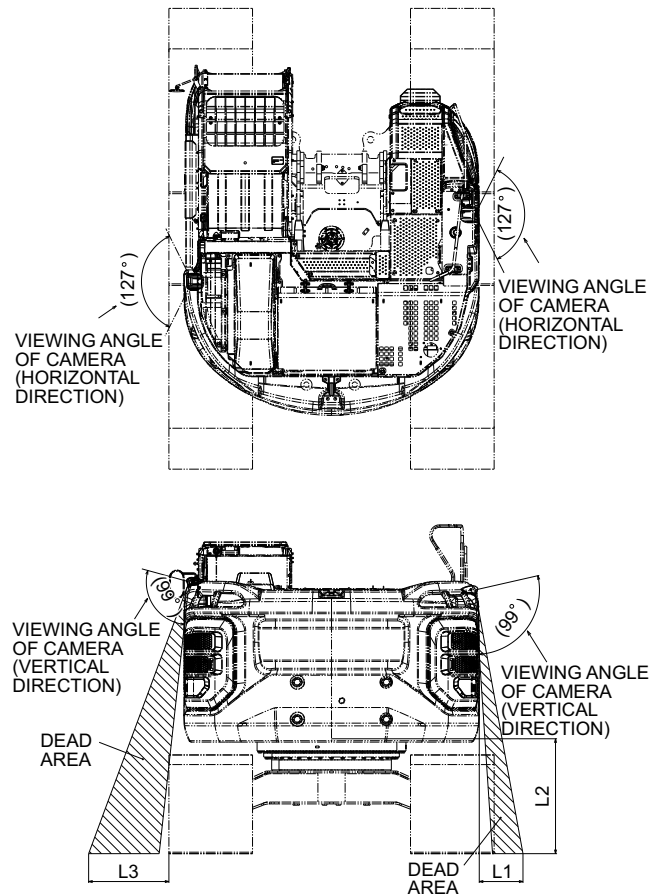
CAMERA (MACHINE BOTH SIDE)

Blind spot range

L1:470mm(18.5")

L2:1237mm(4'1.7")

L3:864mm(34.0")



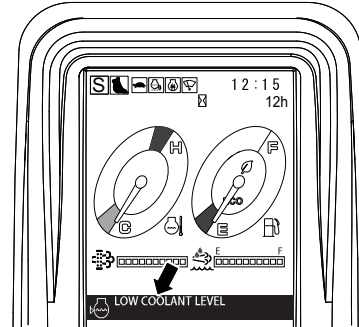
3.2.10 CHECKING MULTI-DISPLAY

Before starting the engine, check the display status of the multi-display on the gauge cluster.

CAUTION

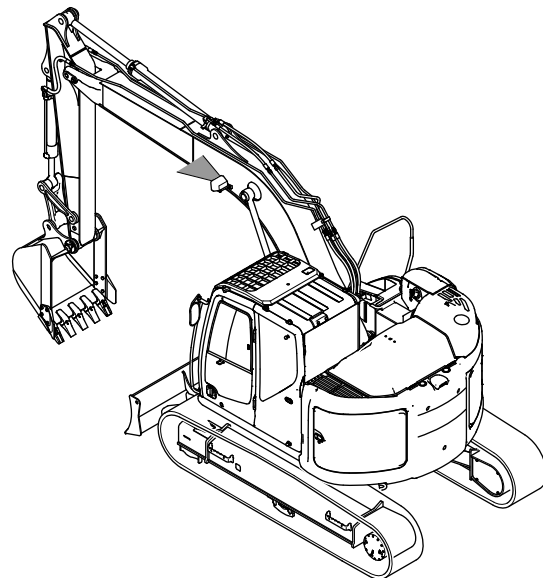
When the warning is displayed on the multi-display, ask your KOBELCO authorized dealer for inspection.

1. Make sure the pilot control shut-off lever is in the "LOCKED" position.
2. Make sure all control levers are in the "NEUTRAL" position.
3. Turn the key of the starter switch to the "ON" position.
4. Check that no warning is displayed on the multi-display.



3.2.11 CHECKING WORKING LIGHT

While the starter switch is in the "ON" position, press the working light switch to turn on the working lights on the boom and on the right side of the front. If they do not light, presumably light bulbs are burned out or the electrical wire is broken. Ask your KOBELCO authorized dealer for repair.



3.2.12 CHECKING OF AIR CLEANER INLET

- Check that no mud, leaves, and snow, etc. are accumulated around the air cleaner inlet.
- When it is covered with snow, remove it.
- When washing the machine with high-pressure water for cleaning, be careful not to let the water enter the air cleaner inlet.

3.3 STARTING ENGINE



WHEN STARTING ENGINE

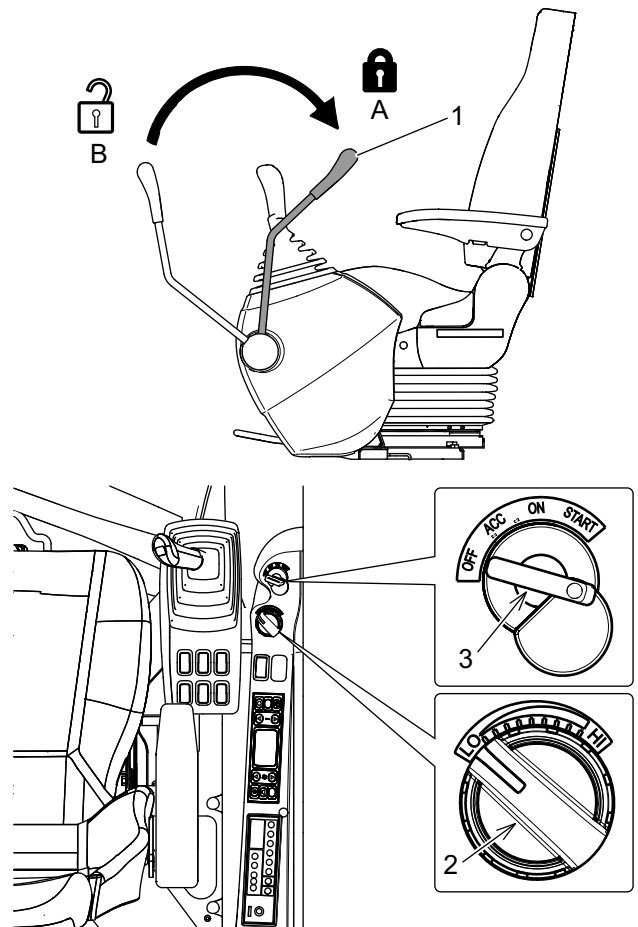
After making sure that no one is stayed and no obstruction is left around the machine, sound horn and start the engine.

Notice

- Do not hold the starter key switch in the START position for more than 15 seconds. If the engine does not start, return the starter key switch to the OFF position, wait 30 seconds, and then try it again.
- When starting engine, if warning is displayed on the multi-display, stop engine immediately and identify the cause, and then repair it if necessary.
- After the auto idling stops, when necessary to restart the engine, start the engine after returning the starter key switch to ACC or OFF once and the throttle potentiometer to the low idling position. But it is impossible to start the engine again until the buzzer stops sounding after the engine stops.

3.3.1 START-UP UNDER NORMAL TEMPERATURE CONDITIONS

1. Make sure pilot control shut-off lever (1) is in the "LOCKED" position.
A: "LOCKED" position
B: "UNLOCKED" position
2. Make sure all control levers are set to the "NEUTRAL" positions.
3. Turn engine throttle (2) to the low idle position.
4. Turn the key of starter switch (3) to the "ON" position and check the operation status of the multi-display.
5. Turn the key of starter switch (3) to the "START" position to start the engine.
6. Release your hand from key (3) immediately after the engine starts. The starter key will return to the "ON" position by itself.



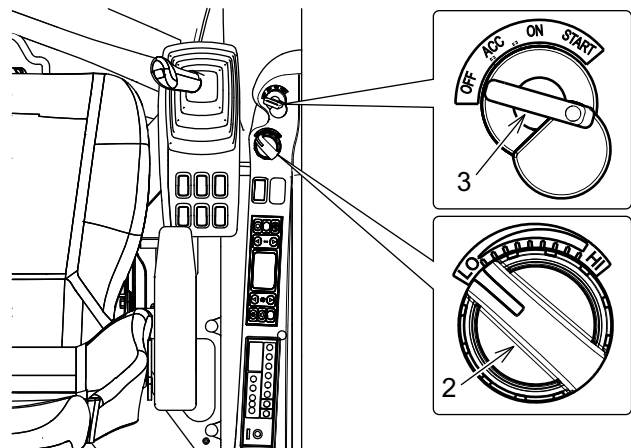
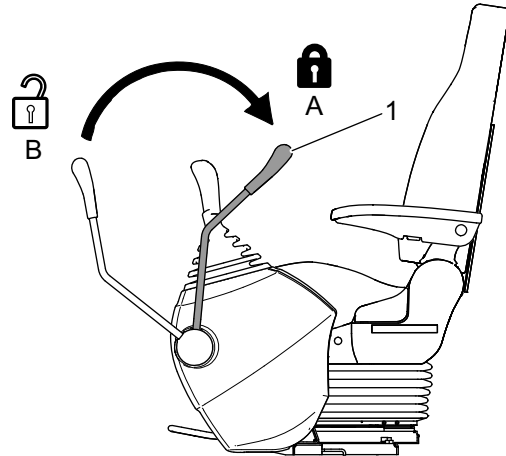
3.3.2 START UP IN COLD CONDITIONS

In cold weather, due to increase in oil viscosity (hardens) and decrease in battery performance, starting the engine may be difficult.

Notice

For the engine start up procedures with the automatic warming-up system, see "USER MENU SETTING" in Chapter 2.

1. Make sure pilot control shut-off lever (1) is in the "LOCKED" position.
A: "LOCKED" position
B: "UNLOCKED" position
2. Make sure all control levers are set to the "NEUTRAL" positions.
3. Turn engine throttle (2) to the low idle position.
4. Turn the key of starter switch (3) to the "ON" position and hold the position.
When the coolant temperature decreases below 10 degrees C, the glow plug is preheated automatically by the engine coolant temperature sensing.
5. Check the operation status of the multi-display.
6. After having completed the preheating (within five seconds), turn the key of starter switch (3) to the "START" position to start the engine.
7. Release your hand from key (3) immediately after the engine starts. The starter key will return to the "ON" position by itself.



3.3.3 USING JUMPER CABLES



STARTING ENGINE BY JUMPER CABLES

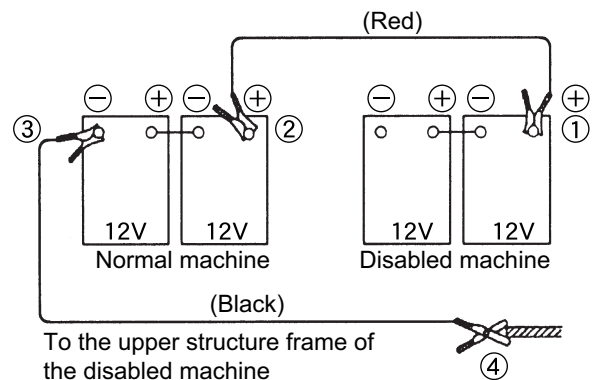
- Combustible gas (hydrogen gas) is generated in the battery. Do not allow sparks or flames to come in contact with the battery to avoid catching a fire and triggering an explosion.
- Do not allow the normal machine to come in contact with the disabled one.
- Wear protective glasses and rubber gloves when using jumper cables to start the engine.
- Never allow the positive and negative side clips of the jumper cables to come in contact with each other when connecting the jumper cables.
- Do not mistake positive (+) for negative (-) or vice versa in the jumper cable connection. When the negative jumper cable is finally connected to the upper structure of the disabled machine, it may generate sparks. Connect the jumper cable to a ground surface as far as possible from the battery.
- If the battery electrolyte is frozen, do not attempt to start the engine with another power supply.
- Wrong connection of the jumper cables may cause explosion of the battery.
- The starting system of this machine is 24 volts. Therefore the boost battery voltage in use should be 24 volts. The application of high voltage employed for a welding machine, etc. in engine start may cause damage to the electrical system.



- Use the battery of which the capacity is equivalent to that of the disabled machine for the normal machine.
- Select the jumper cables and clips with a proper size for the battery.
- Check the jumper cables and clips for damage and corrosion.
- Connect the clip securely.
- Check that the control lock lever is in the "LOCKED" position.
- Check that each control lever is returned to the neutral position.
- The starter switches on both the normal and disabled machines must be held in the "OFF" position. Because when the power is connected, it may cause unexpected move of the machines and it is dangerous.

1. Put the attachment on the ground, return all control levers to the neutral position and then set the control lock lever to the "LOCKED" position.
2. Set the starter switch to the "OFF" position for both the normal machine and the disabled machine.
3. Remove the terminal cover of the battery, and connect the jumper cable (red) clip to the positive (+) terminal on the battery of the disabled machine.
4. Connect the jumper cable (red) clip to the positive (+) terminal on the battery of the normal machine.
5. Connect the jumper cable (black) clip to the negative (-) terminal on the battery of the normal machine.
6. Finally, connect the clip of the other end of the negative (-) jumper cable (black) to the upper structure frame of the disabled machine.
7. Start the engine of the normal machine, and run it for about 10 minutes at high idle. The battery of the disabled machine is partially charged.
8. Start the engine of the disabled machine.

Order of connecting the cable ① → ② → ③ → ④
 Order of removing the cable ④ → ③ → ② → ①

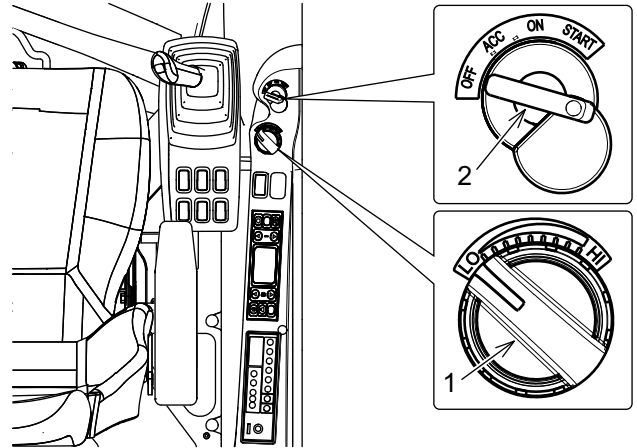


[3. MACHINE OPERATION]

9. Soon after the starting of the engine of the disabled machine, immediately remove the jumper cables in the reverse order of the connection.
10. Finally, check and repair the cause of the problem of the start/charging system on the disabled machine.

3.4 STOPPING MACHINE ENGINE

1. Place the attachment on the ground before stopping the engine.
2. Pull up the pilot control lock lever to the "LOCKED" position.
3. Turn engine throttle (1) to the low idle position.
4. Turn starter key (2) to the "OFF" position to stop the engine.
5. Remove starter key (2) and store it.



3.5 CHECK AFTER STARTING ENGINE

Before operation, be sure to check and make sure the following items after starting the engine.



ABOUT CHECK AFTER STARTING ENGINE

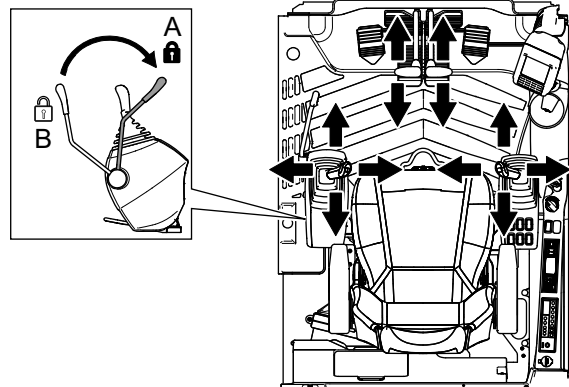
- Touching any control levers unintentionally may cause sudden movement of the machine. Set the pilot control shut-off lever to the "LOCKED" position before standing up or moving in the cab.
- There is a danger in the inspection after starting the engine. Be sure to confirm the safety of the surroundings.

Notice

If any failure is found, stop the engine immediately. Also, ask your KOBELCO authorized dealer for repair.

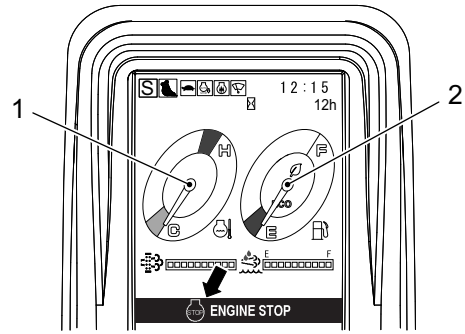
3.5.1 PILOT CONTROL SHUT-OFF LEVER

1. With the engine running, set the pilot control shut-off lever to the "LOCKED" position.
A: LOCKED position
B: UNLOCKED position
2. After confirming the safety around the machine, move the left and right control levers.
3. Make sure that the attachment is not operated and swing and travel operations are not performed even though the control levers are operated.



3.5.2 CHECKING ENGINE AND MULTI-DISPLAY OPERATION

1. Check the engine for oil or water leakage the engine and the area around the engine.
2. Check that warning lamps of the battery charge and the engine oil pressure do not turn on and the pointers of engine coolant temperature meter (1) and fuel level meter (2) are proper.



CAUTION

When the warning is displayed on the multi-display, stop the engine immediately and find the cause.

3. Check that the exhaust sound, the color of exhaust gas and vibrations of the engine are normal.

CAUTION

Inspection with the engine running shall be done by a person other than the operator and the operator shall stay seated during inspection.

Notice

Color classification for identifying the exhaust gas state (After warming-up at no load)

Colorless or light blue: Normal (Perfect combustion)

Black: Abnormal (DPF failure)

White: Abnormal (Oil loss by way of piston ring or valve guides)

The smoke may look white in winter due to cold weather.

3.6 WARMING-UP



ABOUT WARMING-UP

- The proper hydraulic oil temperature for this machine is about 50 degrees C. When the hydraulic oil temperature is 25 degrees C or below, rapid operations may cause severe damage to the hydraulic components. Before starting the operation, warm the hydraulic oil to 25 degrees C or above.
- If the attachment/equipment is operated without enough warming-up operation, the response of the attachment to the control lever is delayed and sometimes it moves in an unexpected manner for the operator. Therefore, be sure to perform the warm-up operation. Especially in cold weather, a sufficient warming-up operation is necessary.

Notice

In warming-up the engine, turn auto idling stop function switch OFF.

Notice

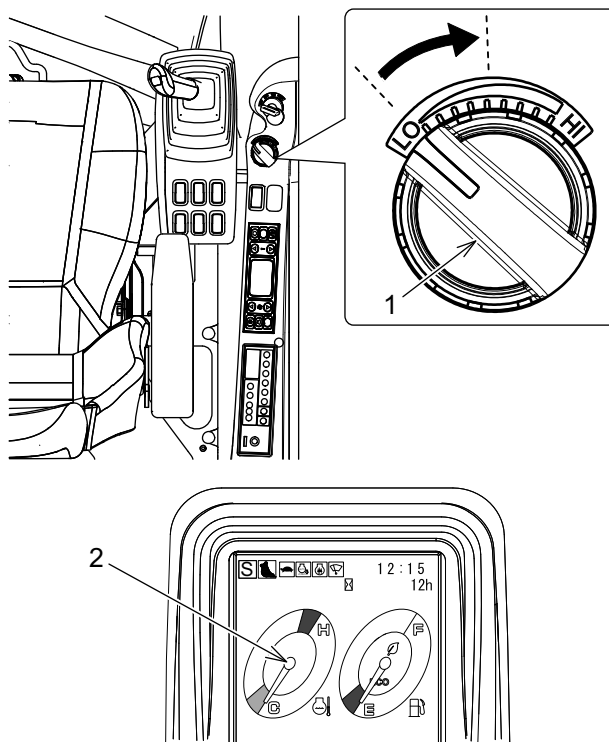
For the engine start up procedures with the automatic warming-up system, see "USER MENU SETTING" in Chapter 2.

3.6.1 ENGINE WARMING-UP

Notice

Avoid idling because it may cause poor engine performance and trouble.

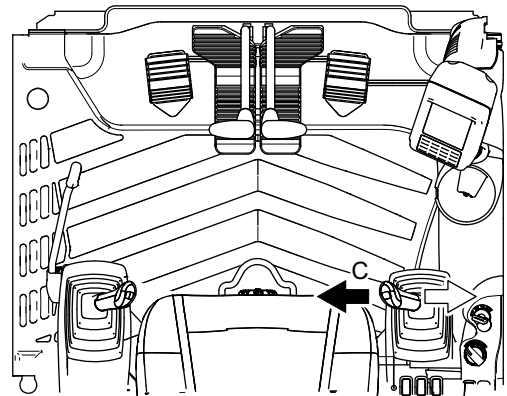
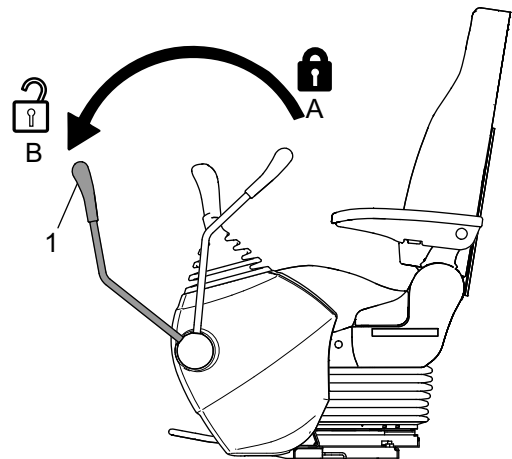
1. Run the engine for about 5 minutes with no load at middle speed by setting engine throttle (1) to the middle between the low idle and the full speed positions.
2. When the pointer of engine coolant temperature meter (2) moves and points somewhere in the white range, the warming-up operation of the engine is completed.



3.6.2 WARMING-UP HYDRAULIC OIL

Perform warming-up of the hydraulic oil after engine warming-up is completed.

1. Push pilot control shut-off lever (1) down and forward and set it at the "UNLOCKED" position.
2. Raise the boom to the height where the bucket can be operated.
3. Move the right control lever slowly toward bucket digging side (C) to the stroke end position and perform relief operation for about 2 minutes.
4. After that, slowly extend and retract each cylinder several times and circulate the warm hydraulic oil in all operation circuits.
5. When the warming-up is not enough, perform the relief operation at bucket digging side (C) for another 2 minutes, and after that, extend and retract each cylinder several times, and circulate the warm hydraulic oil in all operation circuits.
6. Also perform swing and traveling operations slowly to circulate the warm hydraulic oil.



3.7 AUTO IDLING STOP FUNCTION

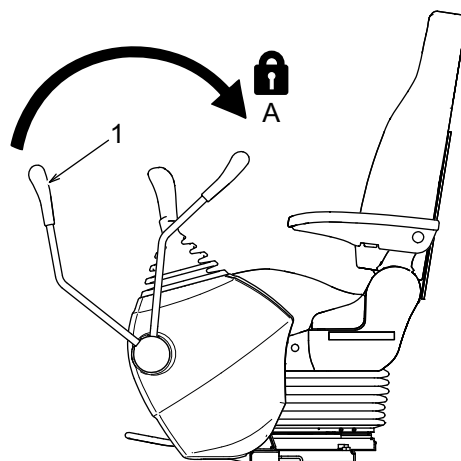
CAUTION

This machine is equipped with auto idling stop function to save the fuel consumption and exhaust gas at the time when the engine is stopping.

- When auto idling switch is on, if the engine is running the engine stops after an elapse of the specified time from when the safety lock lever is pulled up.
- After the auto idling stops, when necessary to restart the engine, start the engine after returning the starter key switch to ACC or OFF once and the throttle potentiometer to the low idling position. But it is impossible to start the engine again until the buzzer stops sounding after the engine stops.
- If you would like to perform warming-up of the engine, operate the air conditioner, or use the working light continuously with the pilot control lock lever in the "LOCKED" position, turn the auto idle stop function "OFF". With the auto idle stop function turned "ON", the engine stops, so that the function stops.
- When necessary to leave the operator seat, always turn the starter switch off.
- When the failure warning of "engine coolant temperature" or "coolant level" appears, or auto warming-up is working, the auto idle stop function does not work regardless whether the auto idle stop function turns "ON" or "OFF".
- Do not use auto idling stop mode when lifting.

This switch is usually set to "OFF". When the auto idling stop function is selected, the engine stops automatically after an elapse of the specified time with the control lock lever (1) set to "LOCKED" position (A) during engine operation. This function is effective in saving of fuel and in restraint of exhaust gas by setting auto idling stop function.

- As for the setting of the auto idle stop function, see "Setting of auto idle stop" in Chapter 2.
- The default setting of the interval until engine stop is 60 seconds. To change the set interval, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.



Notice

- After setting safety lock lever to "LOCKED" position (A), the engine changes to "DECEL" speed about 4 seconds later.
- Buzzer sounds for 5 seconds before engine stops.

3.7.1 RESTART AFTER AUTO IDLE STOP

CAUTION

When leaving the operator's seat, be sure to set the starter switch to the "OFF" position.

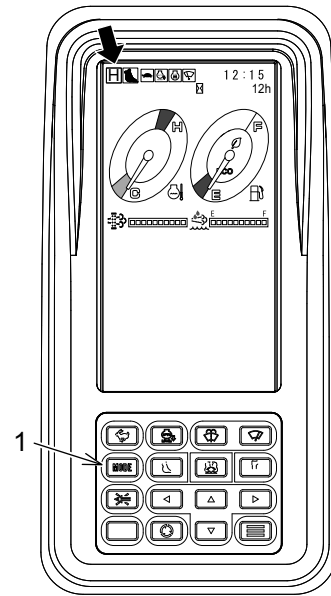
1. Check that the buzzer stops.
2. Turn the engine throttle to the low idle position.
3. Return the key of the starter switch to "ACC" or "OFF" once and then restart the machine.

3.8 SELECTION OF WORK MODE

Press work mode select switch (1) to switch between three modes in the order of "S", "E" and "H".

Select a proper work mode according to the work condition and purpose.

The selected work mode is displayed on the left upper corner of the multi-display.

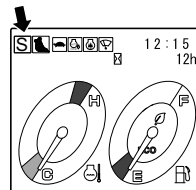


Notice

The work mode after the engine start always starts from the "H" mode.

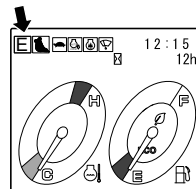
S mode:

"S mode" is suitable for a standard digging work and loading operations. It provides good fuel consumption and is well-balanced with a workload.



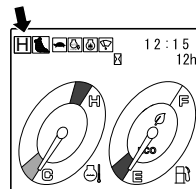
E mode:

"ECO mode" focuses on low fuel consumption operation.




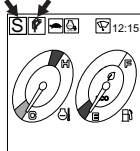

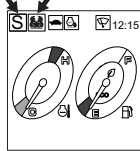

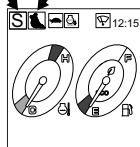
H mode:

"H mode" is suitable for a heavy digging work, which provides high speed and gives priority to a workload.



3.9 SWITCHING ATTACHMENT MODE

Use the attachment mode select switch to switch between the "Bucket", "Nibbler", and "Breaker" modes. Select an appropriate mode according to the three types of the attachment: "Bucket", "Nibbler", or "Breaker" modes. Before operation, always check that the attachment mode is appropriately set.

Attachment Mode	Switch Condition	Multi-Display Indication	Selection of Attachment
Breaker mode		 The breaker symbol appears. The work mode of "S", "E", or "H" is shown upper left.	Select this mode when the attachment like a breaker requires the single flow circuit.
Nibbler mode		 The nibbler symbol appears. The work mode of "S", "E", or "H" is shown upper left.	Select this mode when using the attachment with a flow and return circuit like a nibbler (crusher).
Bucket mode		 The bucket symbol appears. The work mode of "S", "E", or "H" is shown upper left.	Select this mode when digging.

For the description of attachment and hydraulic circuit, see Chapter 8 "OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT".

CAUTION

- When working with a hydraulic breaker or nibbler (crusher) installed, be sure to check that an appropriate attachment mode is selected, by seeing the attachment mode select switch and the multi-display.
- When the attachment mode is inappropriate, use the attachment mode select switch to switch to an appropriate mode.
- When performing breaker work, be sure to select the breaker mode. Working in a mode other than the breaker mode causes damage in the hydraulic components and/or breaker.
- Be sure to place the attachment to the ground and ensure safety before switching the attachment mode. In particular, switching to the breaker mode during nibbler (crusher) work may cause a holding load to fall off.
- When the attachment mode icon of "digging", "nibbler", or "breaker" flickers, it tells that the attachment mode is not proper.

3.10 MACHINE OPERATION

The machine operation procedures described below provide operators with basics which should be learned and understood, thoroughly. You can further improve your operational skill by thoroughly learning the performance and structure of this machine.

3.10.1 PRECAUTIONS OF MACHINE OPERATION



WHEN OPERATING MACHINE

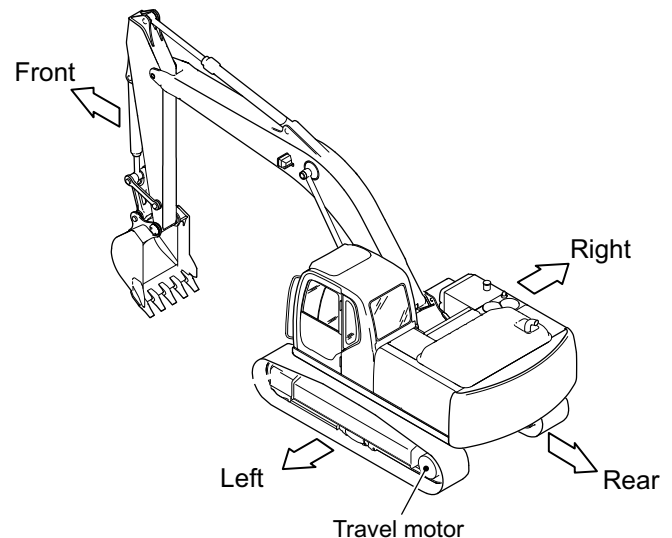
- When starting the machine, check the safety around the machine and sound the horn before starting the machine.
- Keep the area around the machine clear of people.
- When the control lever is operated during the auto acceleration operation, the engine speed increases abruptly. Operate the control lever carefully.



- The indications on the monitor do not assure the condition of the devices. Daily maintenance should be performed not only by seeing the monitor but also by following the procedures described in this manual.
- When abnormality was detected during operation, stop the machine immediately and take proper measures.
- The machine should not be operated until the failure is repaired. Operating the machine with the failure that has not been repaired may result in a serious accidents.

FRONT/REAR AND LEFT/RIGHT OF MACHINE

In this manual, front/rear and left/right are determined by looking the forward direction from the operator's seat with the travel motors at the rear side.



3.10.2 TRAVEL PROCEDURES



ABOUT TRAVELING

- Confirm the travel motor position before traveling. When the travel motor is positioned at the front side, the travel lever operation reverses.
The normal travel control can be performed when the travel motor is at the rear side of the machine and the front idler is at the front side of the machine.
- Sound the horn to warn the workers in the working site.



ABOUT TRAVEL SPEED

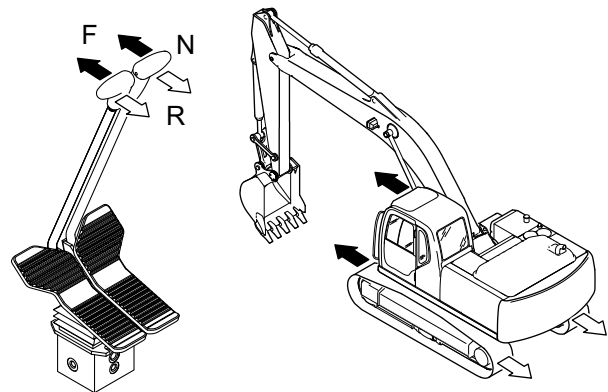
During traveling, do not change the travel speed. Also, the travel speed should be set to the LOW (1st) speed when the machine is traveling on a downhill, or being loaded to/unloaded from a trailer. A sudden change of the machine stability could cause personal injury.

Before starting traveling operation move the control lock lever to "UNLOCKED position" and set the bucket at the height of 30 to 40 cm above the ground.

F: Forward traveling

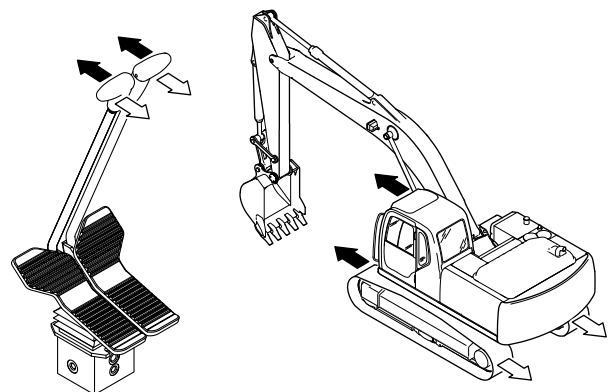
N: Neutral (Stop)

R: Backward traveling



Forward/Reverse traveling

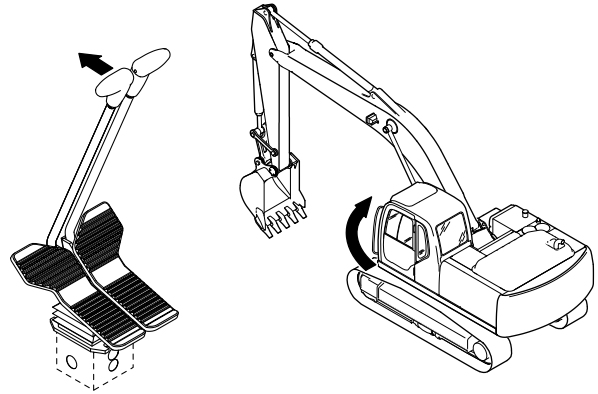
- Push (forward) or pull (backward) both the left and right travel levers simultaneously.
Both the forward and reverse travel speed can be changed by lever displacement.



Pivot turn

This operation drives only one crawler to turn the machine.

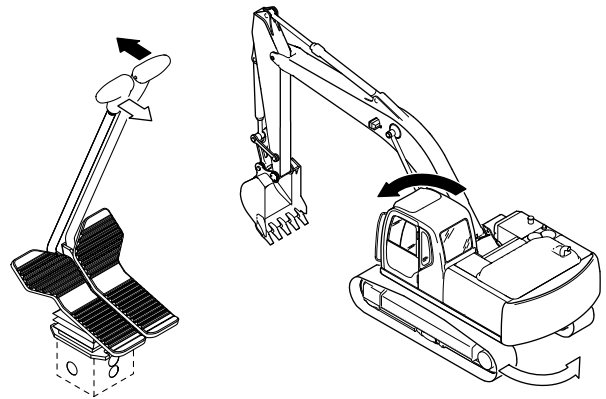
- Operate one of the two travel levers to make a pivot turn.



Spin turn

This drives the right and left crawlers in opposite direction each other to turn the machine on the spot.

- Push one of the two travel levers forward and pull the other lever backward simultaneously.



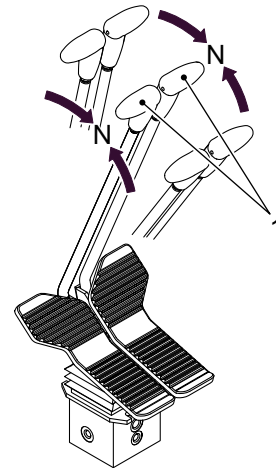
STOP TRAVELING



ABOUT STOP TRAVELING

Do not stop the machine suddenly, but stop it after slow down the speed as much as possible.

- Put both travel levers (1) in the "NEUTRAL (N)" position.
The machine stops traveling.



3.10.3 CHANGING TRAVEL SPEED (1ST AND 2ND)



ABOUT TRAVEL SPEED

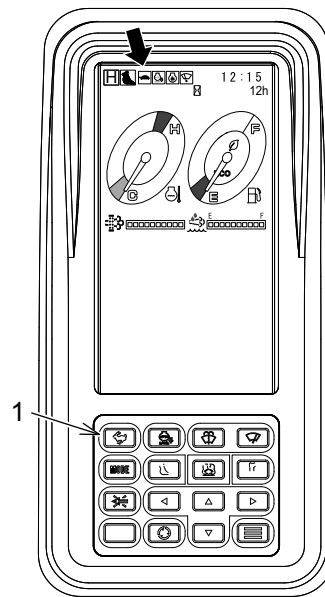
During traveling, do not change the travel speed. Also, the travel speed should be set to the LOW (1st) speed when the machine is traveling on a downhill, or being loaded to/unloaded from a trailer. A sudden change of the machine stability could cause personal injury.

Using the travel speed select switch (1), switch between the HIGH (2nd) and LOW (1st) travel speed.

Every time the switch is pressed, the mode changes as follows: Turtle (1st) -> Rabbit (2nd) -> Turtle (1st) -> Rabbit (2nd).

At the time of engine start, it is automatically set to the LOW (1st) speed.

When traveling at the LOW (1st) speed, the turtle (1st) is displayed, and when traveling at the HIGH (2nd) speed, the rabbit (2nd) is displayed on the multi-display.

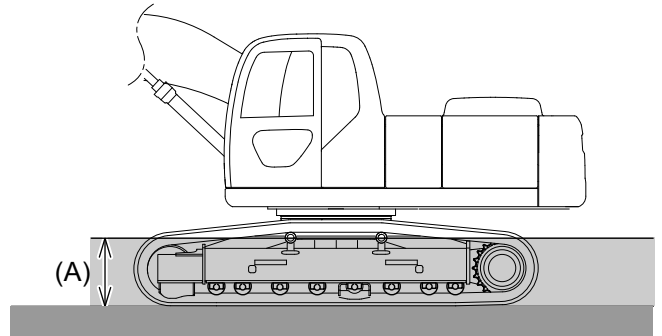


3.10.4 MACHINE OPERATION IN WATER OR ON SOFT GROUND

IMPORTANT

Take enough care not to immerse the swing bearing, swing pinion and swivel joint into water or soil. When the machine is sunk to the level of or above the swing bearing in the water or soil, the swing bearing and others may be worn abnormally if it is used without any treatment. Apply grease to the greasing points.

- If the bottom of a river is flat and it flows slowly, the machine can travel in the water up to the depth of the center of upper roller (A).
- When crossing a river, carefully cross the river while checking the condition of the river bottom by the bucket, etc. Never enter the water over the depth of (A).
- On a soft ground, the machine may sink gradually. Pay attention to the travel system and the water depth all the time.
- After traveling in seawater, wash the machine carefully to remove salt.
- On parts soaked in the water for a long time, use a grease gun to apply grease securely, until the old grease comes out from the inside.



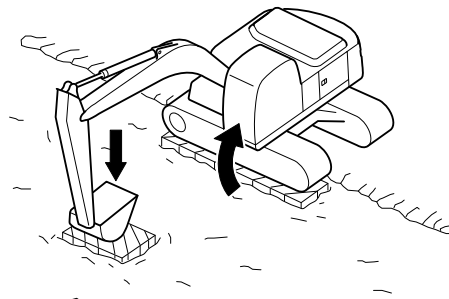
3.10.5 GETTING OUT OF SOFT GROUND

Avoid traveling on a soft ground if possible.

Be careful not to get stuck in mud. In case of being stuck in the mud, get out of it using the procedure below.

WHEN ONE SIDE OF MACHINE GETS STUCK IN SOFT GROUND

- When one side of the machine gets stuck in the soft ground, push the bottom of the bucket against a plank or others laid on the ground to lift up the stuck shoe, and put logs or lumbers beneath the crawler belt to escape from the soft ground.



Notice

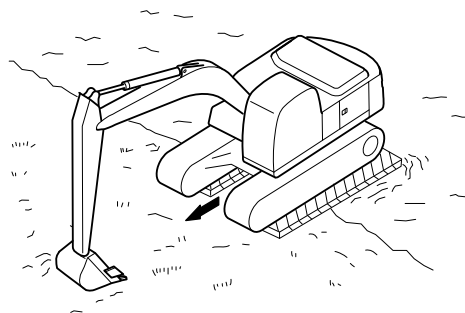
When using the boom and arm to lift up the machine, push the bottom of the bucket, not the teeth, against the ground.

WHEN BOTH SIDES OF MACHINE GET STUCK IN SOFT GROUND

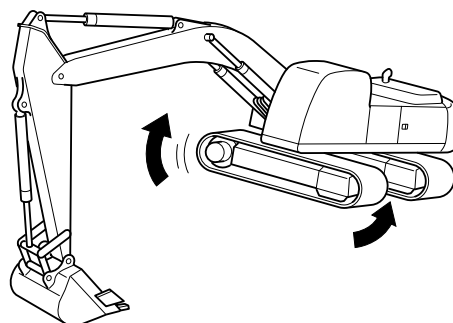
CAUTION

Operate the machine at the operator's seat. Keep the area around the machine clear of people.

- When both sides of the crawlers get stuck in the mud and the machine does not move due to slip, put logs or lumber as described above, lower the attachment to the front ground, pull the arm just like digging, push the travel levers forward, and pull out the machine.



- If the machine cannot travel due to highly tensed crawlers caused by clogged mud and gravel in the crawlers after traveling on the soft ground, lift each crawler off the ground by pushing the boom and arm against the ground and shake the mud or gravel off the crawler, and then get out of the soft ground. Gravel, or mud clogged in the crawler can be shaken off by lifting the crawler up and moving it forward and backward.



3.10.6 SWING AND ATTACHMENT/EQUIPMENT OPERATIONS

The following is the explanation of operation of the standard attachment/equipment. As to the machine equipped with a special attachment, read the operation manual of the special attachment, too.

The operation is explained according to the ISO pattern. As for the other operation patterns, see "MULTI-CONTROL VALVE" in "MACHINE FAMILIARIZATION" or "OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT".



ABOUT THE USE OF THIS MACHINE

To operate this machine, fully read the safety precautions of this manual and understand them thoroughly.



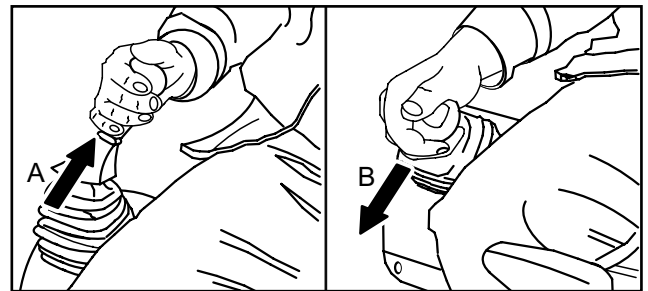
INTERFERENCE BY FRONT ATTACHMENT

Check clearance between the front attachment and the operator's station and other parts of the machine before starting operation because a certain kinds of front attachment and combination of the options installed on the base machine may cause the front attachment to interfere with the operator's station or other parts of the machine.

BOOM OPERATION

To operate the boom, move the right control lever forward and backward. Speed of the boom is controlled by the displacement of the control lever.

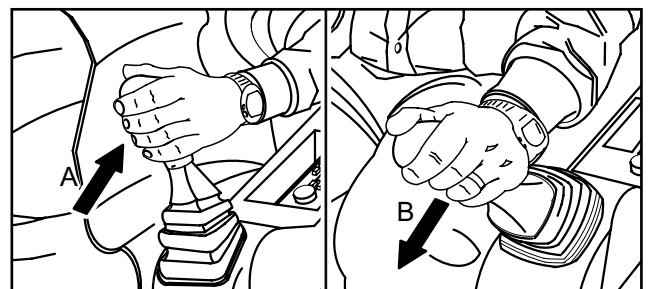
- A: Pull the right control lever backward to move the boom up.
- B: Push the right control lever forward to move the boom down.
- Return the right control lever to the neutral (center) position to stop the boom.



ARM OPERATION

To operate the arm, move the left control lever forward and backward. Speed of the arm is controlled by the displacement of the control lever.

- A: Pull the left control lever backward to move the arm closer to the cab (Arm in).
- B: Push the left control lever forward to move the arm forward and away from the cab (Arm out).
- Return the left control lever to the neutral (center) position to stop the arm.

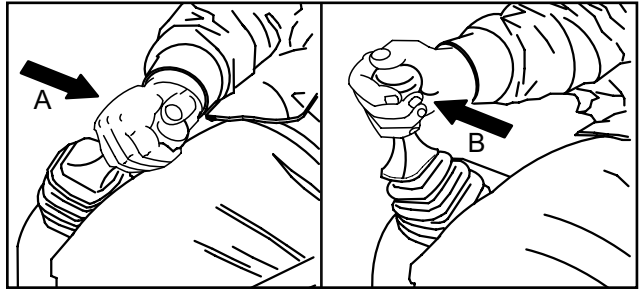


[3. MACHINE OPERATION]

BUCKET OPERATION

To operate the bucket, move the right control lever left and right. Speed of the bucket is controlled by the displacement of the control lever.

- A: Move the right control lever left to move the bucket to the digging side.
- B: Move the right control lever right to move the bucket to the dumping side.
- Return the right control lever to the neutral (center) position to stop the bucket.



SWING OPERATION

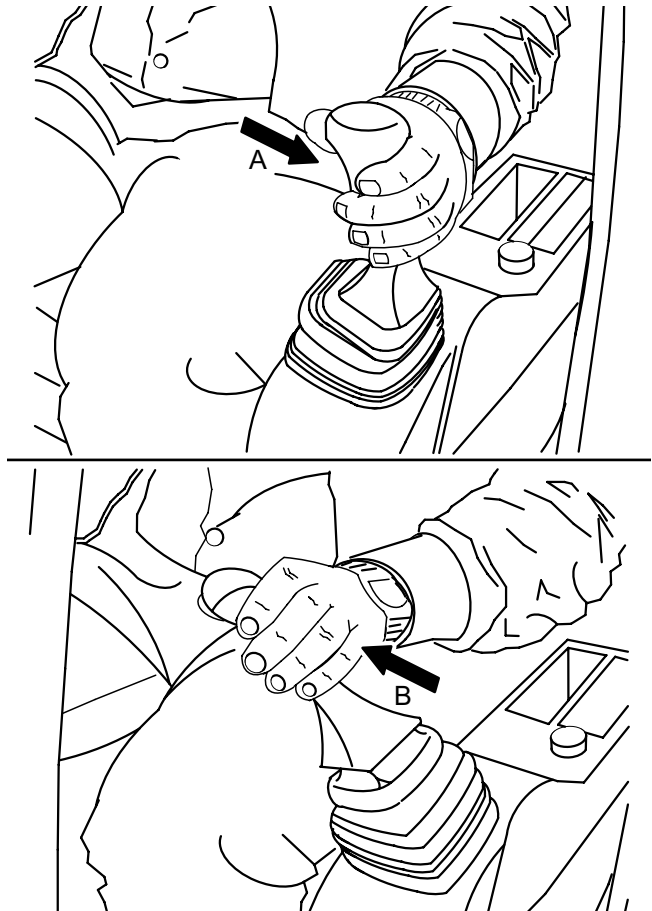


PRECAUTIONS TO PREVENT DANGER IN SWINGING

Make sure that the swing area and the surroundings are clear of obstacles and people before beginning operation. Sound the horn or send signals to warn people before starting to operate the machine.

To perform the swing operation, move the left control lever left and right. Speed of the swinging is controlled by the displacement of the control lever.

- A: Move the left control lever left to swing the machine left.
- B: Move the left control lever right to swing the machine right.
- Return the left control lever to the neutral (center) position to stop the swinging.



3.11 MACHINE OPERATION

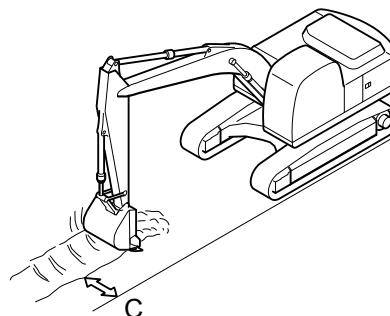
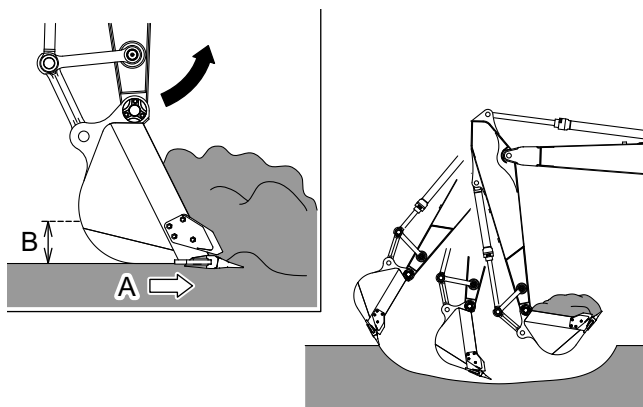
The machine operation procedures described below provide operators with basics which should be learned and understood, thoroughly. You can further improve your operational skill by thoroughly learning the performance and structure of this machine.

3.12 WORK PROCEDURES OF MACHINE

3.12.1 DIGGING WORK

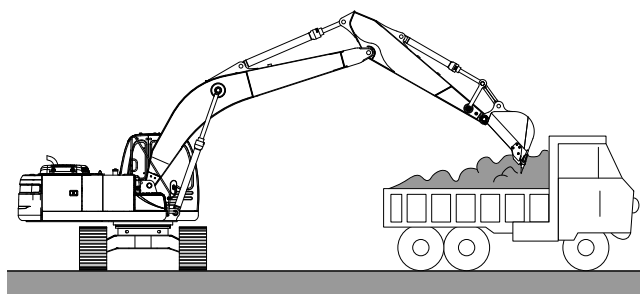
For digging work, mainly the arm crowding force is used, and the bucket scooping force may be used if necessary.

- When a strong digging force is required, dig slowly while keeping the crossing angle of the boom and the arm at 90 to 110 degrees.
When lowering the boom, avoid rapid operations. Especially, urgent stop during boom "DOWN" has a great impact on the machine, resulting in adverse effects on parts.
- Point the bucket tooth tips to the digging direction (A) as much as possible, and dig with the bucket positioned at shallow depth (B) and with full stroke. This will reduce the digging resistance and damage to the tooth tips.
- If soil does not fall out easily, set the bucket in the bucket out position and move the bucket a few times by the control lever.
Never extend and retract the boom cylinder repeatedly while the arm cylinder is fully extended to fall out the soil.
- When digging a wide trench, dig both sides of it first and dig the center last.
To improve the efficiency, attach a bucket suitable for trenching and place the crawlers parallel (C) to the trench to dig.



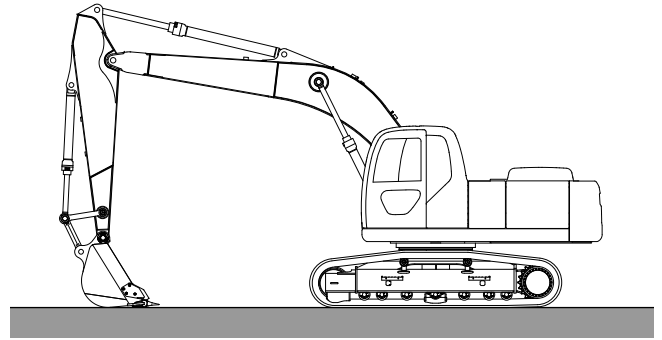
3.12.2 LOADING WORK

- Place a dump truck on where the operator can easily see it and the swing angle is smaller. By this, loading work can be performed efficiently.
Loading from the rear side of the dump truck is easier and more soil can be loaded compared with loading from the side of the dump truck.

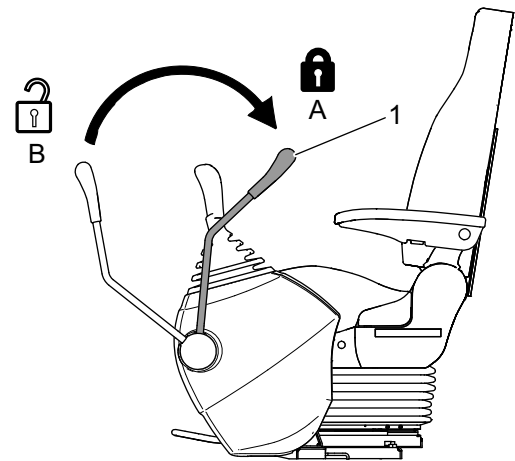


3.13 ALWAYS PARK MACHINE PROPERLY

1. Travel machine to a safe location on firm, level ground.
2. Lower the attachment to the ground.
If equipped with a dozer blade, lower it to the ground.
3. Set the auto acceleration switch to the "OFF" position.



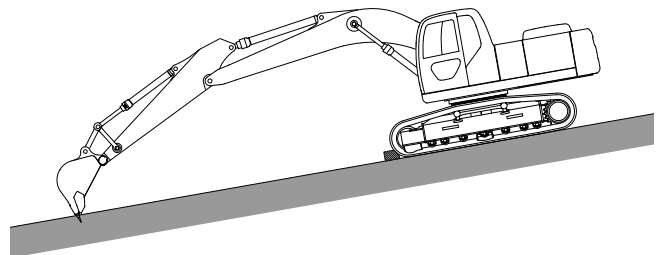
4. Pull the control lock lever(1) to the "LOCKED" (up) position(A).
If not locked, accidental or unintended contact with the control levers, pedals and other control devices may result in unexpected and unintended machine movement.
5. Turn engine throttle to the low idle position.
6. Turn the starter switch to the "OFF" position and remove the key.
Close and lock the windows and the cab door.
Check the windows, doors and all other machine access covers are locked and secure.



3.13.1 PARKING MACHINE ON SLOPE

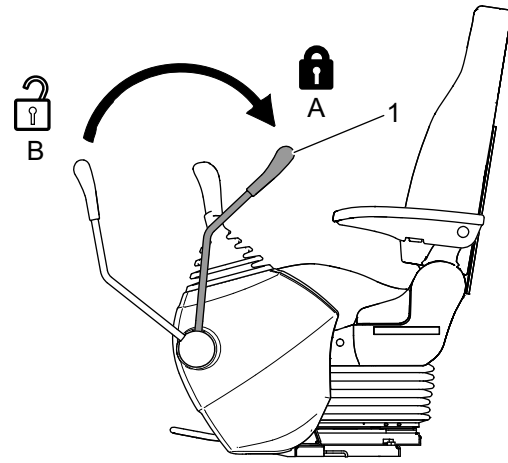
If the machine must be parked on a slope.

1. The undercarriage and the upper structure and the attachment /equipment must face downhill.
2. Lower the attachment into the ground. If equipped with a bucket, wedge the bucket into the ground.
If equipped with a dozer blade, lower it to the ground.
3. Set the auto acceleration switch to the "OFF" position.



[3. MACHINE OPERATION]

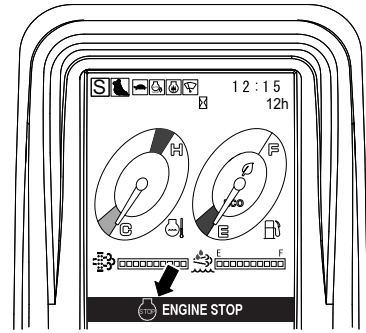
4. Pull the control lock lever(1) to the "LOCKED" (up) position(A).
If not locked, accidental or unintended contact with the control levers, pedals and other control devices may result in unexpected and unintended machine movement.
5. Turn engine throttle to the low idle position.
6. Turn the starter switch to the "OFF" position and remove the key.
Close and lock the windows and the cab door.
Check the windows, doors and all other machine access covers are locked and secure.
7. Block the tracks in the front and the rear.



3.14 INSPECTION AND CHECK AFTER OPERATION

Check the engine coolant temperature, engine oil pressure and fuel level on the multi-display.

- If there is the engine coolant temperature or the engine oil pressure warning display, move the machine to a safe place and stop the engine immediately. Then repair the machine according to "INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE CHART" in Chapter 4.
- Check oil and water leakage, the attachment/equipment, the exterior parts, and the travel system components. If leakage or damage is found, repair it immediately according to "INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE CHART" in Chapter 4.
- Refuel the tank to the maximum. Refuel the tank to the maximum after finishing work for a day. Be careful not to refuel the tank to a level more than necessary (to the top end the tank). There is a possibility of overflowing because the fuel expands as the outside air temperature rises.
- Remove mud, etc., stuck to the travel system components.



3.15 MACHINE OPERATION IN ADVERSE CONDITIONS

3.15.1 OPERATION IN COLD CONDITION

CAUTION

When the ambient temperature is low, starting the engine may be difficult due to decrease of oil liquidity, and the radiator may be damaged due to coolant freezing.

FUEL/OIL

Use good low-viscosity fuel/oil for each device. For the optimum viscosity, see "LUBRICANT, FUEL & COOLANT SPECIFICATIONS" in Chapter 4.

COOLANT

When operating or storing the machine in cold climates, the additive rate of the cooling system should match the expected minimum outdoor temperature.

If the coolant is frozen, it may cause damage to the radiator, cylinder block and cylinder head. When being shipped from the factory, "Long Life Coolant" is used to prevent rust and freezing of the cooling system.

When operating or storing the machine in extreme cold, check the coolant frequently to keep an appropriate concentration. For the concentration of coolant, see "LUBRICANT, FUEL & COOLANT SPECIFICATIONS" in Chapter 4.

BATTERY

When the ambient temperature is low, the battery capacity may decrease and the battery electrolyte may freeze. Charge the battery full earlier than the specified interval and pay full attention to thermal insulation by covering the battery.

When leaving the machine outdoors overnight, it is recommended to remove the battery and store it in a warm room.

Measure the specific gravity of battery electrolyte after its temperature becomes almost the same as the outdoor temperature, instead of immediately after operation. The charging rate can be calculated roughly by measuring the specific gravity and using the table below.

Specific Gravity of Battery Electrolyte

Charging rate	Battery electrolyte temperature		
	-20 degrees C	0 degrees C	20 degrees C
100%	1.31	1.29	1.28
90%	1.29	1.28	1.26
80%	1.28	1.26	1.25
75%	1.27	1.25	1.24

AFTER OPERATION

To prevent malfunctions of the travel system components due to freezing of mud and water stuck to them, follow the precautions below.

- Remove mud and water stuck to the machine sufficiently. Especially, be sure to drain off the water from the travel system, and then park the machine on a dry and firm ground to prevent the travel system from freezing.
- Wipe the cylinder rod completely. If frozen mud or water is stuck to the cylinder rod surfaces, the seal may be damaged when retracting the cylinder. Retract each cylinder to the minimum size to minimize the exposed area of the rod.

For the storing position, see "PRECAUTIONS FOR LONG-TERM STORAGE" in Chapter 3.

3.15.2 OPERATION AT SEASHORE

After operation, wash the machine carefully to remove salt, and apply anti-rust treatments with oil and grease, if necessary.

3.15.3 OPERATION IN SANDY AND DUSTY AREAS

- Clean and change the air cleaner element earlier than the specified interval.
- Clean the radiator earlier than the specified interval to prevent the radiator core from being clogged with dust.
- Be careful to prevent dust entering when refueling, and refilling oils. Inspect the filter element earlier than the specified interval.
- Especially, clean the starter and alternator earlier than the specified interval to prevent deposit of dust on them.

3.16 PRECAUTIONS FOR LONG-TERM STORAGE

When storing the machine for a long period (one month or longer), maintain the machine with attention to the following points, to prevent decrease in function at the next operation.

3.16.1 WASHING MACHINE

Wash the machine thoroughly, inspect and maintain the travel system components and apply touch-up to the peeling paint and scratches. Apply grease to the greasing points.



DO not wash the inside of the cab.

When washing the machine, cover the CPU and the electric components to prevent water or steam from splashing on or contacting with them.

3.16.2 REFILLING OIL/GREASING

Check the level and contamination of the fuel and hydraulic oil. Refill the oil if the level is low, and replace the oil if the oil is contaminated.

- To prevent condensation in the fuel tank, supply new clean fuel fully to the upper limit.
- Apply a sufficient quantity of anti-rust oil to any parts which rust easily, especially to the exposed area of each cylinder piston rod.

3.16.3 BATTERY

- To compensate the self-discharge during storage, perform auxiliary charge at least once a month.
 - If the battery power-off switch is equipped, set the battery power-off switch to the "OFF" position to cut off the current.
 - Remove the negative (-) terminal from the battery, and remove the battery from the machine for storage. Be careful not to connect the negative (-) terminal of the battery to the body (ground terminal) with a tool when removing the battery. It will cause short circuit even when the battery power-off switch is set to "OFF".
-



Before turning the battery power-off switch to the "O (OFF)" position or removing the terminal of the battery, turn the starter switch to the "OFF" position and wait 5 minutes or more.

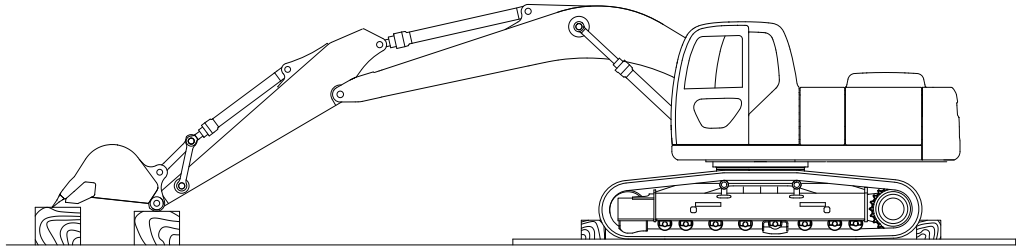
When turning off the battery power-off switch immediately after the engine is stopped, the exhaust gas cleaning device may be damaged.

3.16.4 COOLANT

If there is a possibility of freezing, mix the antifreeze (non-amine type) into the radiator.

However, normally it is not necessary because long life coolant is already mixed at the time of shipment. See "LUBRICANT, FUEL & COOLANT SPECIFICATIONS" in Chapter 4.

3.16.5 PREVENTION OF DUST AND MOISTURE



Store the machine in a dry indoor location. If you place the machine outside unavoidably, lay ladders on a flat ground and cover the machine with a sheet. Especially, cover the muffler, hydraulic oil tank breather, fuel tank cap, and swing motor level gauge.

To protect the exposed part of the rod, fully retract the arm and bucket cylinders, be sure to place the bucket on the ground and chock the crawlers.

3.16.6 PERIODICAL LUBRICATING OPERATION (DURING STORAGE)

Once a month, start the engine to operate the machine and also move the working devices to supply the hydraulic oil to each part. If the oil film shortage occurs on parts and rust is formed on parts, it may cause abnormal wear at the next operation.

- Check the engine oil level and coolant level before starting the engine. Refill engine oil or coolant if its level is low.
- Wipe off the anti-rust oil from the cylinder rods. After the lubricating operation, apply the anti-rust oil again.
- After starting the engine, fully warm-up the machine and repeat the traveling, swing and digging operations several times to prevent lubricant oil film shortage.
- If the machine is stored indoors, adequate ventilation is required during warming-up.

Lubricating operation

1. Slowly extend and retract each cylinder several times and circulate the hydraulic oil in all operation circuits.
2. Also perform swing and traveling slowly to circulate the hydraulic oil.

3.16.7 TREATMENT AFTER LONG-TERM STORAGE

When starting to use the machine after a long-term suspension, perform the following treatments.

- Loosen the plugs of the travel reduction unit and swing reduction unit and remove the dust and water which deposited during the long-term storage.
- Lubricant gets deteriorated while the machine is not in use. Use extreme caution when starting to use the machine at the next time.
- Check the deterioration of the hydraulic hoses carefully after the long-term storage. Replace the deteriorated hoses.
- Wipe off the anti-rust oil from the cylinder rods.
- Refill oil and grease to all necessary parts.
- Check the engine oil level and coolant level before starting the engine. Refill engine oil or coolant if its level is low.
- After starting the engine, fully warm-up the machine and repeat the traveling, swing and digging operations several times to prevent hydraulic oil film shortage.
- If the machine is stored indoors, adequate ventilation is required during warming-up.
- When DEF/AdBlue in the DEF/AdBlue tank is past the expiration intervals shown in the table below, ask your KOBELCO authorized dealer for changing DEF/AdBlue. DEF/AdBlue that becomes old sometimes emits the ammonia acrid odor, so do not smell that.

Storage ambient temperature	Expiration interval
10 degrees C (50 degrees F) or less	36 months
25 degrees C (77 degrees F) or less	18 months
30 degrees C (86 degrees F) or less	12 months
35 degrees C (95 degrees F) or less	6 months
Exceeds 35 degrees C (95 degrees F)	1 month

4. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE

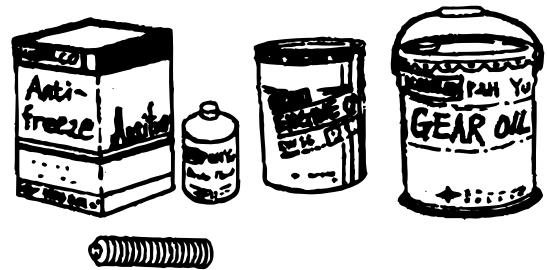
4.1 GENERAL



INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE ON THE MACHINE

Thoroughly read and understand the safety precautions contained in this manual before performing any inspection or service procedures on systems or components of this machine.

- Regular inspection and maintenance enable this machine to achieve the full function and extend the service life of each part.
- The information contained in this chapter gives the proper procedures for performing inspection and maintenance of this machine. Use these procedures when performing inspection and maintenance as they will guide the technician step by step for each procedure. Also, see "INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE CHART" for general service interval recommendations.
- As a general rule, the period of the lubrication and maintenance is determined by the hour meter. If the hour meter reading matches roughly with the calendar day, and if you would like to schedule them based on the calendar day, take whichever comes first. For items which do not have a certain service time, see "WHEN REQUIRED".



Notice

As a general rule, the period of the lubrication and maintenance is determined by the hour meter. If the hour meter reading matches roughly with the calendar day, and if you would like to schedule them based on the calendar day, take whichever comes first. For items which do not have a certain service time, see "WHEN REQUIRED".

- Use only specified oils, fluids, lubricants, filters and replacement parts to keep machine in optimum operating condition. Use the oils and greases with the specified viscosity depending on the ambient temperature. Store containers of oils, fluids and grease indoors in an appropriate location. To prevent dust and water intrusion, keep the containers of oil, fluid, and lubricant in a proper indoor place.

4.2 INSPECTING AND MAINTAINING MACHINE

4.2.1 PERIODIC INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE

Regular inspection and maintenance enable this machine to achieve the full function and extend the service life of each part. Inspection and maintenance schedules are given in both the calendar time and the operation time. Take either schedule whichever comes first. For items which do not have a certain service time, see "WHEN REQUIRED". Also, operation in sites under severe work conditions or with a lot of dust and moisture may need more frequent lubrication and maintenance than the service times specified there.

4.2.2 PRECAUTIONS OF INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE

Use inspection and maintenance procedures described in this manual. Park the machine on a level and firm ground before inspection and maintenance.

Notice

For the adjustment, disassembling and repair of the engine, reduction unit, hydraulic component and electronic devices (controller, etc.), contact your KOBECO authorized dealer.

STOP THE ENGINE BEFORE INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE

Be sure to stop the engine before inspection and maintenance of the engine. Inspecting and maintaining the running engine may cause injury by being caught in the cooling fan or fan belts. When running the engine is unavoidable during the inspection or maintenance, it should be done by at least two persons with the condition that one person can stop the engine at any time and they are communicating with each other.

PUT THE WARNING TAGS

Put the tags "DO NOT START ENGINE!", "DO NOT OPERATE" and "UNDER INSPECTION/MAINTENANCE" on noticeable places such as around the operator's seat as well as the starter switch or control levers before inspection and maintenance.

USE OUR GENUINE PARTS

- For replacement of parts, grease and oil, be sure to use KOBELCO genuine parts. Use grease and oil with the specified viscosity depending on the ambient temperature.
- Store containers of greases and oils in a clean room to keep them away from dust and water.

KEEP OUT DUST

Attach a plug or cap to the lubrication hole of a removed hydraulic hose or hydraulic component to keep out foreign materials.

INSPECT DRAIN OIL AND FILTERS

When replacing oil or filter, check the drain oil or old filter for metallic powder or other foreign materials mixed. Contact the person in charge and take appropriate measures if any foreign materials are found.

HANDLING OF WASTE OIL AND ANTIFREEZE

Be sure to drain waste oil and antifreeze in containers and ask a public service company for disposal of them as the industrial waste.

CLEAN THE SEALING SURFACE

After removing the O-ring or gasket seal, clean the sealing surface to replace it with a new one. Apply thin oil to the O-ring or seal and attach it into the groove correctly.

DO NOT MIX OILS

Never mix different kinds of oil. When using another kind of oil, replace the total amount of old oil.

4.2.3 LOCK LEVER

Lock levers are located on the side doors and the engine hood.

When opening the side doors and the engine hood, be sure to hold the doors open with the lock lever.

CAUTION

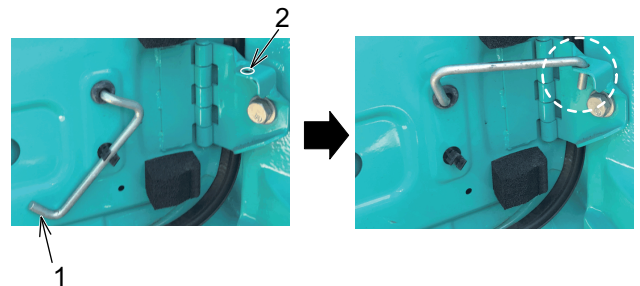
Before performing inspection or maintenance, be sure that the door or engine hood is securely fixed with the lock lever to prevent it from moving.

Unfixed door or engine door might cause injury.

Swing door lock lever

Open the door and insert the lock lever (1) into the lock hole (2) to secure the lock lever.

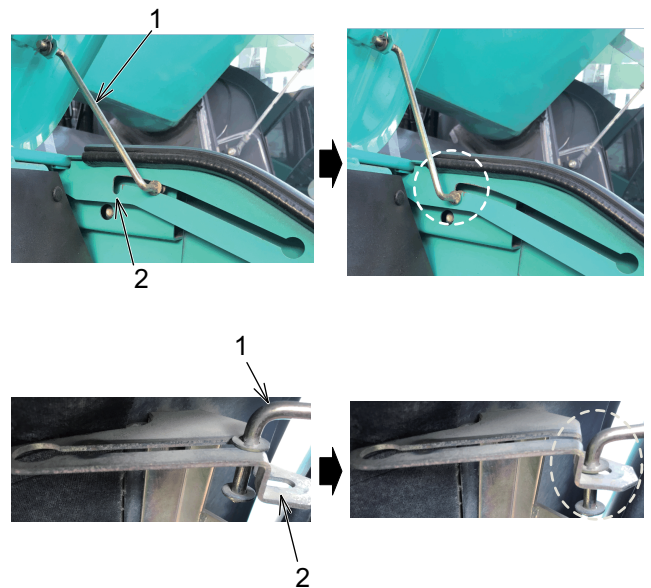
Before closing the door, remove the lock lever from the lock hole, put it back to the original position and then close the door.



Slide lock lever

Open the door, slide the lock lever (1) to support the part (2) of the guide to secure the lock lever.

Before closing the door, remove the lock lever from support the part (2) and then close the door.



4.3 DIESEL PARTICULATE FILTER (DPF)

4.3.1 ABOUT DPF

DPF traps soot emitted from the engine using the filter to clean up exhaust gas.

When a certain amount of soot trapped on the filter is deposited (about 10 hours of operating time), DPF enters the mode in which it burns the trapped soot. Burning soot in this mode to recover the filter function is called "regeneration".

Be sure to comply with the followings to prevent failure of DPF. (Time of deposition varies depending on the working conditions.) It is normal even though the exhaust sound changes during soot combustion.

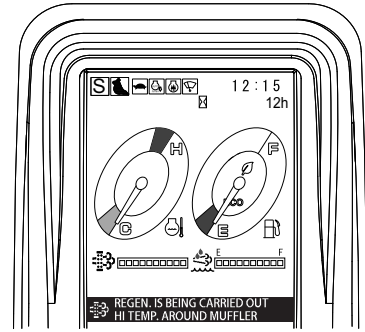
Notice

When a certain amount of soot in the exhaust gas is deposited on the filter, DPF automatically burns the trapped soot according to the operating condition. For details, see "ABOUT AUTOMATIC REGENERATION". In some operating conditions, the automatic combustion may not be completed. At that time, the indication appears on the gauge cluster to request the actuation of DPF manual regeneration. Pull up the pilot control shut-off lever and press the DPF manual regeneration switch. This prevents abnormal deposit of soot and keeps the purification capacity of DPF in good condition at all times.

4.3.2 ABOUT AUTOMATIC REGENERATION

When a certain amount of soot is deposited on the filter, DPF enters the mode in which it burns soot automatically.

At this time, the indication of regenerating is displayed on the multi-display.



CAUTION

Immediately after the machine operation and during the regeneration, the temperature around the exhaust pipe and muffler and of the exhaust gas are very high. Putting any combustible materials close to these hot parts, could cause a fire. Touching hot exhaust gas may cause burns.

Notice

In some operating conditions, the automatic regeneration may not be completed. When the automatic regeneration is not performed and soot is deposited, the warning requesting the user to perform the manual regeneration is displayed on the multi-display. In this case, perform the manual regeneration, referring "ABOUT MANUAL REGENERATION".

In the following operations, the automatic regeneration may be difficult to complete.

- At engine start, when the control lever is pulled up to the "LOCKED" position and most of the times the levers are not operated.
- When many operations at a low speed of the engine are performed.
- When the engine is started and stopped frequently
- When the operation is performed in an extremely cold place
- When there are many low-load operations
- When the engine is operated and stopped while it is still not warm

Notice

The above indication may be displayed also when the deposited amount of soot is low.

To maintain the condition inside the muffler proper, the automatic regeneration may be performed even when the soot deposition meter on the gauge cluster indicates Level 2 or lower.

4.3.3 ABOUT MANUAL REGENERATION



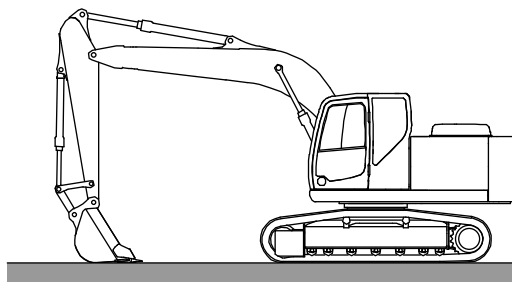
When this warning is displayed on the multi-display, perform the manual regeneration of DPF immediately. Failure to do so, could result in engine derate condition.

OPERATION METHOD

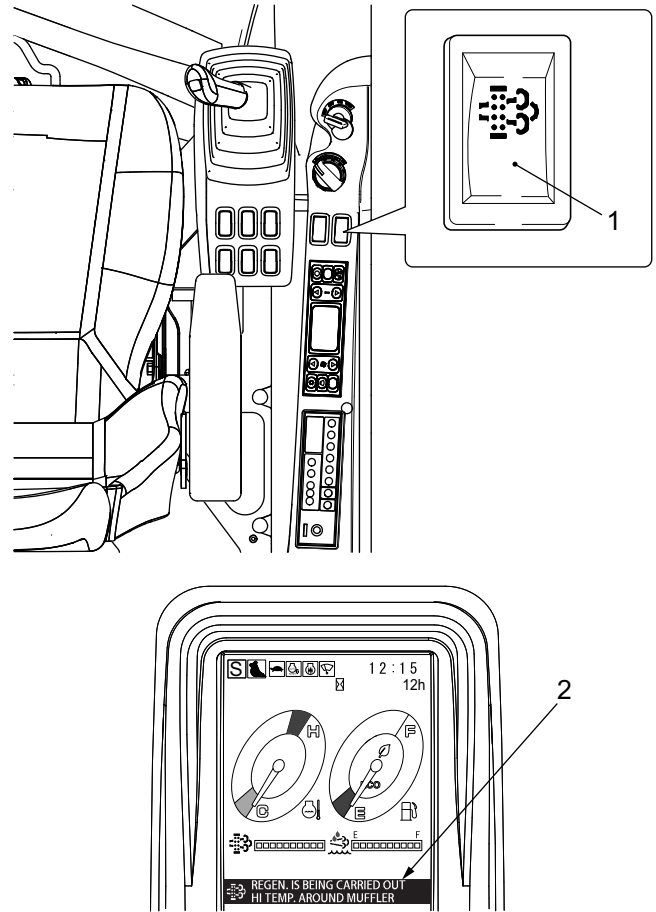
CAUTION

- Do not leave the operator's seat during the manual regeneration procedure.
Should interruption of Manual Regeneration be necessary, lower the control lock lever to unlock position.
 - Stop machine operation, (digging, lifting, shear, breaker and so on) before starting the manual regeneration procedure.
During the regeneration operation, there is a possibility that the attachment could move slowly inward slightly, but it is not a failure.
If the manual regeneration is performed with the attachment in the air, it may lead to unexpected attachment movement.
Keep attachment/equipment away from bucket teeth during regeneration.
 - Manual regeneration should be done on firm, level ground.
If the attachment is grounded on a concrete or other paved surface, the paved surface may be damaged.
Avoid manual regeneration on the pavement surface.
 - To avoid burns, do not allow combustible materials or any portion of your body to come into contact with the hot exhaust gases.
During regeneration processes, the temperature around the exhaust pipe and muffler are very high.
Additionally, the exhaust gases will also be elevated.
Keep the machine and exhaust outlet at least 3m(10') from any combustible material or environment.
-

1. Move the machine to to a flat and level surface.
Confirm that no one is on, under, or around the machine and no combustible materials are close to the muffler.
2. Lower the attachment to the ground and place the machine in the parking position shown in the figure.
Pull the control lock lever to the "LOCKED"(up) position."



3. Press DPF manual regeneration switch (1) show in the figure. Indication of regeneration function (2) is displayed on the monitor.
4. When indication (2) goes off, the manual regeneration is completed.
It takes about 10 to 20 minutes to complete the manual regeneration.



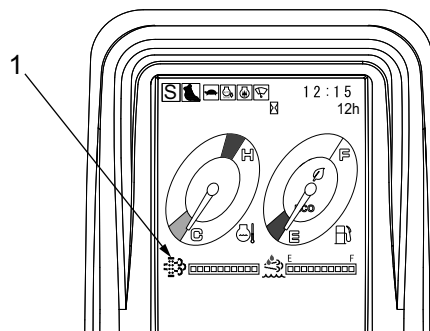
Notice

- The machine performs automatic regeneration when a certain amount of soot is captured in the DPF, but it may not be completed in some operating conditions. (Extreme cold and long time engine idle conditions, interruption of the automatic regeneration and so on.)
- When the DPF accumulates an excessive amount of soot and it is not cleaned via regeneration, manual or automatic, the engine performance is derated.
- When too much soot is deposited, DPF failure occurs and the engine speed is restricted.
To restore DPF, the machine needs to be maintained at your KOBELCO authorized dealer.
- The process of regeneration is accomplished by increasing the temperature inside the DPF or Diesel Particulate Filter and burning accumulated soot.
If manual regeneration is performed immediately after machine operation, the process is aided due to accumulated heat, and will take less time."
- Manual regeneration may take more than 20 minutes if the machine and engine are cool or extreme cold climate.
This is due to the necessity of heating the engine and exhaust components to regeneration temperatures.
- Should the need to stop engine or control lock lever be lowered to "unlocked" position, the regeneration is stopped but not completed. It will be necessary to perform manual regeneration again for a complete procedure.
If a manual regeneration fails to complete or there are "Error Code" displayed on the monitor, please contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer for assistance.

4.3.4 SOOT DEPOSITION METER AND WARNING DISPLAY

Soot deposition amount can be checked with the gauge cluster. Set the starter key switch to "ON" position to display soot deposition meter (1). Use this meter as a rough guideline.

If the manual/automatic regeneration is not performed, the soot deposition amount becomes high, the warning appears and the warning sounds, the engine speed is restricted, and regeneration becomes impossible. To restore DPF, contact our service factory for maintenance.



Warning Display	Soot Deposition Meter	
	Level	Color
None	0	No Display
None	1 to 4	Green
1. LIFT UP LOCK LEVER 2. PUSH REGENERATION SW.	5 to 6	Yellow
1. LIFT UP LOCK LEVER 2. PUSH REGENERATION SW.	7	Red
EXHAUST GAS AFTER TREATMENT EQUIPMENT WILL BE DAMAGED	8 to 9	
EXHAUST GAS AFTER TREATMENT EQUIPMENT FAILURE	10	

- If the soot deposition meter shows Level 5 (yellow) or more, the warning appears with sound.
- If the soot deposition meter shows Level 7 (red) or more, the additional warning, "EXHAUST GAS AFTER TREATMENT EQUIPMENT WILL BE DAMAGED", is displayed.
- If the soot deposition meter shows Level 8 (red) or more, the engine speed is restricted.
- If the soot deposition meter shows Level 10 (red), and the "EXHAUST GAS AFTER TREATMENT EQUIPMENT FAILURE" warning is displayed, the engine speed and the engine output are restricted. Manual generation becomes impossible in this state even if the switch is pressed.

4.3.5 INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE

- Inspection interval: Every 1,000 hours (or every 1 year)
You need to check the DPF unit for damage, including the sensor cables and hoses. If crackings or other damages are found on the surface of the hoses for the sensor, replace them immediately.
For inspection and replacement, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.
- Check that no clogging occurs in the pipe. (Apply compressed air from the end of the pipe and check that air goes through.)
When the differential pressure pipe becomes clogged, the differential pressure sensor does not work, resulting in cause of failure.
- The inspection and maintenance are needed every 2 years for the DPF unit, sensor cables and hoses attached to the unit and mount. For inspection and maintenance, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.
- Clean or replace DPF every 4,500 hours. For cleaning or replacement, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.

4.3.6 PRECAUTIONS OF USING DPF

USE SPECIFIED FUEL ONLY

Notice

Use the specified fuel described in "LUBRICANT, FUEL & COOLANT SPECIFICATIONS" in Chapter 4 in the operation manual.

If you use fuel other than the specified fuel, it has an adverse effect on the engine and DPF, causing white smoke and malfunction.

USE SPECIFIED ENGINE OIL ONLY

Notice

Use the specified engine oil described in "LUBRICANT, FUEL & COOLANT SPECIFICATIONS" in Chapter 4 in the operation manual.

Use the specified engine oil to keep the DPF function normal for a long time.

PROHIBITION OF ENGINE PIPE DISASSEMBLY

Notice

Do not remove the exhaust pipe or disassemble the muffler and parts around it. This may affect the performance of DPF adversely or break it.

4.4 SCR SYSTEM AND DEF/ADBLUE

This machine is equipped with SCR (Selective Catalytic Reduction) system for NOx (nitrogen oxidate) discharge reduction.

4.4.1 SCR

SCR equipped with this machine reduces NOx in exhaust gas by injecting DEF/AdBlue into the muffler to resolve NOx in the exhaust gas into water and nitrogen.

4.4.2 DEF/AdBlue

DEF/AdBlue is used for the SCR system on this machine. Use only specified DEF/AdBlue.

CAUTION

- DEF/AdBlue should meet ISO 22241-1 or JIS K2247-1.
 - Do not put diesel fuel or water in the DEF/AdBlue tank.
 - Follow the precautions for handling DEF/AdBlue specified by the manufacturer.
-

4.4.3 DEF/AdBlue CIRCUIT AND BATTERY

CAUTION

Before removing the battery terminals, turn the starter switch to the OFF position and wait 5 minute or more. If the battery power is turned off immediately after stopping the engine, it may cause damage to the exhaust gas cleaning device.

Notice

Even after turning the engine OFF, you may hear running sound of the DEF/AdBlue supply module. To prevent DEF/AdBlue remaining in the DEF/AdBlue pipe from freezing and drying, DEF/AdBlue is returned to the tank with the DEF/AdBlue supply module.

4.4.4 STORING DEF/ADBLUE

Notice

DEF/AdBlue freezes at - 11 degrees C. The container may be damaged from volume expansion due to freezing.

- DEF/AdBlue should be stored in a place without direct sunlight and with well ventilation, with its container sealed.
- Do not mix DEF/AdBlue with other chemicals, heat it, or dilute it with water.

4.4.5 PURCHASING DEF/ADBLUE

DEF/AdBlue can be purchased in the following places or confirm where to purchase.

- Gas stations and stores that sell automobile goods.
- DEF/AdBlue manufacturers
- KOBELCO authorized dealer/distributor






4.4.6 LOW DEF/ADBLUE LEVEL

Notice

When the level gauge of the gauge cluster showed Level 2 (yellow), Level 1 (red), or Level 0 (no display), add DEF/AdBlue promptly until it reaches Level 3 (green) or more.

DEF/AdBlue shortage restricts the engine output.

When the following warnings are displayed in the multi-display, see "CHECKING DEF/ADBLUE LEVEL AND REFILLING" in Chapter 3 to supply DEF/AdBlue.

Level	Warning Display	Contents
1st Level	 DEF/ADBLUE LEVEL LOW	Displayed with the warning sound when the DEF/AdBlue level gauge is Level 2 (yellow).
2nd Level	 DEF/ADBLUE LEVEL LOW  POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS	Displayed with the warning sound when the DEF/AdBlue level gauge is Level 1 (red). Gradually, a restriction is applied to the engine output.
3rd Level	 DEF/ADBLUE TANK IS EMPTY  EXTREME POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS	Displayed with the continuous warning sound when the DEF/AdBlue level gauge is Level 0 (no display). The engine output is further restricted than Level 2.

4.4.7 QUALITY PROBLEMS OF DEF/ADBLUE






CAUTION

- Use DEF/AdBlue which meets ISO 22241-1 or JIS K2247-1.
- Do not add diesel fuel or water in the DEF/AdBlue tank.
- Follow the precautions for handling DEF/AdBlue specified by the manufacturer.

When the following warnings are displayed on the multi-display, something other than DEF/AdBlue is in the DEF/AdBlue tank. See "DRAINING DEF/ADBLUE" in Chapter 4 and "CHECKING DEF/ADBLUE LEVEL AND REFILLING" in Chapter 3 to drain and refill DEF/AdBlue.

If the machine is operated with the DEF/AdBlue in abnormal quality, the engine output is restricted.

Also, when something else than DEF/AdBlue is put in the tank and the engine is started, the DEF/AdBlue pipes and the DEF/AdBlue supply module may need to be replaced. In that case, contact our service factory.

LEVEL	Warning Display	Description
Level 1	 POOR DEF/ADBLUE QUALITY DETECTED	Displayed with the warning sound when the DEF/AdBlue sensor determines the quality problem of DEF/AdBlue.
Level 2	 POOR DEF/ADBLUE QUALITY DETECTED  POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS	Displayed with the warning sound when a certain period of time has passed from Level 1. The engine output is gradually restricted.
Level 3	 POOR DEF/ADBLUE QUALITY DETECTED  EXTREME POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS	Displayed with the continuous warning sound when a certain period of time has passed from Level 2. The engine output is further restricted than Level 2.

Notice

When failure of the DEF/AdBlue quality or the exhaust gas cleaning device occurs repeatedly, the warning level goes up. If another failure or error occurs in a short period of time after the failure of the DEF/AdBlue quality or the exhaust gas cleaning device is corrected, the warning level starts from Level 3.

4.4.8 DRAINING DEF/ADBLUE

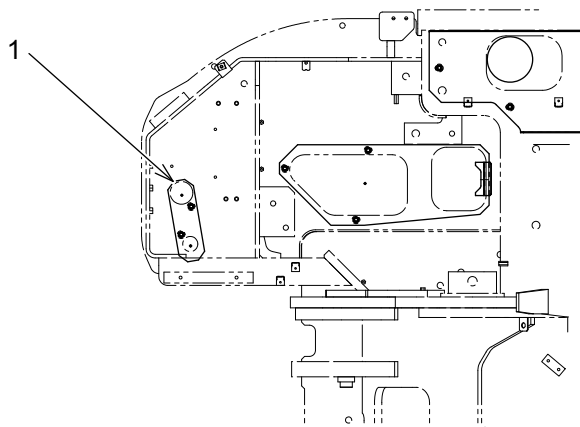
In case of draining the content of the DEF/AdBlue tank is required like when the warning for abnormal DEF/AdBlue quality appears, follow the next procedures.

Notice

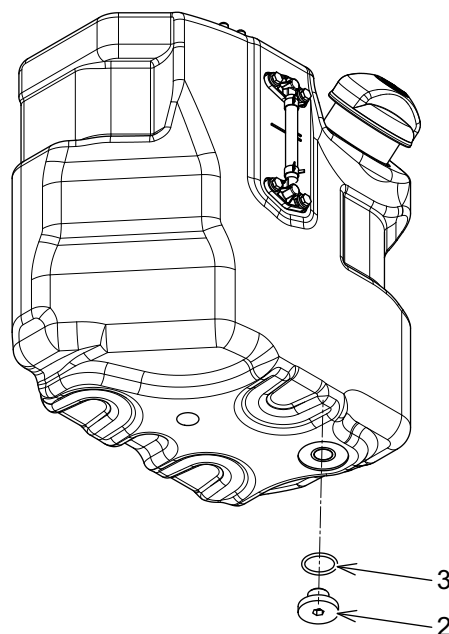
When supplying DEF/AdBlue after draining, the quality of DEF/AdBlue is promptly judged if the starter key switch is "ON"; however, if it is done while the switch is "OFF", it takes a while to judge its quality after turning the switch "ON" at the next time.

When the work is done in "OFF", wait for approximately 10 minutes after turning the switch "ON", and check the warning is not displayed on the gauge cluster.

1. Prepare a container to receive drain DEF/AdBlue and cloths to wipe it off.
2. Remove cover (1) on the bottom of the DEF/AdBlue tank.



3. Remove drain plug (2) and O-ring (3) of the DEF/AdBlue tank, and start draining DEF/AdBlue.
4. After draining DEF/AdBlue, attach O-ring (3) and drain plug (2).
Tightening torque of plug: $50 \pm 5 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$ ($36.9 \pm 3.7 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$)
5. Attach cover (1).
6. See "CHECKING DEF/ADBLUE LEVEL AND REFILLING" in Chapter 3 to supply DEF/AdBlue.
7. After the supply, check no warning is displayed on the multi-display.












4.4.9 FAILURE OF EXHAUST GAS CLEANING DEVICE

When the following warnings are displayed on the multi-display, the exhaust gas cleaning device has a failure or an error.

When keep operating with the exhaust gas cleaning device having a failure or an error, the engine output is restricted and, in the end, the machine becomes inoperable.

When these warnings are displayed, contact our service factory.

LEVEL	Warning Display	Description	
Level 1	 NOx CONTROL SYSTEM FAILURE TORQUE LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P204F	Failure of NOx exhaust control system	Displayed with the warning sound when a device or sensor has a failure or an error.
	 DEF/ADBLUE INJECTION FAILURE TORQUE LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P204F	Failure of DEF/AdBlue dosing module	
	 EGR VALVE FAILURE TORQUE LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P1459	Failure of EGR valve	
Level 2	 NOx CONTROL SYSTEM FAILURE POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P204F	Failure of NOx exhaust control system	Displayed with the warning sound when a certain period of time has passed from Level 1. The engine output is restricted.
	 DEF/ADBLUE INJECTION FAILURE POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P204F	Failure of DEF/AdBlue dosing module	
	 EGR VALVE FAILURE POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P1459	Failure of EGR valve	
Level 3	 NOx CONTROL SYSTEM FAILURE EXTREME POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P204F	Failure of NOx exhaust control system	Displayed with the continuous warning sound when a certain period of time has passed from Level 2. The engine output is further restricted than Level 2.
	 DEF/ADBLUE INJECTION FAILURE EXTREME POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P204F	Failure of DEF/AdBlue dosing module	
	 EGR VALVE FAILURE EXTREME POWER LIMITATION IN PROGRESS P1459	Failure of EGR valve	

Notice

When failure of the DEF/AdBlue quality or the exhaust gas cleaning device occurs repeatedly, the warning level goes up. If another failure or error occurs in a short period of time after the failure of the DEF/AdBlue quality or the exhaust gas cleaning device is corrected, the warning level starts from Level 3.

After entering the emergency evacuation mode, only a travel operation becomes possible as usual. But operations other than the travel operation remain under restriction.



Contact KOBELCO or your KOBELCO authorized dealer for inspection and maintenance of SCR.

4.5 LUBRICANT, FUEL & COOLANT SPECIFICATIONS

Regardless of the outdoor temperature, the following reduction units use the following oil:

- Swing reduction unit: Gear oil #90, API classification GL-4 class
- Travel reduction unit: Gear oil #90, API classification GL-4 class

Components	Type of Lubricant	Capacities (When changed)	Climate Zone									Specified Lubricant	
			-22 -30	-4 -20	14 -10	32 0	50 10	68 20	86 30	104 40	°F °C		
Hydraulic oil tank	Hydraulic oil	245 Liters (65 Gal) 440 Liters (116 Gal) 〔Hydraulic system〕											(KOBELCO BRAND) Long life hydraulic oil KW5046 (20 L) P/No. KAPYN01T01066D3
Engine oil pan	Engine oil	〔Total volume〕 28.5 Liters (7.5 Gal) 〔H level〕 26.0 Liters (6.9 Gal) 〔L level〕 20.0 Liters (5.3 Gal)											(KOBELCO BRAND) A.P.I CJ-4 ACEA E9, E6 JASO DH-2 P/No. KAPYN01T01077D1 (20 L)
Swing motor reduction unit	Gear oil	7.4 Liter (2.0 Gal)	EXTREME GEAR OIL SAE #90									(KOBELCO BRAND) A.P.I classification for "service GL-4" P/No. KAPSP90020	
Travel motor reduction unit		7.5 Liter X 2 (2.0 Gal X 2)											
Swing motor reduction unit (Housing)	EP grease	1.7 kg (3.7 lbs)	EP GREASE									(KOBELCO BRAND) Extreme pressure multipurpose grease Cartridge P/No.KAPG0420D1 (400g × 20 units) Pail can P/No.KAPG1601D1	
Attachment pins		16 places	EP GREASE										
Slewing ring gear		1 place	EP GREASE										
Track tension Adjustment		2 places	EP GREASE										
Operating lever (Pilot valve)		As required	EP GREASE										
Swing gear		20.6 kg (45.4 lbs)	EP GREASE										
Fuel tank	Diesel fuel	350 Liters (92.5 Gal)	No.2									ASTM D-975	
			No.2									EN 590	
			No.1										
Diesel exhaust flued tank	DEF / AdBlue	24.4 L (6.4 Gal)	ISO 22241-1									ISO 22241-1	
Radiator (Reserve tank)	Engine coolant (Antifreeze)	12.6 L 〔 Total volume 35 L 〕	50% Mixture									(KOBELCO BRAND) 〔 Do not mix and use different types of coolants. 〕 P/No. KAPYN01T01110D1	

[4. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE]

Notice

- When oil leakage or damage of the lower roller, upper roller and front idler is recognized, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer for repair.
 - Be sure to use the specified fuel. To achieve a good fuel efficiency and exhaust gas property, the engine of this machine uses the electronically controlled fuel injector.
Because this device requires high parts precision and high lubricating ability, when low viscosity fuel with low lubricating ability is used, the durability may decrease significantly.
-

Notice

When replacing and refilling the long life hydraulic oil, use the oil specified by KOBELCO.

When non-specified hydraulic oil is used or mixed, the performance decreases and the replacement interval of hydraulic oil needs to be shortened.

Notice

This machine is intended to be operated in the ambient temperature of -20 degrees C to 40 degrees C (-4 degrees F to 104 degrees F) with the well-maintained condition.

Outside this temperature range, sufficient machine performance may not be obtained.

4.6 ABOUT USE OF BIO-OIL (BIODEGRADABLE HYDRAULIC OIL)

4.6.1 GREASE AND OIL FOR USE

Regarding greases and oils for use, ask your KOBELCO authorized dealer.

4.6.2 PRECAUTIONS FOR BIO-OIL

- When changing mineral based hydraulic oil to bio-oil, perform flushing three times. Without flushing, the mineral oil in the circuit is not completely cleaned and the effect of biodegradability cannot be expected.
- Because the friction coefficient of bio-oil is smaller than that of mineral oil, the performance of parking brakes for swing and travel decrease.

4.6.3 REPLACEMENT INTERVAL OF BIO-OIL

Bio-oil should be replaced every 2,000 hours.

For replacing procedures, see "CHANGING HYDRAULIC OIL" in Chapter 4.

4.6.4 FLUSHING PROCEDURES OF BIO-OIL

1. Drain all mineral oil from the hydraulic oil tank.
2. Drain all mineral oil from the cylinders.
3. Fill with new bio-oil in the hydraulic oil tank fully.
4. After starting the engine, operate each cylinder for 10 strokes respectively.

CAUTION

Rapid operation may burn the seal because of the air remained in the cylinder. During the first 4 strokes, operate the cylinder slowly with the engine speed at low idle to charge the hydraulic oil in the cylinder.

5. Idle the right and left travel motors for about 3 minutes respectively.
6. Perform the swing operation for 10 turns.
7. Drain all bio-oil from the hydraulic oil tank.
8. Drain all bio-oil from each cylinder.
9. Fill with new bio-oil in the hydraulic oil tank and repeat the procedures 4 to 9 twice.
10. In the final state, analyze the hydraulic oil and check the remaining amount of mineral oil.

4.7 MAINTENANCE PARTS

Replace parts, such as filters and elements, during the periodical maintenance or before the end of the service life. The machine can be used economically if the maintenance parts are changed properly and timely. When you place an order of parts, confirm the parts number on the parts manual.

MAINTENANCE PARTS LIST

Item		Part Number	Part Name	Q'ty	Replacement Interval
Hydraulic oil tank		LC52V01004R100	Return filter element kit (STD, Breaker)	1	Replace at 50 hours for the first time, then every 1000 hours (every 250 hours with breaker specification)
		(ZD11G19000)	(O-ring)	1	
Hydraulic oil tank		LC50V00006F3	Suction strainer	1	Clean every 2000 hours
		(ZD11G22000)	(O-ring)	1	
Air breather		YN57V00012S002	Element	1	Replace every 1000 hours. Replacement every 1000 hours is just a rough guideline. If the machine is operated in very dusty conditions, replace the element earlier.
Air cleaner		LC11P00018S003	Element (Outer)	1	Replace every 6 times cleaning or every 1 year
		LC11P00018S002	Element (Inner)	1	Replace at the same time with the outer element (do not clean)
Engine oil filter		VHS156072190	Cartridge	1	Replace at 50 hours for the first time, then every 500 hours
Fuel filter	Main	VH23414E0020	Cartridge	1	Replace every 500 hours
	Pre	YN21P01157R100	Cartridge	1	
Air conditioner		LQ50V01009P1	Fresh air filter	1	Replace after 10 times cleaning. When clogging is severe, clean or replace the filter.
		LQ50V01007P1	Recirculation air filter	1	
Pilot line filter		YN50V00020F1	Pilot line filter	1	Clean every 2000 hours
Radiator		LC05P01763P1	Reserve tank cap	1	Replace every 1000 hours
Built-in battery for communication controller		YN22E00643S001	Battery	1	Replace every year

IMPORTANT

- Parts enclosed in parenthesis () should be changed at the same time.
- The built-in battery for communication controller needs to be replaced every year. For replacement, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.

4.8 TIGHTENING TORQUES FOR BOLTS & NUTS (SPECIFIC POSITIONS)

Follow the next table when tightening or retightening bolts or nuts in every part.

Check for any loose or missing bolts or nuts before daily operation and at periodical inspection. Retighten a loose bolts and nuts and supply new parts for missing ones as required.

Inspection and retightening are needed at first 50 hours for a new machine and after that every 250 hours. Except for the retightening positions indicated in the following table, retighten the bolts and nuts according to the tightening torque table in "TIGHTENING TORQUE FOR BOLTS & NUTS" in Chapter 4.

Size (M)	Width across Flats mm	Position of bolts/nuts	Tightening torque N·m (Without Lubrication)	Recommended thread locking agent
M5	—	Installing fuel tank level sensor	1.96±0.2	
M8	13	Installing condenser	9.9 to 12.1	
	13	Installing water sub-tank	26.5±3.0	
	13	Condenser mounting bracket	23±2.3	
M10	17	Installing swivel joint dust cover	14.7±1.5	Applying Loctite #572
	17	Installing swing bearing access panel cover	29.4±2.9	Applying Loctite #572
	17	Installing floor plate rubber mount	46.5±4.6	
	17	Installing air cleaner	39.2±3.9	Applying Loctite #262
	17	Installing engine oil filter	46.1±4.9	Applying Loctite #262
	17	Installing bracket for power take	64.7±6.4	Applying Loctite #262
	17	Installing hydraulic oil tank cover	46.5±4.6	
	17	Installing fuel tank bottom cover	46.5±4.6	
	17	Installing lower frame grease bath cover	10.8±0.98	
M12	19	Installing engine	115±12	Applying Loctite #262
	19	Installing swivel joint	107.8±10.8	Applying Loctite #262
	19	Installing cab	80±8	
	19	Installing travel motor cover	83.4±8.4	Applying Loctite #262
M16	24	Floor plate rubber mount mounting nut	191±19	
	24	Installing cab nut	191±19	
M18	32	Installing lower roller	731±74	Applying Loctite #262
	27	Installing engine	225.6±22.6	Applying Loctite #271
M20	30	Installing hydraulic oil tank	370±37	Applying Loctite #262
	30	Installing upper roller	539±54	Applying Loctite #262
	17	Installing power take-off coupling	200 to 220	
	17	Installing power take-off coupling	440 to 490	
	17	Installing main pump	431±43.1	Applying Loctite #262
	30	Installing sprocket	539±54	Applying Loctite #262
	17	Front idler idler adjuster connection	540±54	Applying Loctite #262
M22	32	Installing shoe bolts	1.18 kNm	

[4. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE]

Size (M)	Width across Flats mm	Position of bolts/nuts	Tightening torque N·m (Without Lubrication)	Recommended thread locking agent
M24	35	Installing swing bearing (outer race)	932±93	Applying Loctite #262
	36	Installing swing bearing (inner race)	932±93	Applying Loctite #262
	36	Installing swing reduction unit	932±93	Applying Loctite #262
	36	Installing travel motor	932±93	Applying Loctite #262
	36	Installing fuel tank	500±50	Applying Loctite #262
M36	55	Installing counterweight	3.13±0.31 kNm	Applying Loctite #262
5/8-18UNF	19	Installing idler adjuster grease nipple	58.8±9.8	

CAUTION

The counterweight mounting bolts may become loose when the counterweight is hit against some solid obstacles during swing operation etc.

Check that the mounting bolts are tightened to the specified torque using a torque wrench.

When loosened, tighten the bolt to the specified torque.

4.9 TIGHTENING TORQUES FOR BOLTS & NUTS

For tightening and retightening of bolts which are not specified in the table "TIGHTENING TORQUES FOR BOLTS & NUTS (SPECIFIC POSITIONS)", see the following table.

METRIC COARSE THREAD (NOT PLATED)

Torque value Unit : N•m {lbf•ft}

Classification		4.8T		7T		10.9T	
Nominal size		No lubrication	Oil lubrication	No lubrication	Oil lubrication	No lubrication	Oil lubrication
M6	P=1	4.4±0.5 {3.2±0.4}	3.7±0.4 {2.7±0.3}	9.6±1.0 {7.1±0.7}	8.1±0.8 {6.0±0.6}	17.4±1.8 {12.8±1.3}	14.7±1.5 {10.8±1.1}
M8	P=1.25	10.7±1.1 {7.9±0.8}	9.0±0.9 {6.6±0.7}	23.5±2.0 {17.3±1.5}	19.6±2.0 {14.5±1.5}	42.2±3.9 {31.1±2.9}	35.3±3.9 {26.0±2.9}
M10	P=1.5	21.6±2.0 {15.9±1.4}	17.9±1.8 {13.2±1.3}	46.1±4.9 {34.0±3.6}	39.2±3.9 {28.9±2.9}	83.4±8.8 {61.5±6.5}	70.6±6.9 {52.1±5.1}
M12	P=1.75	36.3±3.9 {26.8±2.9}	31.4±2.9 {23.2±2.1}	79.4±7.8 {58.6±5.8}	66.7±6.9 {49.2±5.1}	143±15 {105±11}	121±12 {89.2±8.9}
M14	P=2	57.9±5.9 {42.7±4.4}	49.0±4.9 {36.1±3.6}	126±13 {92.9±9.6}	106±10 {78.2±7.4}	226±20 {167±15}	191±19 {141±14}
M16	P=2	88.3±8.8 {65.1±6.5}	74.5±6.9 {55.0±5.1}	191±20 {141±15}	161±16 {119±12}	343±39 {253±29}	284±29 {209±21}
M18	P=2.5	122±12 {90.0±8.9}	103±10 {75.8±7.2}	265±29 {195±21}	226±20 {167±15}	481±49 {355±36}	402±39 {297±29}
M20	P=2.5	172±17 {127±13}	144±14 {106±10}	373±39 {275±29}	314±29 {232±21}	667±69 {492±51}	559±59 {412±44}
M22	P=2.5	226±20 {167±15}	192±20 {142±15}	500±49 {369±36}	422±39 {311±29}	902±88 {665±65}	755±78 {557±58}
M24	P=3	294±29 {217±21}	235±29 {173±21}	637±69 {470±51}	520±49 {383±36}	1160±118 {856±87}	941±98 {694±72}
M27	P=3	431±39 {318±29}	353±39 {260±29}	941±98 {694±72}	765±78 {564±58}	1700±167 {1250±123}	1370±137 {1010±101}
M30	P=3.5	588±59 {434±44}	490±49 {361±36}	1285±127 {948±94}	1079±108 {796±80}	2300±235 {1700±173}	1940±196 {1430±145}
M33	P=3.5	794±78 {586±58}	667±69 {492±51}	1726±177 {1270±131}	1451±147 {1070±108}	3110±314 {2290±232}	2610±265 {1930±195}
M36	P=4	1030±98 {760±72}	863±88 {637±65}	2226±226 {1640±167}	1863±186 {1370±137}	4010±402 {2960±297}	3360±333 {2480±246}

[4. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE]

METRIC FINE THREAD (NOT PLATED)

Torque value Unit : N•m {lbf•ft}

Classification		4.8T		7T		10.9T	
Nominal size		No lubrication	Oil lubrication	No lubrication	Oil lubrication	No lubrication	Oil lubrication
M8	P=1.0	11.3±1.1 {8.3±0.8}	9.5±1.0 {7.0±0.7}	24.5±2.0 {18.1±1.5}	20.6±2.0 {15.2±1.5}	44.1±3.9 {32.5±2.9}	37.3±3.9 {27.5±2.9}
M10	P=1.25	22.6±2.0 {16.7±1.5}	18.7±1.9 {13.8±1.4}	48.1±4.9 {35.5±3.6}	41.2±3.9 {30.3±2.9}	87.3±8.8 {64.4±6.5}	73.5±6.9 {54.2±5.1}
M12	P=1.25	39.2±3.9 {28.9±2.9}	33.3±2.9 {24.6±2.1}	85.3±8.8 {62.9±6.5}	71.6±6.9 {52.8±5.1}	154±16 {114±12}	129±13 {95.2±9.6}
M16	P=1.5	92.2±8.8 {68.0±6.5}	77.5±7.8 {57.2±5.8}	196±20 {145±15}	169±17 {125±13}	363±39 {268±29}	304±29 {224±21}
M20	P=1.5	186±19 {137±14}	155±16 {114±12}	402±39 {297±29}	333±29 {246±21}	726±69 {535±51}	608±59 {448±44}
M24	P=2	314±29 {232±21}	265±29 {195±21}	686±69 {506±51}	569±59 {420±44}	1240±118 {915±87}	1030±98 {760±72}
M30	P=2	637±59 {470±44}	530±49 {391±36}	1390±137 {1030±101}	1157±118 {853±87}	2500±255 {1840±188}	2080±206 {1530±152}
M33	P=2	853±88 {629±65}	706±70 {521±52}	1860±186 {1370±137}	1550±155 {1140±114}	3350±334 {2470±246}	2790±275 {2060±203}
M36	P=3	1070±108 {789±80}	892±88 {658±65}	2330±226 {1720±167}	1940±196 {1430±145}	4200±422 {3100±311}	3500±353 {2580±260}

4.10 TIGHTENING TORQUES FOR JOINTS & HYDRAULIC HOSES

IMPORTANT

These tightening torques are available in the case of tightening without lubricant.

ORS FITTING (O-RING SEAL TYPE)

Hose Mouth and Fitting Size	Wrench (mm)	Tightening torque N · m {lbt · ft}
1 to 14 UNS	30	137 ± 14 {101 ± 10}
	32	
1 to 3/16 to 12 UN	36	177 ± 18 {130 ± 13}
	41	206 ± 21 {152 ± 15}
1 to 7/16 to 12 UN	41	206 ± 21 {152 ± 15}
	46	

BYTE TYPE TUBE FITTING

Tube size O.D. x Thickness (mm)	Wrench (mm)	Tightening torque N · m {lbt · ft}
10 * 1.5	19	49 ± 9.8 {36 ± 7}
15 * 2.0	27	118 ± 12 {87 ± 9}
18 * 2.5	32	147 ± 15 {108 ± 18}
22 * 3.0	36	216 ± 22 {159 ± 16}
28 * 4.0	41	275 ± 27 {202 ± 20}
35 * 5.0	55	441 ± 44 {325 ± 33}

O-RING FITTING

Screw diameter (PF)	Wrench (mm)	Tightening torque N · m {lbt · ft}
1/8	14	17 ± 2 {12.5 ± 1.5}
1/4	19	36 ± 2 {27 ± 1.5}
3/8	22	74 ± 5 {54 ± 4}
1/2	27	108 ± 9.8 {80 ± 7}
3/4	36	162 ± 9.8 {119 ± 7}
1	41	255 ± 9.8 {188 ± 7}
1 to 1/4	50	392 ± 40 {289 ± 30}
1 to 1/2	55	485 ± 49 {358 ± 36}

[4. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE]

HYDRAULIC HOSE

Screw diameter (PF)	Wrench (mm)	Tightening torque N·m {lbt·ft}
1/8	17	15 ± 2.0 {11 ± 1.5}
1/4	19	29 ± 4.9 {22 ± 4}
3/8	22	49 ± 4.9 {36 ± 4}
1/2	27	78 ± 4.9 {58 ± 4}
3/4	36	118 ± 9.8 {87 ± 7}
1	41	137 ± 15 {101 ± 11}
1 to 1/4	50	167 ± 15 {123 ± 11}

SPLIT FLANGE

Nominal Size	Tightening torque N·m {lbt·ft}			
	Working pressure 20.6 Mpa {210 kg/cm ² }	Bolt size (M)	Working pressure 41.2 Mpa {420 kg/cm ² }	Bolt size (M)
3/4	33.9 ± 5.6	10	39.5 ± 5.6	10
	{25 ± 4.1}		{29 ± 4.1}	
1	42.4 ± 5.6	10	62.2 ± 5.6	12
	{31 ± 4.1}		{46 ± 4.1}	
1 to 1/4	55.1 ± 7.1	10	93.3 ± 8.4	14
	{41 ± 5.2}		{69 ± 6.2}	
1 to 1/2	70.6 ± 8.4	12	169 ± 11	16
	{52 ± 6.2}		{125 ± 8.1}	
2	81.9 ± 8.4	12	282 ± 11	20
	{60 ± 6.2}		{208 ± 8.1}	

IMPORTANT


The tightening torques of the split flange are available in the case of tightening without lubricant.

4.11 INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE CHART

The following charts show the recommended interval or the hour meter reading for each device for greasing, element replacement, and inspection and maintenance items.

Perform inspection and maintenance according to the calendar time or operation time shown by the hour meter, whichever comes first.

Symbols in the Table

 Indicates a required periodic inspection or maintenance with the hour meter interval.

⊙ Indicates a first one time maintenance interval.

○ Indicates a inspection or maintenance interval.

ENGINE

Item/Interval		Irregular	Start-Up Inspection	8H	50H	Every 1 Month or 100H	Every 3 Months or 250H	Every 6 Months or 500H	Every 12 Months or 1,000H	2,000H	5,000H	Grease (Replacement Part)	Procedure Description Section
Engine oil	Checking oil level		○									Engine oil	3.2.2
	Replacement			⊙ (First time)				○					4.17.1
Replacing oil filter				⊙ (First time)				○				Cartridge	4.17.1
Fuel pre-filter	Draining		○									Cartridge	3.2.4
	Replacement							○					4.17.2
Fuel filter	Replacement							○				Cartridge	4.17.3
Air separator filter										○ (2 years)		Element	4.19.8
DPF (body)	*Inspection								○				4.3.5
	*Cleaning, replacement										○ (4,500H)		4.3.5
DPF (hoses for sensor, mount for sensor)	*Inspection								○				4.3.5
	*Replacement									○ (2 years)			4.3.5
Checking air cleaner inlet			○										3.2.12
Air cleaner element	Inspection, cleaning						○					Outer element (Inner element is not cleaned)	4.16.4
	Replacement								○			Outer and inner elements	
Cleaning radiator coolant and cooling system			○										3.2.1
Cleaning radiator hoses for cracking and damage	Checking water level		○										
	Replacement, cleaning									○ (Or every 2 years)		LCC	4.19.1
Checking radiator hoses for cracking and damage							○						4.16.2
Cleaning radiator, oil cooler core, intercooler and filters		○											4.12.1
Fan belt and air conditioner belt	Inspection		○										3.2.6
	Adjustment			⊙ (First time)			○						4.16.1
Cleaning or replacing radiator cap / reserve tank cap	Cleaning						○						4.16.5
	Replacement								○				
Checking engine mounting bracket for tightening condition									○				4.18.3
Checking intake system rubber hose						○ (120H)							4.15.3

[4. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE]

Item/Interval	Irregular	Start-Up Inspection	8H	50H	Every 1 Month or 100H	Every 3 Months or 250H	Every 6 Months or 500H	Every 12 Months or 1,000H	2,000H	5,000H	Grease (Replacement Part)	Procedure Description Section
*Checking and adjusting valve clearance							○					—
*Checking and adjusting compression pressure								○				—
*Checking intake and exhaust manifolds for tightening condition			⊙ (First time)					○				—
*Checking oil pan and other auxiliary devices for tightening condition			⊙ (First time)					○				—
*Checking each tightening part of turbo charger			⊙ (First time)	○ (120H)								—
*Checking turbo charger rotor and impeller for rotation condition						○						—
*Checking play of turbo charger rotor							○					—
*Checking lubricating system of turbo charger for leakage		○						○				—
*Checking and cleaning starter brush and commutator								○				—
*Checking oil pan for mixing of water and fuel					○							—
*Checking fan mounting bolt for tightening condition			○									—
*Checking thermostat function								○				—
*Checking starter function							○					—
*Checking startability, exhaust color, and abnormal sound		○										—
*Checking heater plug and intake air heater (starting auxiliary device)							○					—
*Checking alternator function								○				—
*Checking pipe joints for tightening condition				⊙ (First time)				○				—
*Checking exhaust pipe and muffler for looseness of mounting part and damages				⊙ (First time)				○				—
*Checking and cleaning alternator brush (when brush is equipped)								○				—
Checking each part for oil and fuel leakage		○										3.1
Checking each part for water leakage		○										3.1
Checking electrical system		○										—

Notice

Contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer for inspection and adjustment of the items marked with *.

FUEL SYSTEM

Item/Interval		Irregular	Start-Up Inspection 8H	50H	Every 1 Month or 100H	Every 3 Months or 250H	Every 6 Months or 500H	Every 12 Months or 1,000H	2,000H	5,000H	Grease (Replacement Part)	Procedure Description Section
Fuel tank	Checking oil level		○									3.2.3
	Draining water and sediment			○								4.14.2
	Cleaning cap and strainer						○					4.17.6
Bleeding air from fuel piping		○										4.12.4

SCR SYSTEM

Item/Interval		Irregular	Start-Up Inspection 8H	50H	Every 1 Month or 100H	Every 3 Months or 250H	Every 6 Months or 500H	Every 12 Months or 1,000H	2,000H	5,000H	Grease (Replacement Part)	Procedure Description Section
DEF/AdBlue tank	Checking fluid level		○									3.2.7
	Inspection					○						4.16.6
DEF/AdBlue piping	Inspection					○						4.16.6
DEF/AdBlue supply module	Inspection					○						4.16.6
*DEF/AdBlue supply module filter	Replacement									(3 years or 4500 H)		4.20.2
*DEF/AdBlue dosing module	Inspection					○						4.16.6
*SCR (insulation material)	Replacement									○ (4,500)	Gasket	4.20.2
*SCR system cooling water piping	Inspection					○						4.16.6
*Harness around SCR	Inspection					○						4.16.6

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

Item/Interval		Irregular	Start-Up Inspection 8H	50H	Every 1 Month or 100H	Every 3 Months or 250H	Every 6 Months or 500H	Every 12 Months or 1,000H	2,000H	5,000H	Grease (Replacement Part)	Procedure Description Section
Hydraulic oil tank	Checking oil level		○									3.2.5
	Replacement							○ (Breaker)		○	Hydraulic oil	4.20.1
	Suction strainer								○		Strainer	4.19.4
	Replacing return filter			◎ (First time)		○ (Breaker)		○			Element	4.18.1
	Replacing air breather element							○			Element	4.18.2
	Checking hydraulic components, pipes and hoses for oil leakage and damage		○									3.1
Cleaning pilot line filter									○			4.19.7

[4. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE]

UPPER FRAME

Item/Interval		Irregular	Start-Up Inspection	8H	50H	Every 1 Month or 100H	Every 3 Months or 250H	Every 6 Months or 500H	Every 12 Months or 1,000H	2,000H	5,000H	Grease (Replacement Part)	Procedure Description Section
Swing reduction unit oil	Checking oil level					○ (120H)						Gear oil SAE #90 GL-4	4.15.1
	Replacement							⊙ (First time)		○			4.19.2
Greasing to swing bearing								○				EPG lithium added extreme-pressure grease	4.17.4
Checking grease of swing grease bath										○		EPG lithium added extreme-pressure grease	4.19.6
Swing brake function			○										—
Greasing to control lever push rod and universal joint part								○				EPG lithium added extreme-pressure grease	4.17.7
Installing swing bearing Checking bolt for looseness								○					4.17.5
Installing counterweight Checking bolt for looseness					⊙ (First time)		○						4.8
Greasing swing reduction unit										○			4.19.5
Checking body structure			○										3.1

LOWER FRAME

Item/Interval		Irregular	Start-Up Inspection	8H	50H	Every 1 Month or 100H	Every 3 Months or 250H	Every 6 Months or 500H	Every 12 Months or 1,000H	2,000H	5,000H	Grease (Replacement Part)	Procedure Description Section
Travel reduction unit oil	Checking oil level					○ (120H)						Gear oil SAE #90 GL-4	4.15.2
	Replacement							⊙ (First time)		○			4.19.3
Adjusting tension of crawler					○								4.14.3
Checking upper roller and lower roller for oil leakage			○										3.1
Checking idler and travel reduction unit for oil leakage			○										3.1
Checking sprocket, idler, and roller for wear			○										3.1

ATTACHMENT

Item/Interval		Irregular	Start-Up Inspection 8H	50H	Every 1 Month or 100H	Every 3 Months or 250H	Every 6 Months or 500H	Every 12 Months or 1,000H	2,000H	5,000H	Grease (Replacement Part)	Procedure Description Section
Greasing attachment (around bucket)			○ (Until 50 H)			○					EPG lithium added extreme-pressure grease	4.13.1
Greasing attachment			○ (Until 50 H)			○ (250 H is only for new machine)	○					
Replacing bucket		○										—
Replacing tooth and side cutter		○										—
Checking attachment structure			○									3.1

ELECTRICITY

Item/Interval		Irregular	Start-Up Inspection 8H	50H	Every 1 Month or 100H	Every 3 Months or 250H	Every 6 Months or 500H	Every 12 Months or 1,000H	2,000H	5,000H	Grease (Replacement Part)	Procedure Description Section
Battery	Checking liquid level			○								4.14.1
	Measuring specific gravity			○								4.14.1
	Cleaning and grease application			○								4.14.1
	Measuring voltage							○				4.18.4
Electrical wiring			○									3.1
Check instruments, switches, and light warning devices for performance condition			○									3.2.10 3.2.11

OTHER DEVICES

Item/Interval		Irregular	Start-Up Inspection		Every 1 Month or 100H	Every 3 Months or 250H	Every 6 Months or 500H	Every 12 Months or 1,000H	2,000H	5,000H	Grease (Replacement Part)	Procedure Description Section
Air conditioner	Checking refrigerant volume						○					4.17.8
	Checking and cleaning condenser		○									4.12.1
	Filter	Cleaning				○						4.16.3
		Replacement		After about 10 times of cleaning								
Checking wiper blades		○										4.12.2
Checking washer fluid		○										4.12.3
Checking external appearance of machine for deformation and damages			○									3.1
Checking bolts and nuts for looseness and coming off			○									3.1
Seatbelt	Inspection		○									2.11
	Replacement									○ (3 years)		

4.12 MAINTENANCE WHEN REQUIRED

Thoroughly read and understand "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" of this manual before operating, inspecting or maintaining the machine.

4.12.1 CLEANING RADIATOR, OIL COOLER CORE AND SCREEN



WARNING

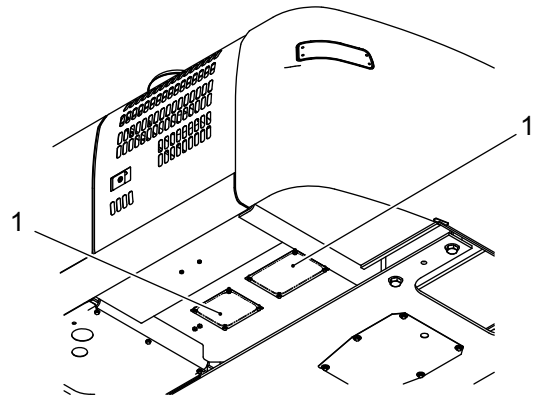
PRECAUTIONS FOR HANDLING

Direct strike of compressed air, steam or high pressure water to your body can cause personal injury. Wear protective glasses, goggles, mask, and protective shoes, etc.

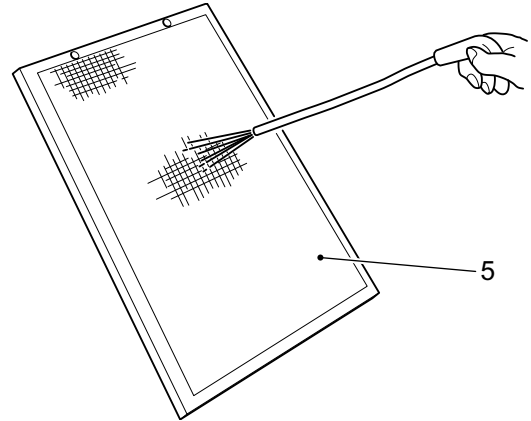
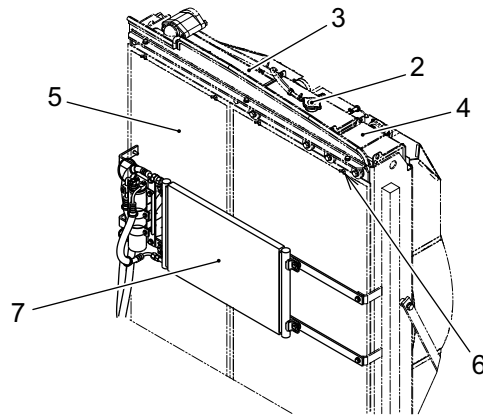
Notice

When using compressed air or high pressure water, keep a safe distance from the fin to prevent it from being damaged. If the fin is damaged, it may cause water leakage or overheating.

1. Use the starter key to open the engine hood and the side door at the left side of the machine and hold them with the stays.
2. Remove cover (1) under the radiator.

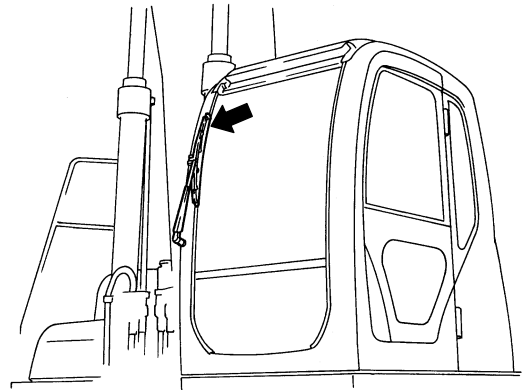


3. Loosen wing bolt (6) on the radiator at the front of the oil cooler and the radiator and pull screen (5) out.
4. Clean screen (5) with compressed air (0.2 MPa or less) or soft clean water.
5. Check radiator (2), oil cooler (3), intercooler (4), and condenser (7) for mud, dust, or leaves and if any of them are adhered, clean them.
6. Insert screen (5) into the original position, and install it with wing bolt (6).
7. Attach cover (1) under the radiator.
8. Remove the support stays and close the side door and engine hood.



4.12.2 CHECKING AND REPLACING WIPER BLADES

- Check the wiper blades and replace them if there is wear or damage.

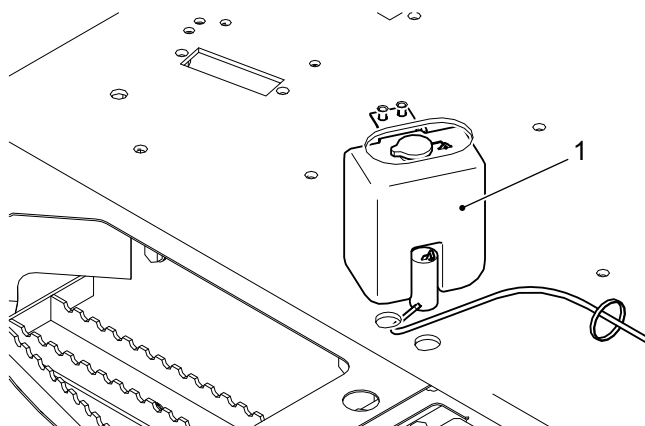


4.12.3 WASHER FLUID INSPECTION

Notice

If the washer is used when the washer tank is empty, the motor attached to the washer tank may be damaged.

1. Remove the floor mat.
2. Inspect the fluid level of washer tank (1).
3. If the washer fluid level is low, remove the cap, and add washer fluid for automobiles.
4. Put the floor mat back to its original position.



4.12.4 BLEEDING AIR FROM FUEL PIPING

After replacing the element of fuel filter or running out of fuel, air enters the fuel piping and the engine cannot be started.

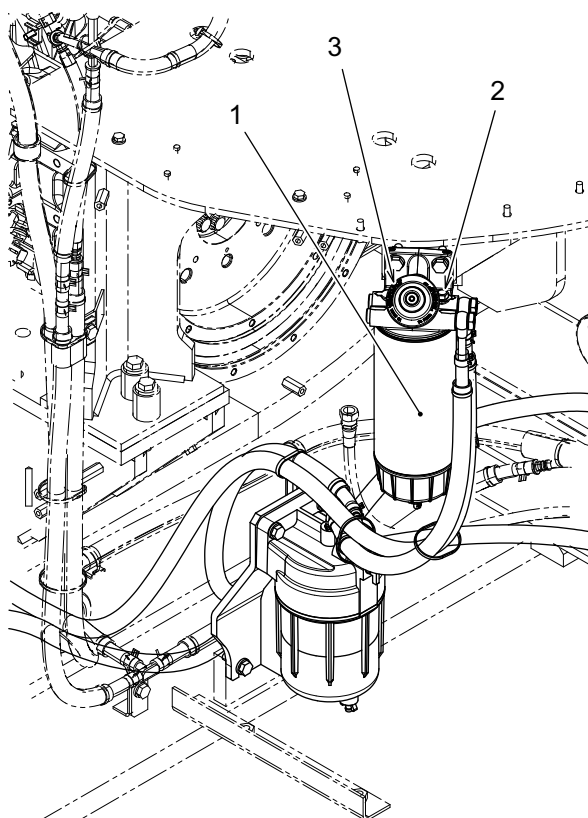
Use the following procedures to bleed air.



ABOUT BLEEDING AIR FROM FUEL PIPING

- Wipe off spilled fuel completely to prevent a fire.
- After the operation, make sure that fuel does not leak.

1. Place a container for fuel under fuel filter (1).
2. Clean the area around air bleeder plug (2) and loosen the air bleeder plug.
3. Push priming pump (3) repeatedly.
Wipe off the fuel coming out of the air bleeder plug with a waste cloth.
4. When fuel without bubbles comes out of the air bleeder plug, tighten the air bleeder plug.
Tightening torque: $2 \pm 0.2 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$ ($1.5 \pm 0.1 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$)
5. After tightening the plug, push the priming pump for 20 times or more again.
6. After the air bleeding is completed, wipe off the spilled fuel.
7. Start the engine and make sure that there is no fuel leakage.



4.12.5 RELEASING INTERNAL PRESSURE IN HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

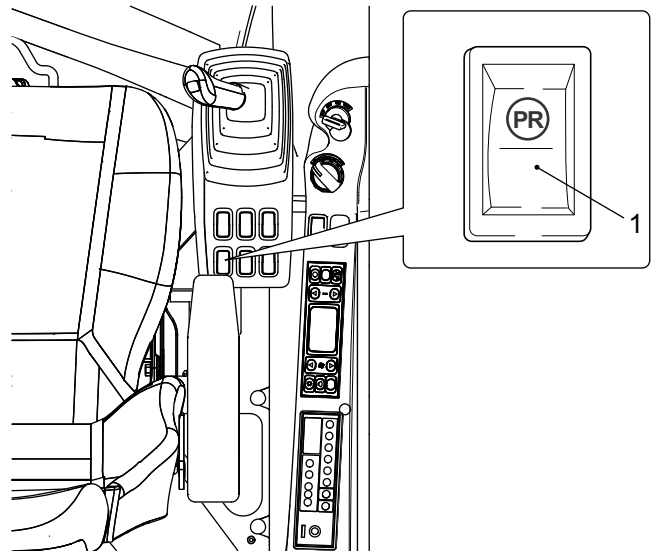
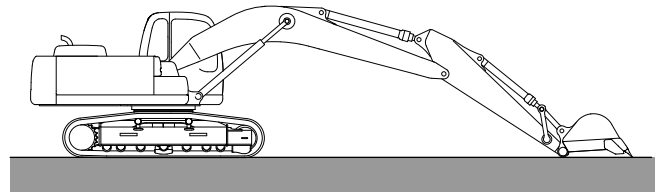
Before replacing the front attachment and the hydraulic pipes, release the internal pressure of the hydraulic system. Release the internal pressure of the hydraulic system following the procedures below.



RELEASING INTERNAL PRESSURE IN HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

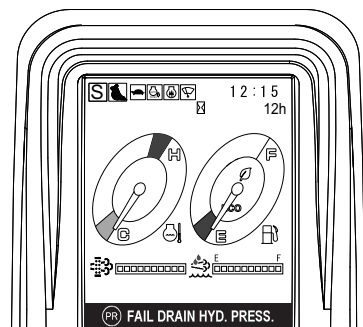
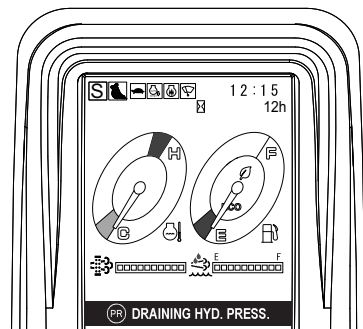
Immediately after operation, each part is hot and it may cause burns. Start operation after the temperature goes down.

1. Move the machine to a level and firm place.
2. Retract the arm cylinder and bucket cylinder, and place the bucket on the ground.
3. Start the engine.
4. Press and hold pressure release switch (1) for 5 to 10 seconds. Then release pressure release switch (1) for 1 to 5 seconds, and press and hold pressure release switch, again for 5 to 10 seconds.
"DRAINING HYD. PRESS" appears on the multi-display and the engine speed becomes a low speed.
5. The buzzer sounds intermittently.
(To stop the buzzer, press the buzzer stop switch).
6. Move the attachment control lever in this state to release the pressure.
Be careful that the attachment may move to some extent due to its own weight.
7. Set the starter key to the "OFF" position to stop the engine and to finish the internal pressure release operation.



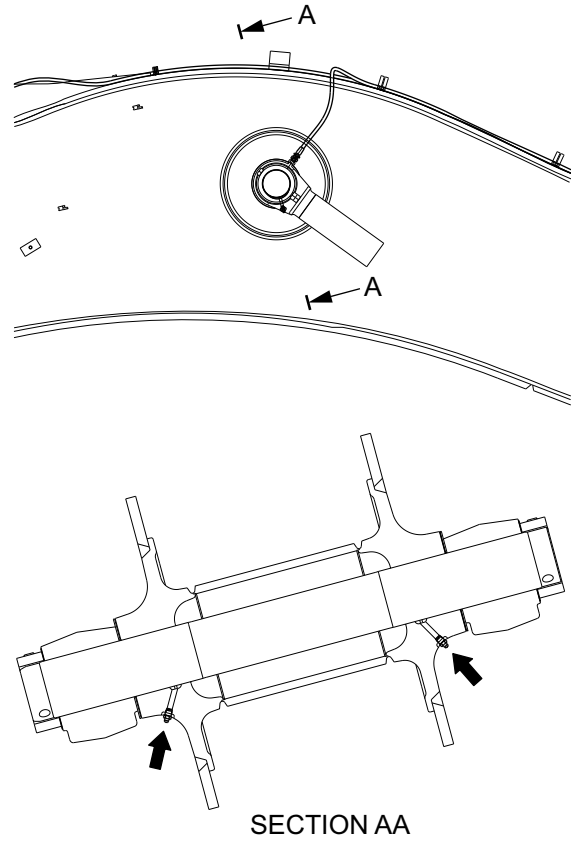
4

8. When the internal pressure release is failed, "FAIL DRAIN HYD. PRESS" is displayed on the multi-display, and the buzzer sounds continuously. Perform Step 4 to 7, again.



4.12.6 GREASING ATTACHMENT/EQUIPMENT

When greasing the boom side bosses located at the boom cylinder rod installation part, grease two grease nipples shown in the figure.

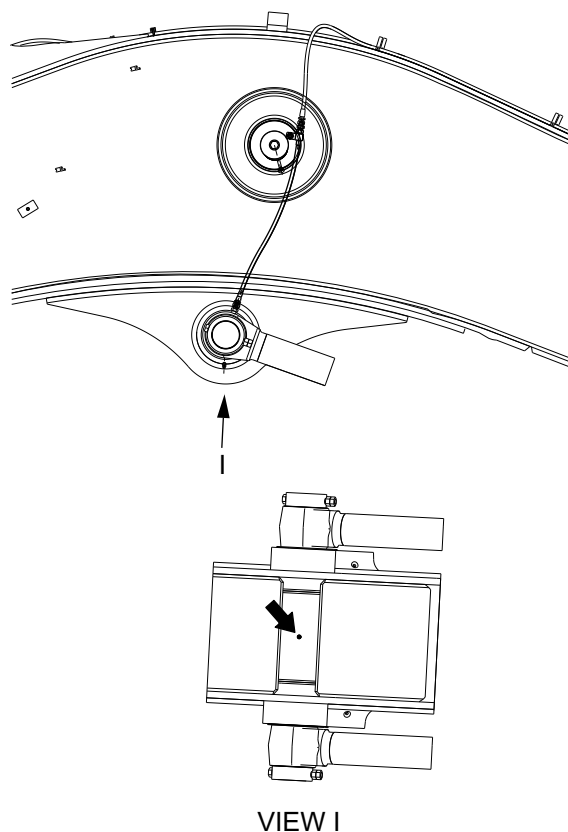


Notice

Some machine specifications do not have the grease nipples for greasing.

4.12.7 GREASING ATTACHMENT/EQUIPMENT (2 POSITION BOOM)

When greasing the bosses at the boom lower side located at the boom cylinder rod installation part, grease one grease nipple shown in the figure.

**Notice**

Some machine specifications do not have the grease nipples for greasing.

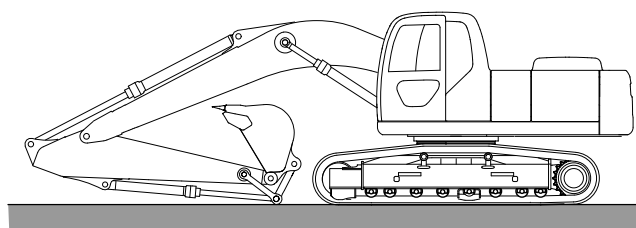
4.13 8 HOUR (DAILY) INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

Thoroughly read and understand "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" of this manual before performing the inspection and maintenance.

See "EVERYDAY CHECK-UP", "CHECK BEFORE STARTING ENGINE" and "CHECK AFTER STARTING ENGINE" to perform a daily pre-operation inspection and maintenance (before operation and immediately after starting operation).

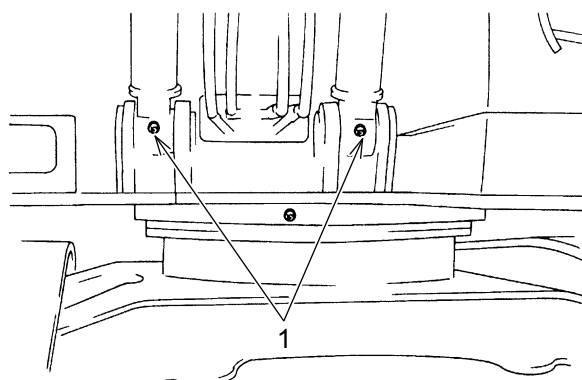
4.13.1 GREASING ATTACHMENT

Before applying grease, set the machine in the grease application position as shown in the figure, clean all grease nipples, and then apply grease until the grease comes out through the gap between the pin and the hole. The grease gun is located inside the cover on the right front of the machine.

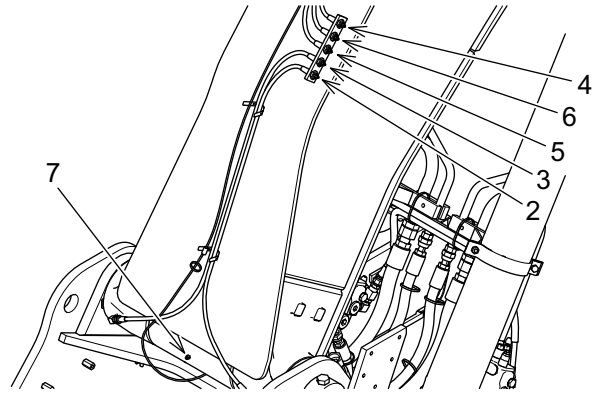


Notice

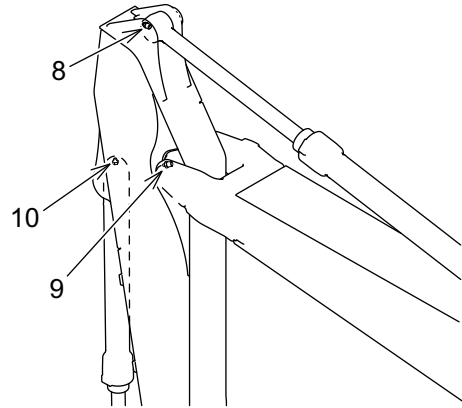
- Grease greasing points (1) to (14) every 8 hours during the first 50 hours of operation by a new machine. Also, grease them when 250 hours and 500 hours of operation by the new machine has been reached respectively. After that, grease them every 500 hours or every 6 months, whichever comes first. Also, regarding the pins around the bucket, grease them every 250 hours.
 - For digging work in the water, grease the submerged parts before and after the work every day.
 - After heavy duty work with a special attachment such as a nibbler (crusher) or a breaker, grease the machine every day.
 - Grease the machine before the work if it has not been used for one month or longer.
-
- Grease grease nipples (1) on the right and left boom cylinder heads.



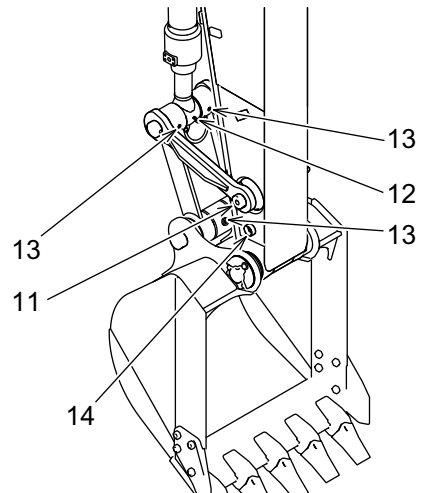
- Among the grease nipples in 5 locations near the boom foot, grease the boom foot pin from (2) and (3), the boom cylinder rod from (4) and (5), and the arm cylinder head from (6). Also, grease grease nipple (7) in the center of boom foot.



- Grease grease nipple (8) on the arm cylinder rod, grease nipple (9) in the connecting part between the boom and the arm, and grease nipple (10) on the bucket cylinder head.



- Grease grease nipple (11) on the link pin, grease nipple (12) on the bucket cylinder rod, three grease nipples (13) on the bucket link, and grease nipple (14) on the left side of the arm end.



4.14 50 HOUR INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

Thoroughly read and understand "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" of this manual before performing the inspection and maintenance.

Perform this section together with "8 HOUR (DAILY) INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES" in Chapter 4.

4.14.1 INSPECTING AND MAINTAINING BATTERY



INSPECTING AND MAINTAINING BATTERY

- Wear protective glasses, long-sleeve shirt and gloves when handling the batteries.
 - Do not bring a fire near the battery because the combustible hydrogen gas generated by the battery can cause explosion.
 - If the dilute sulfuric acid in the battery splashes onto your skin or into your eyes, it will cause burns or blindness. At such case, immediately wash the skin or eyes with sufficient clean water, and ask a special doctor to treat it as soon as possible.
 - Before performing inspection and maintenance on the batteries, be sure to stop the engine.
 - Confirm that the battery power-off switch is set to the OFF position to cut off the current.
 - When removing the battery terminal, be sure to remove the ground side (negative terminal) first and conversely, when attaching the battery terminal, attach the ground side last.
 - Do not put tools and hardware on the protective cover on the battery upper section. It may cause a short circuit resulting in a fire or explosion.
-



Before turning the battery power-off switch to the "O (OFF)" position or removing the battery terminals, turn the starter switch to the OFF position, wait 5 minute or more.

If the battery power is turned off immediately after stopping the engine, it may cause damage to the exhaust gas cleaning device.

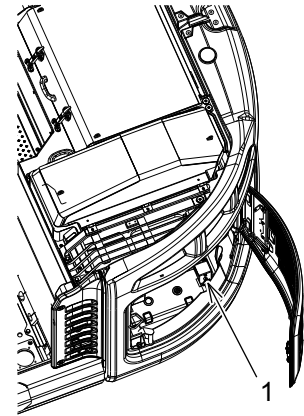
CHECKING BATTERY ELECTROLYTE LEVEL

Notice

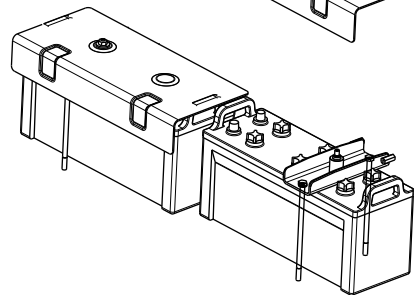
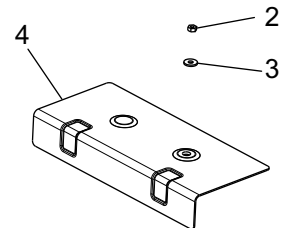
- Clean the battery terminals, and apply grease or commercial anti-rust lubricant spray.
 - Do not dispose of the batteries by yourself but always ask a professional service company to dispose of it.
 - If the batteries became old, do not attempt to use the old battery and a new battery together. The service life of the new battery may be shortened. When replacing the batteries, replace both at the same time.
-

1. Use the starter key to open the side door at the left side of the machine, and hold it with the stay.

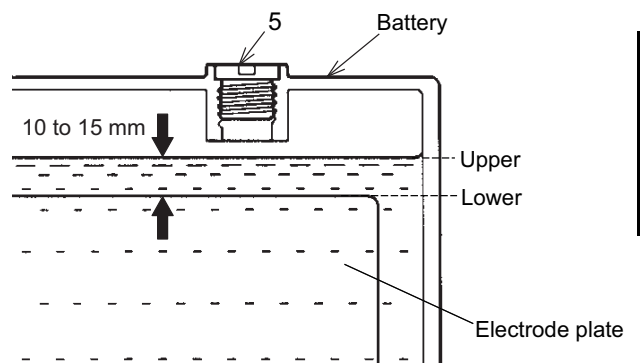
2. Turn the battery power-off switch OFF using key (1).



3. Remove nut (2) and washer (3) on the battery protection cover, and remove protection cover (4).



4. Remove cap (5), and if the level is below the specified level (10 to 15 mm above the electrode plate), supply distilled water to the specified level.
5. Clean the vent hole of the battery cap, and tighten cap (5) firmly.
6. Put battery cover (4) back to the original position.
7. Install battery cover (4) with nut (2) and washer (3).
8. Remove the support stay, and close the side door.



SPECIFIC GRAVITY OF BATTERY ELECTROLYTE

CAUTION

PRECAUTIONS IN COLD CLIMATES

- Be careful of retaining the temperature of the batteries. If the temperature is too low, they may freeze, and their electric capacity decrease significantly.
- Charge the batteries as soon as possible.

Notice

Measure the specific gravity of battery electrolyte after its temperature becomes almost the same as the outdoor temperature, instead of immediately after finishing operation.

- The specific gravity of the battery electrolyte varies according to the fluid temperature; therefore, retain the temperature within the range of use as shown in the following table. If the specific gravity is at the lower limit or below (small value), charging is necessary.

Specific Gravity of Battery Electrolyte

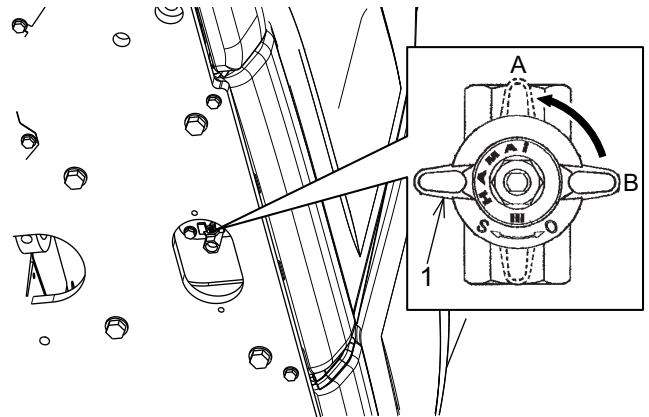
Charging rate	Battery electrolyte temperature		
	-20 degrees C (-4 degrees F)	0 degrees C (32 degrees F)	20 degrees C (68 degrees F)
100 %	1.31	1.29	1.28
90 %	1.29	1.28	1.26
80 %	1.28	1.26	1.25
75 %	1.27	1.25	1.24

4.14.2 DRAINING WATER AND SEDIMENT IN FUEL TANK


WARNING
HANDLING OF FUEL OIL

- Wipe off spilled fuel to prevent a fire.
- Make sure that there is no fuel leakage after performing work.

1. Move the machine to a level and firm place.
2. Swing the upper structure to a range in which drain cock (1) under the fuel tank can be released, and put the bucket on the ground.
3. Stop the engine, and set the pilot control shut-off lever to the "LOCKED" position.
4. Place a container for drain water and sediment under drain cock (1).
5. Insert your hand through the hole in the under cover and set drain cock (1) to "OPEN" position (A) to drain water and sediment deposited on the bottom. At this time, be careful not to be splashed by the drain fuel.
6. Set drain cock (1) to "CLOSED" position (B) when clean fuel comes out.



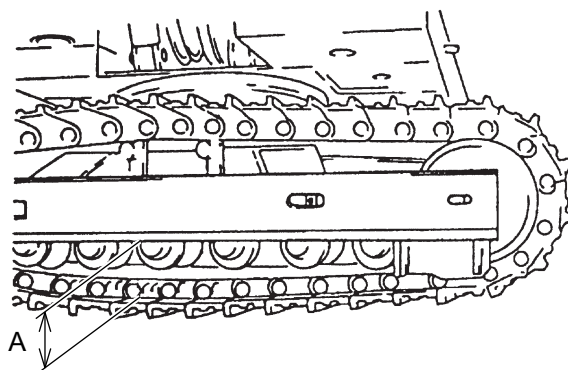
4.14.3 ADJUSTING CRAWLER TENSION

Notice

- Before inspecting and greasing the crawler, remove soil adhered to the crawler tracks completely by washing them.
- Crawler adjustment is necessary depending on the work condition at the working site. At a working site covered with many gravel and cobbles, loosen the crawler tension slightly, and on a firm ground, increase the tension slightly.

CHECKING CRAWLER TENSION

- Measure the upper part of the shoe and the lower part of the track frame, while raising one of the crawlers up, for which tension is to be measured. In this case, hold the raised machine with a stand securely.
A proper tension: 350 to 380 mm (13.8 to 15.0 inch)



CRAWLER TENSION ADJUSTMENT PROCEDURES

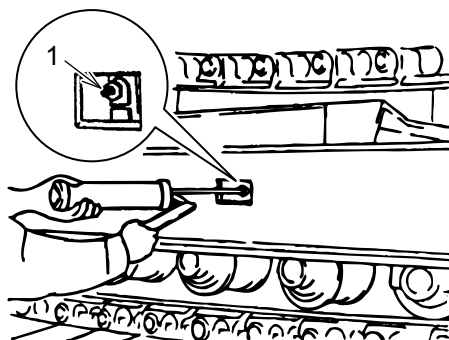


ABOUT CRAWLER FAILURE

When a crawler cannot be adjusted, the crawler has a failure.

A strong force is applied to the spring of track spring. Grease in the cylinder is under high pressure. If the travel system is adjusted or disassembled in a wrong way, it is very dangerous and could cause severe personal injury. Contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer for repair immediately.

1. Crawler tension is adjusted by applying grease to grease nipple (1) of the idler adjuster of lower frame with a grease gun.
2. In order to make the both tension of the left and right crawlers equal each other, travel the machine forward and backward to even out the pressure.
3. Check the amount of slack of the crawlers once again and readjust them as necessary.
4. Perform the same adjustment on another side crawler.



CRAWLER LOOSENING PROCEDURES



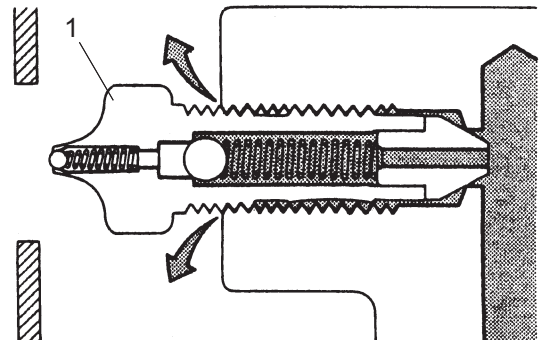
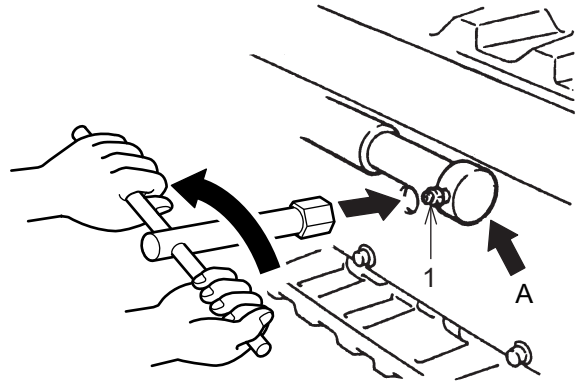
ABOUT HANDLING OF GREASE CYLINDER

Wear protective glasses.

Grease cylinder is under high pressure. If you loosen the grease nipple rapidly, high pressure grease will spout and may cause severe personal injury. Never position your body or face in front of the plug. Loosen the grease nipple gradually.

Do not loosen the grease nipple more than one turn because it can pop out due to the internal high pressure grease.

1. Loosen grease nipple (1) of the grease cylinder maximum one turn slowly to drain the grease. When the grease is not drained well, raise the crawler to be loosened and rotate the crawler slightly.
2. When the tension of crawler is adjusted properly, tighten grease nipple (1).
For the tightening torque, see "TIGHTENING TORQUES FOR BOLTS & NUTS (SPECIFIC POSITIONS)" in Chapter 4.



Details of A Section (Grease Discharge)

4.15 100 HOUR INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

Thoroughly read and understand "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" of this manual before performing the inspection and maintenance.

Perform this section together with "EVERYDAY CHECK-UP and 50 HOUR INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES".

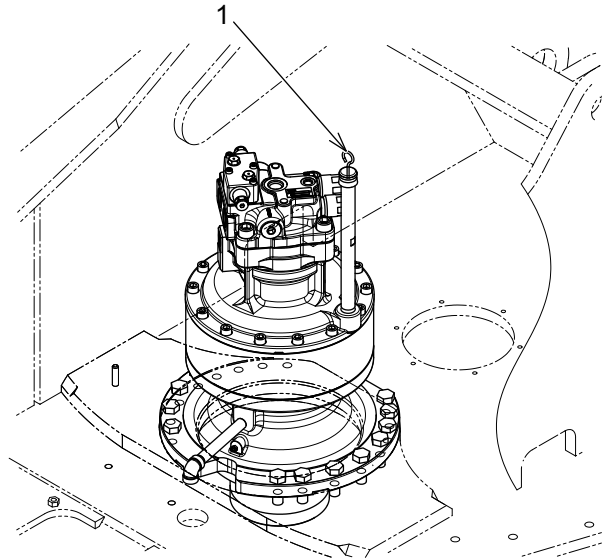
4.15.1 CHECKING OIL LEVEL OF SWING REDUCTION UNIT



ABOUT OIL TEMPERATURE IMMEDIATELY AFTER OPERATION

Immediately after operation, the oil is hot and it may cause burns. Start working after the temperature goes down.

1. Move the machine to a level and firm place.
2. Put the bucket on the ground.
3. Stop the engine and move the control lock lever to the "LOCKED" position.
4. Use level gauge (1) to check the level of gear oil.
When the level is within the specified range of the scale of level gauge (1), it is proper.
5. If the gear oil level is low, remove level gauge (1) and refill the specified gear oil from the filler port.
For the specified gear oil, see "LUBRICANT, FUEL & COOLANT SPECIFICATIONS" in Chapter 4.
6. Attach level gauge (1).



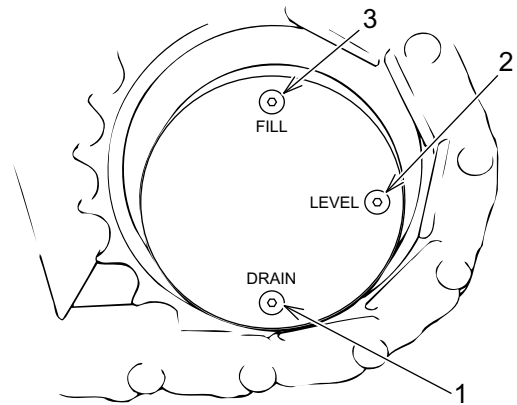
4.15.2 CHECKING OIL LEVEL OF TRAVEL REDUCTION UNIT



ABOUT CHECKING OIL LEVEL

- Wear protective glasses.
- Pressure may be generated inside the traveling devices. Slowly loosen the plug to release the internal pressure and then remove the plug. When the plug is loosened abruptly, the plug and oil may pop out and it is dangerous. Never position your body or face in front of the plug.
- Immediately after operation, the oil is hot and it may cause burns. Start working after the temperature goes down.

1. Move the machine to a level and firm place.
2. Stop the machine at a position in which drain plug (1) is positioned at the lower side and lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Stop the engine and move the pilot control shut-off lever to the "LOCKED" position.
4. Remove level plug (2) and check the level and contamination of the gear oil.
If the oil level is up to the neck of the level plug, it is proper.
5. If the gear oil level is low, remove level plug (2) and fill plug (3) and refill the specified gear oil.
For specified gear oil, see "LUBRICANT, FUEL & COOLANT SPECIFICATIONS" in Chapter 4.
6. Clean level plug (2) and fill plug (3) with light oil and install them.
7. Check the other travel reduction unit in the same procedure.



4.15.3 CHECKING INTAKE SYSTEM RUBBER HOSE

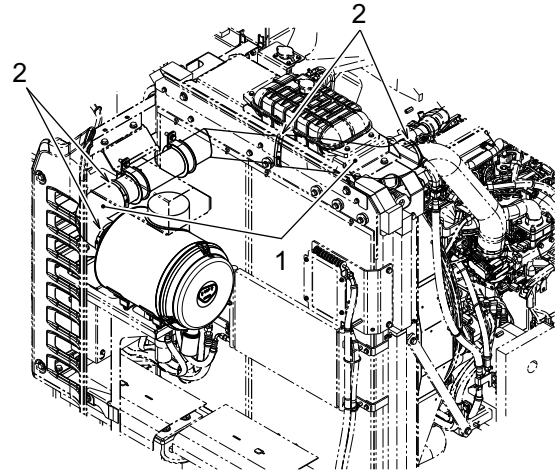


ABOUT HANDLING OF RUBBER HOSE

- Do not touch the hot parts. Contact with hot parts during operation or immediately after stopping operation may cause burns.
 - When replacing the rubber hoses, cover the inlet with a clean cloth to prevent dust from entering it.
-

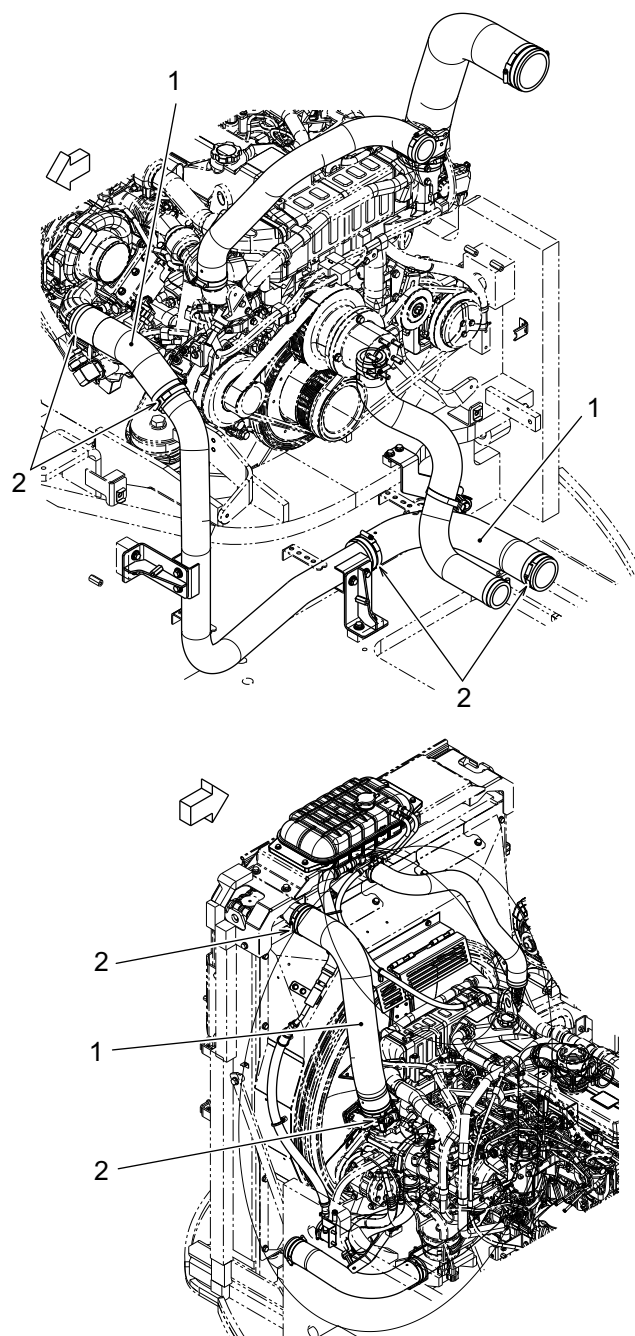
CHECKING RUBBER SUCTION HOSE FOR AIR CLEANER

1. Check that rubber hose (1) is not damaged or deteriorated and band (2) is not loose.
2. Rubber hose (1) which is damaged or deteriorated should be replaced with a new one together with band (2).



CHECKING RUBBER HOSE OF INTERCOOLER

1. Check that rubber hose (1) is not damaged or deteriorated and band (2) is not loose.
2. Rubber hose (1) which is damaged or deteriorated should be replaced with a new one together with band (2).



4.16 250 HOUR (3-MONTH) INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

Thoroughly read and understand "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" of this manual before performing the inspection and maintenance.

Perform this section together with "EVERYDAY CHECK-UP, and 50, and 120 HOUR INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES".

4.16.1 ADJUSTING FAN BELT AND AIR CONDITIONING COMPRESSOR BELT

CHECKING FAN BELT AND AIR CONDITIONING COMPRESSOR BELT



WARNING

INSPECTING AND MAINTAINING BELT

Be sure to stop the engine before inspection and maintenance of the engine.

Inspecting and maintaining the running engine may cause severe injury by being caught in the rotating parts, such as the fan and the belt.



CAUTION

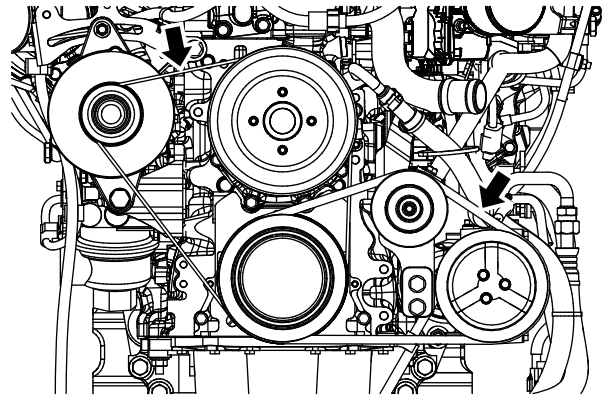
Replace the belt with a new one if cracking or breakage is found on the belt by the inspection, slip occurs excessively, or the belt cannot be adjusted to within the adjustment range. Keep the belt away from oils. The service life may be shortened if it slips by oil.

IMPORTANT

- When the belt is replaced by a new one, run engine at idle for 3 to 5 minutes and recheck and or adjust tension as necessary.
 - After running the engine for about 2 hours, a new belt obtains a complete initial elongation.
 - When replacing a set of two belts, be sure to replace both two with new ones.
-

The engine of this machine is equipped with the alternator, fan, and an air conditioning compressor belts. Check the belts for wear and damage, and also for tension, and adjust them properly in order to maintain the maximum engine performance and the service life.

- To check the belt tension, press on the center of the belt with your thumb. If the deflection falls within the range shown in the following table, it is normal.



Belt	New Belt Tension mm (inch)	At Inspection mm (inch)	Pushing Force N (lbf)
Fan alternator	3 to 5(0.12 to 0.20)	—	98(22)
Air conditioning compressor belt	2.5(0.10)	2.5(0.10)	New: 26 to 32(5.8 to 7.2) Inspection: 13 to 16(2.9 to 3.6)

[4. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE]

ADJUSTING ALTERNATOR AND FAN BELT



WARNING

INSPECTING AND MAINTAINING THE BELT

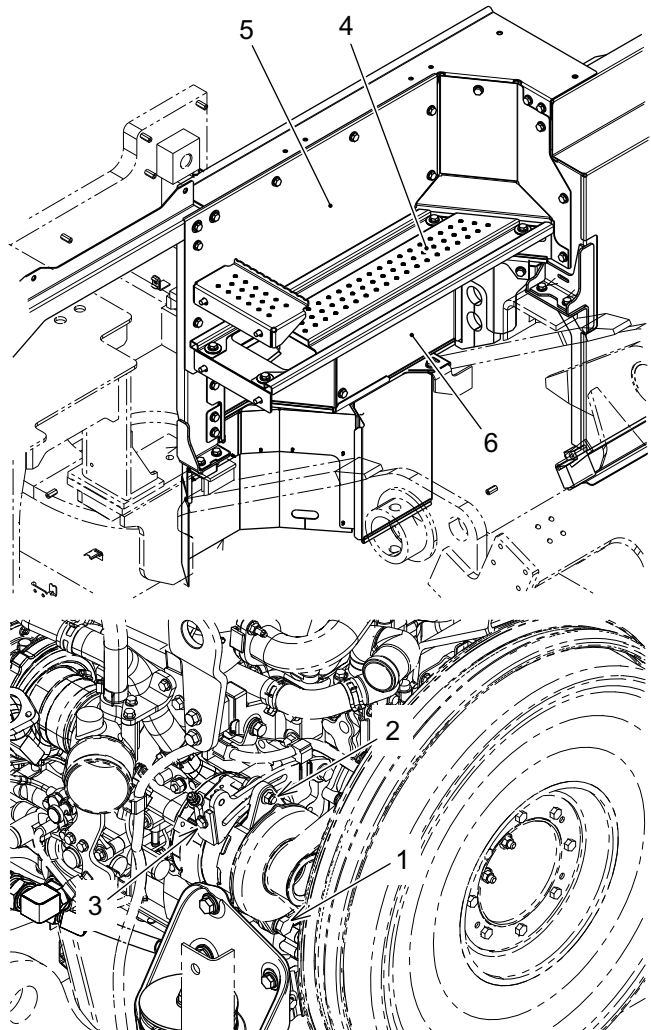
Be sure to stop the engine before inspection and maintenance of the engine.

Inspecting and maintaining the running engine may cause severe injury by being caught in the rotating parts, such as the fan and the belt.

IMPORTANT

An improperly installed belt may not only decrease the performance of compressor but also damage the belt and the compressor.

1. Open the engine hood with the starter key and hold it with the stay.
2. Remove the center step (4) and the engine room bulkhead (5), (6).
3. Loosen mounting bolt (1) and adjusting nut (2) slightly to adjust the tension of belt.
4. Loosen adjusting bolt (3), adjust the alternator and fan belt to the specified tension, and tighten mounting bolt (1) and adjusting nut (2).
Tightening torque
Mounting bolt (1): 51N·m(38lbf·ft)
Adjusting nut (2): 83N·m(61lbf·ft)
5. After adjustment, run the engine at low idle for about 5 minutes.
6. Stop the engine and check the fan belt tension.
7. Attach the center step (4) and the engine room bulkhead (5), (6).
8. Remove the support stay and close the engine hood.



ADJUSTING TENSION OF AIR CONDITIONING COMPRESSOR BELT



INSPECTING AND MAINTAINING THE BELT

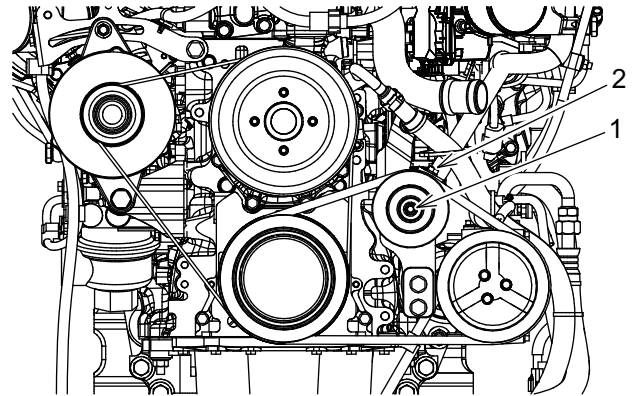
Be sure to stop the engine before inspection and maintenance of the engine.

Inspecting and maintaining the running engine may cause severe injury by being caught in the rotating parts, such as the fan and the belt.

Notice

An improperly installed belt may not only decrease the performance of compressor but also damage the belt and the compressor.

1. Open the engine hood with the starter key and hold it with the stay.
2. Loosen nut (1) of the idle pulley slightly, turn adjusting bolt (2) to adjust the belt and tighten nut (1).
Tightening torque
Nut (1): $46.5 \pm 4.6 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ ($34.3 \pm 3.4 \text{ lbf}\cdot\text{ft}$)
3. After adjustment, run the engine at low idle for about 5 minutes and then check the belt tension again.
4. Remove the support stay and close the engine hood.

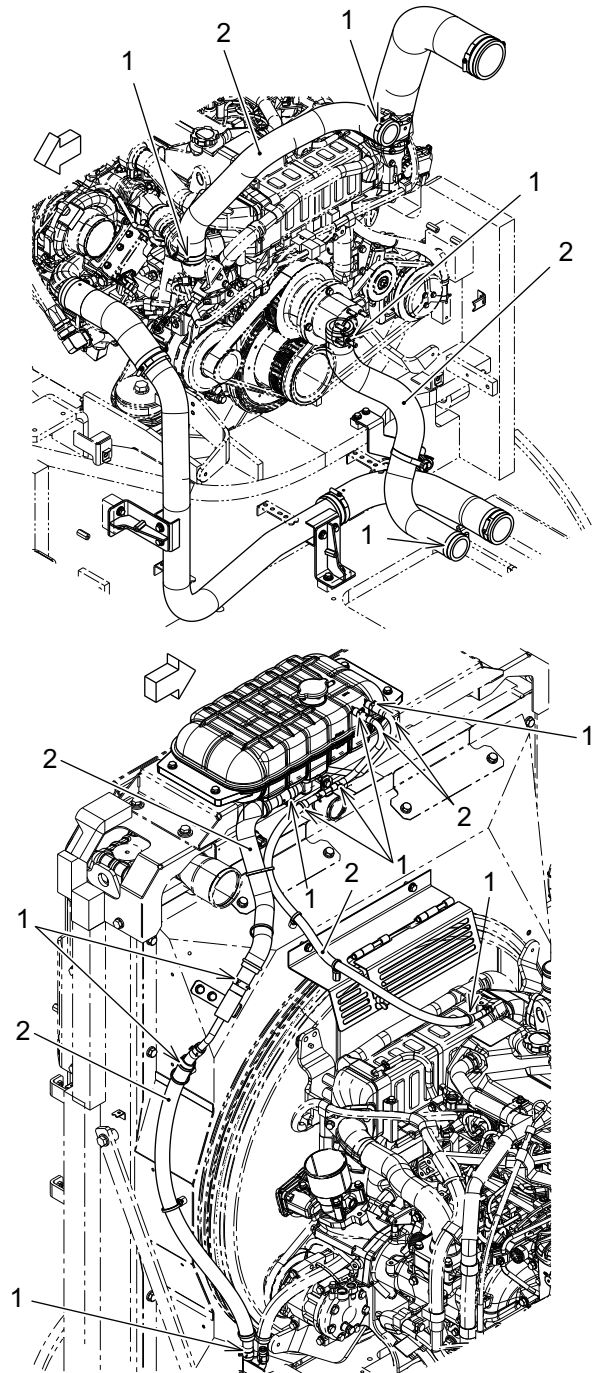


4.16.2 CHECKING RADIATOR HOSES

If you find cracks, permanent set, and water leakage on the hoses, replace the hoses immediately. Serious damages such as engine overheating can be prevented.

INSPECTING RADIATOR HOSES

1. Use the starter key to open the engine hood, and hold it with the stay.
2. Check each hose for water leakage due to looseness of clamp (1) or cracking or permanent set of hose (2).
3. Tighten loosened clamp (1).
Replace hose (2) having cracks or permanent set.



REPLACING RADIATOR HOSES

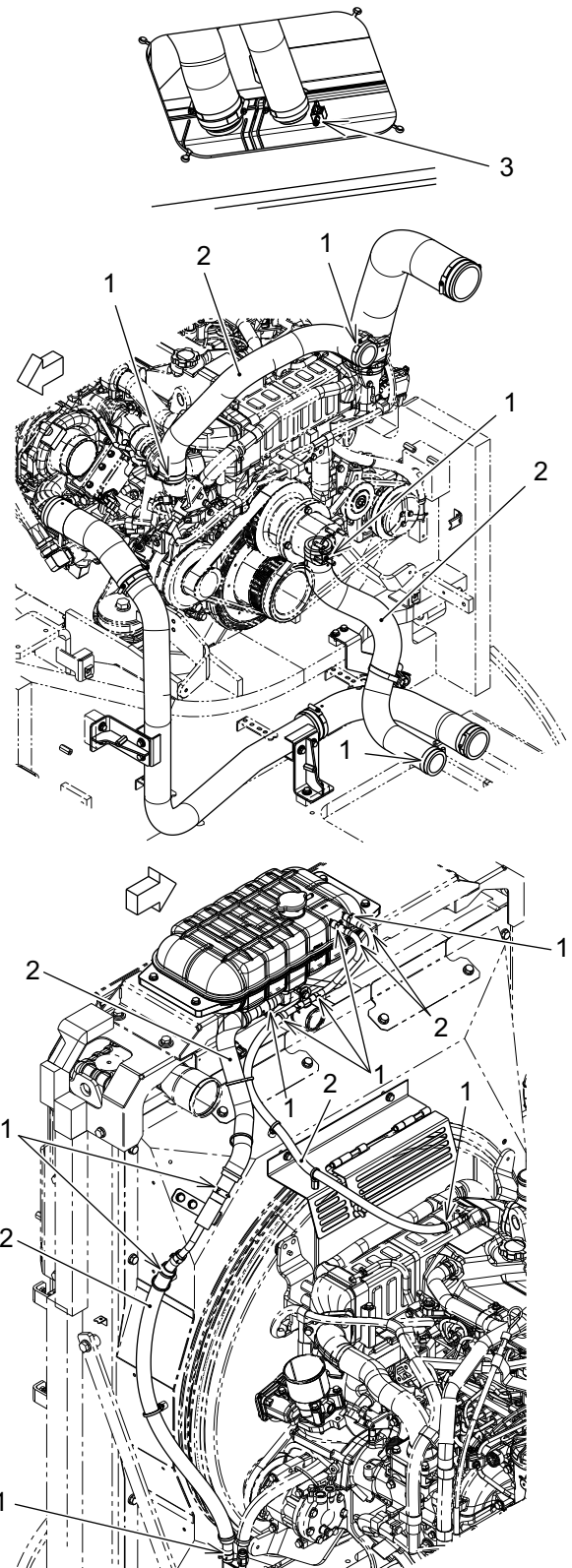


REPLACING RADIATOR HOSES

Inside the radiator, the high pressure steam occurs and it may cause personal injury. Do not loosen or remove the reserve tank cap and the radiator cap when the coolant is under high pressure and high temperature.

- Stop the engine before removing the radiator cap.
- Allow enough time for the coolant to cool down before removing the radiator cap.

1. Loosen four bolts under the radiator, and remove the cover.
2. Loosen radiator cap slowly. After checking that the pressure is completely released, push the cap down, loosen it further, and then remove it.
3. Loosen drain cock (3) and drain the coolant to a container until the coolant level becomes lower than hose (2) to be replaced.
4. Loosen clamp (1), remove damaged hose (2), and replace it with a new hose.
5. Tighten drain cock (3).
6. Refill the coolant to the reserve tank. At this time, to avoid intrusion of air as much as possible, slowly refill the coolant.
And refill the coolant until the coolant level begins to remain at FULL (upper limit).
7. To bleed the air inside the cooling circuits, start and run the engine for 5 minutes with low idle and then another 5 minutes with high idle, as stand-by operation. At this time, the cap of the reserve tank should be removed.
8. Stop the engine, wait approximately 3 minutes, and then check the coolant level of reserve tank.
If the coolant level is at between FULL (upper limit) and LOW (lower limit), it is proper.
If it is not proper, adjust it by refilling or draining the coolant to the proper level.
9. Close reserve tank cap, close the engine hood, and install the under cover under the radiator.
10. After the coolant cools down enough, check the coolant level of the reserve tank again.
If the coolant level is at between FULL (upper limit) and LOW (lower limit), it is proper. If it is not proper, adjust it by refilling or draining the coolant to the proper level.
11. Remove the support stay and close the engine hood.
12. Return the cover under the radiator to the specified place.



4.16.3 CLEANING OR REPLACING AIR CONDITIONER FILTERS

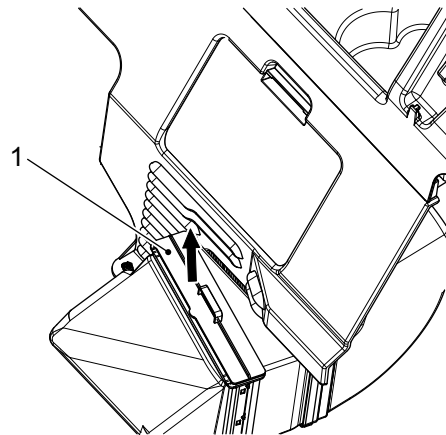
IMPORTANT

The maintenance interval is a reference value. Clean the filters earlier than the specified interval in case the machine is being used in dusty area.

	Cleaning	Replacement
Recirculation air filter	Every 500 hours	After cleaning approximately 10 times
Fresh air filter	Every 250 hours	After cleaning approximately 10 times

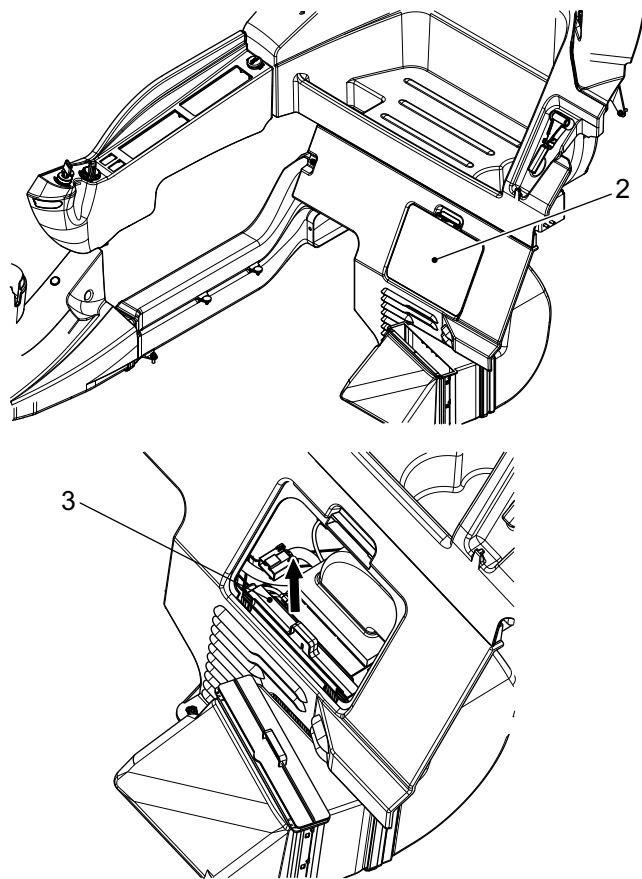
CLEANING OR REPLACING AIR CONDITIONER FRESH AIR FILTER

1. Hold the handle grip of fresh air filter (1) at the left rear side of the operator's seat and pull it up straight.
2. Clean the recirculation/fresh air filters by blowing compressed air (0.2 MPa or less) to them.
3. Install the cleaned or replacement filters in the reverse order of removal.



CLEANING OR REPLACING OF AIR CONDITIONER RECIRCULATION AIR FILTER

1. Hold the top of cover (2) at the left rear side of the operator's seat, and pull it toward you.
2. Hold the handle of recirculation air filter (3) from the opening from which cover (2) is removed, and pull it up straight.
3. Clean the recirculation / fresh air filters by blowing compressed air (0.2 MPa or less) to them.
4. Install the cleaned or replacement filters in the reverse order of removal.



Notice

Install the recirculation air filter with the arrow facing rearward.

4.16.4 INSPECTING, CLEANING, OR REPLACING AIR CLEANER ELEMENT

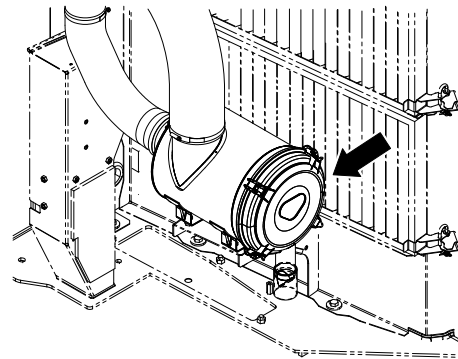
CAUTION

- Wear protective glasses or respirator when using compressed air.
- Before cleaning or replacing the air cleaner element, stop the engine.
- Do not remove the inner element except for replacing with a new one.
- When replacing the inner element, cover the inlet inside the air cleaner with a clean cloth or tape to prevent dust from entering it.

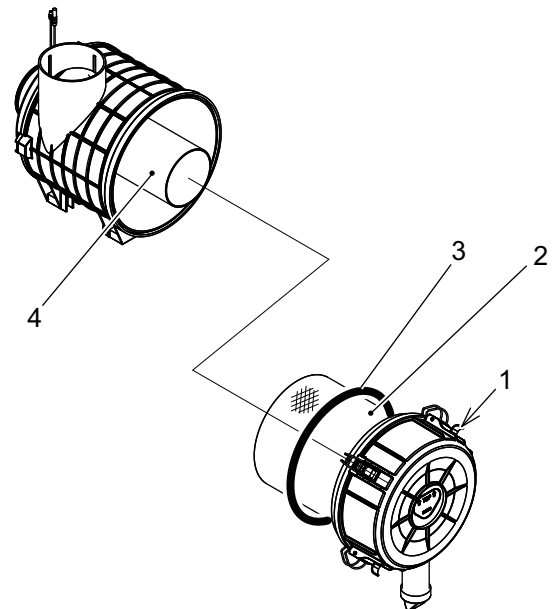
	Cleaning	Replacement
Outer element	When the warning is displayed on the multi-display or every 250 hours	After cleaning 6 times or after one year
Inner element	—	When replacing the outer element

CLEANING OR REPLACING OF OUTER ELEMENT

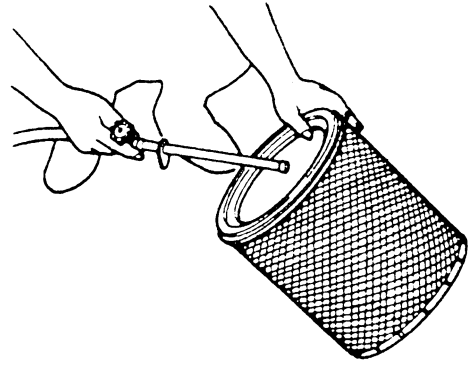
1. Use the starter key to open the side door at the left of the machine, and hold it with the stay.



2. Remove the clamp from air cleaner cover (1) to open it.
3. Remove outer element (2), and clean inside the air cleaner.



4. From inside outer element (2), blow compressed air (0.2 MPa or less) along the folds. Then blow the compressed air from the outside along the folds, and then from the inside again.
Do not hit the outer element to solid objects or clean the outer element by hitting it.
5. After cleaning, check outer element (2), and if holes and ruptures are found, replace it with a new one.
6. Install outer element (2), and place O-ring (3) to cover (1).



CAUTION

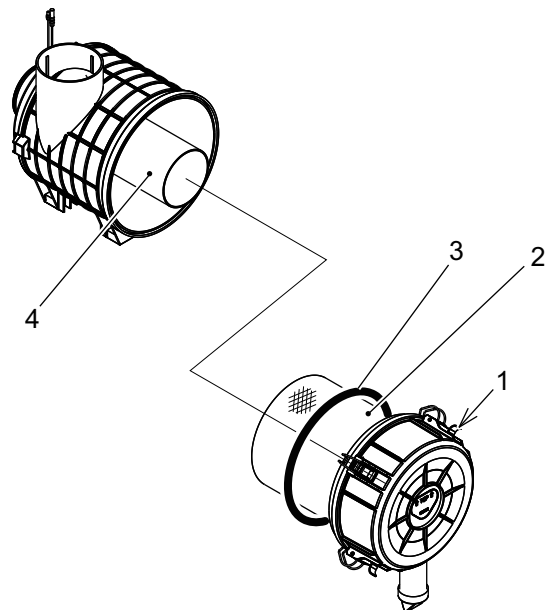
Install the cover with the O-ring attached to the air cleaner.
Without the O-ring, water gets into the air cleaner, causing failure of the engine.

7. Install cover (1) to the air cleaner with the arrow facing up, and fix it with the clamp.
8. Close the side door, and lock it with the starter key.

REPLACING INNER ELEMENT

Replace the inner element when replacing the outer element.

1. Remove outer element (2).
2. Clean inside the air cleaner.
3. Remove inner element (4).
4. Remove the cover at the inlet, and install new inner element (4).
5. Install new outer element (2) and then install O-ring (3) to cover (1).
6. Install cover (1) to the air cleaner with the arrow facing up, and fix it with the clamp.
7. Close the side door, and lock it with the starter key.



4.16.5 CLEANING OR REPLACING CAP



WARNING

HANDLING OF COOLANT AND CAP

Do not loosen or remove the reserve tank cap and the radiator cap when the coolant is under high pressure and high temperature.

High temperature steam and coolant will spout and could cause burns.

- When opening the cap, wait until the coolant cools down, and then slowly turn and open the radiator cap.
- The antifreeze is poisonous, so prevent it from contacting with skin. If the antifreeze gets into your eyes or on your skin, flush the eyes or skin with plenty of water, and seek medical attention.

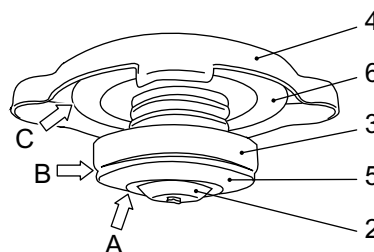
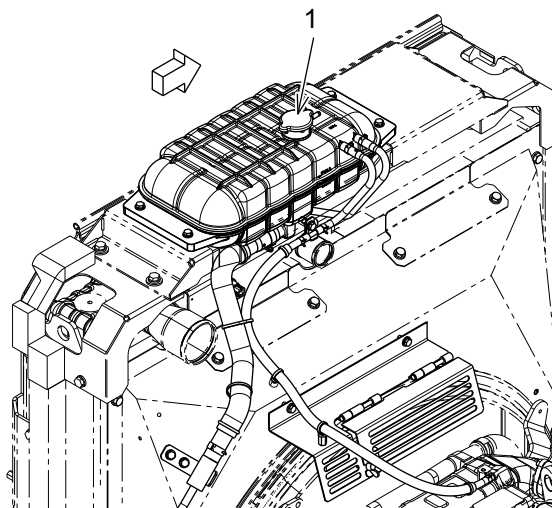


CAUTION

- Do not open the radiator cap to prevent the coolant from spouting.
- Securely close the cap after opening it.

Inspection/cleaning	Replacement
Every 250 hours	If damaged, or every 1 year

1. Open the engine hood and hold it with the stay.
2. Loosen radiator cap (1) slowly. After checking that the pressure is completely released, push the cap down, loosen it further, and then remove it.
3. Check the following points of the cap. If foreign materials are adhered, remove them and if any damages are found, replace the parts.
 - A: Contact surface between negative pressure valve (2) and gasket (5)
 - B: Both surfaces of pressure valve (3) and gasket (5)
 - C: Both surfaces of external lid (4) and gasket (6)
4. Close cap (1) and close the engine hood.



4.16.6 INSPECTING SCR SYSTEM

- Check the DEF/AdBlue tank, the DEF/AdBlue supply module, and around the DEF/AdBlue pipe for water leakage.
- Check the tubes and the hoses in the DEF/AdBlue piping for deterioration and damage.
- For the following inspections, contact your KOBELCO or KOBELCO authorized dealer.
 - Inspection around the DEF/AdBlue dosing module for water leakage
 - Inspection of the cooling water piping of the SCR system for water leakage, deterioration, and damage
 - Inspection of the harnesses of SCR for damage, and the connecting parts for looseness.

4.17 500 HOUR (6-MONTH) INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

Thoroughly read and understand "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" of this manual before performing the inspection and maintenance.

Perform this section together with "EVERYDAY CHECK-UP and 50, 100, 120, and 250 HOUR INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES".

4.17.1 REPLACING ENGINE OIL AND ENGINE OIL FILTER



WARNING ABOUT HOT PARTS

- Contact with hot parts during operation or immediately after stopping operation may cause burns. Do not touch the hot parts.
 - Immediately after operation, the oil and oil filter are hot. Start the replacement after the temperature goes down.
-

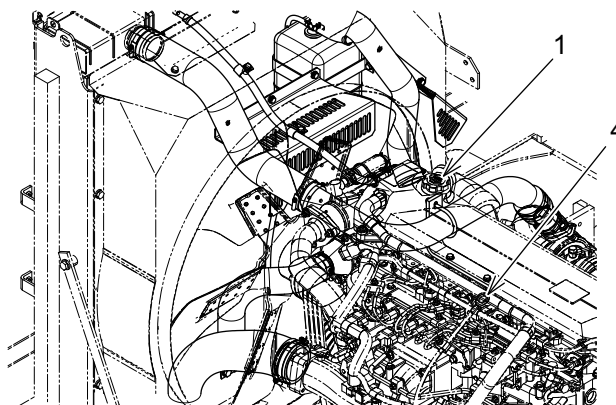
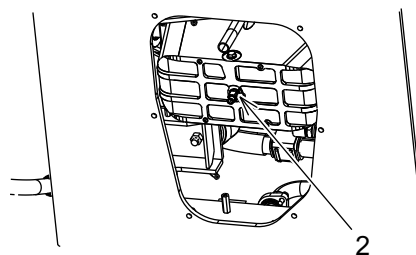


- Do not reuse the filter element, O-ring and gasket.
 - When replacing the O-ring or gasket, check the fitting condition at the mounting surface to prevent it from being twisted and broken.
-

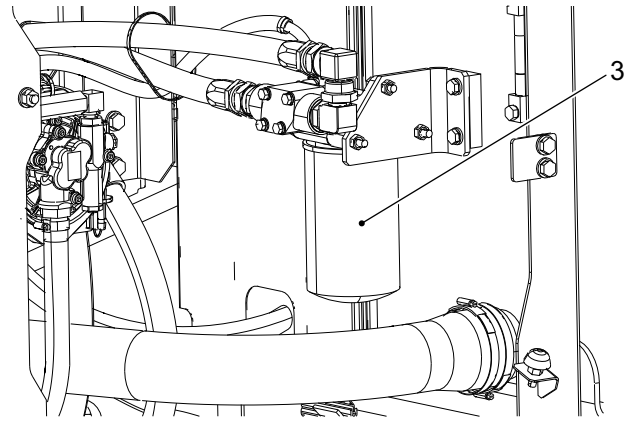
Notice

- Check drain engine oil, and if metal chips or powder is found in the oil, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer/distributor.
 - Change the engine oil after 50 hours of operation has been reached for the first time.
 - When the engine oil is replaced, replace the engine oil filter as well.
 - When the engine oil filter is replaced, run the engine at low idle for several minutes until the oil is filled in the filter.
-

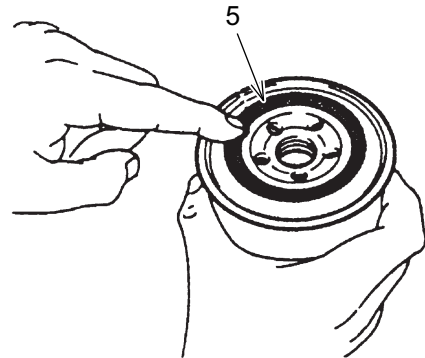
1. Loosen the six bolts at the under cover just under the engine and remove the cover.
2. Place a container for drain oil under drain cock (2).
Container: 30 L (7.9 Gal) or more
3. Clean the area around oil filler cap (1), remove the cap and loosen drain cock (2) of the engine oil pan to drain the oil.
4. After draining the oil, tighten drain cock (2) and oil filler cap (1) securely.



5. Turn filter element (3) with a filter wrench and remove it.
6. Remove dirt and foreign materials from the mounting surface of the oil filter body.



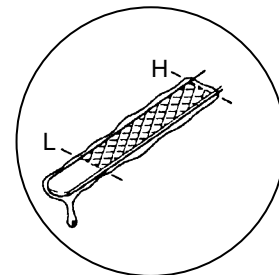
7. Apply engine oil to the gasket of new filter element and install the filter element by turning it by hand until it does not turn any more.



CAUTION

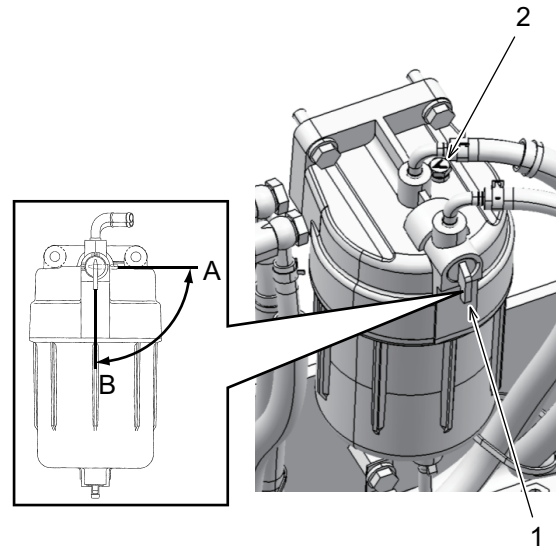
- Do not reuse the filter element, O-ring and gasket.
- When replacing the O-ring or gasket, check the fitting condition at the mounting surface to prevent it from being twisted and broken.

8. Use the filter wrench to tighten the filter element about a three-quarter turn.
Tightening Torque: 23 to 27 N·m (17.0 to 19.9 lbf·ft)
9. Remove the oil filler cap and refill the specified engine oil from the oil filler port, referring to "LUBRICANT, FUEL & COOLANT SPECIFICATIONS" in Chapter 4.
10. Use level gauge (4) to check the engine oil level. Refill the engine oil to the proper level, which is between upper limit (H) and lower limit (L).
11. Attach oil filler cap (1).
12. Start the engine, run the engine at low idle for several minutes and stop the engine. About 10 minutes later, check the engine oil level. If the level is low, refill the engine oil repeatedly to the proper level.
13. Make sure that there is no leakage from the mounting surface of the oil filter.
14. Attach the cover under the engine to the original position.

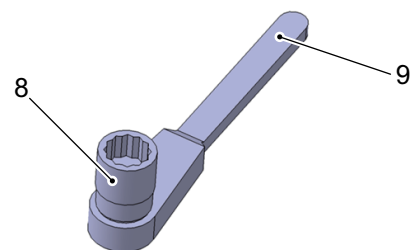
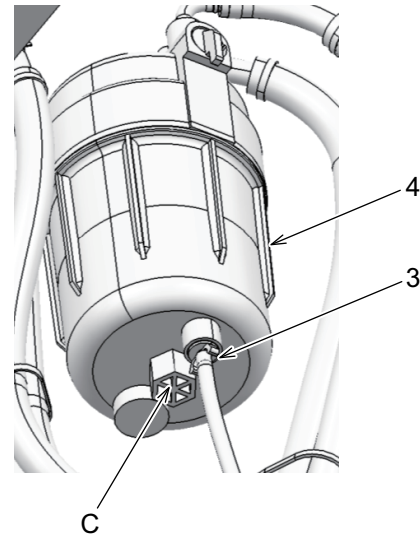


4.17.2 REPLACING FUEL PRE-FILTER

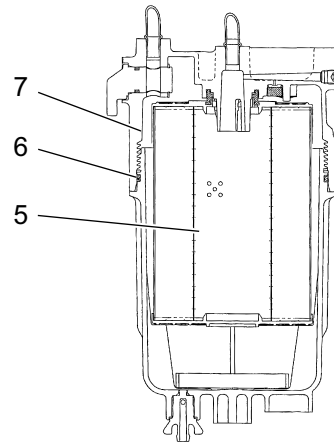
1. Place a container for drain oil under the fuel pre-filter.
2. Set cock (1) to "close" position (A).
3. Clean the area around air bleeder plug (2).



4. Loosen the air bleeder plug and drain plug (3) to drain the oil inside the fuel pre-filter.
5. Put socket (8) with 27 mm width across flats to hexagonal part (C) at the bottom of case (4) and then turn it by ratchet wrench (9) to remove the case.



6. Replace filter element (5) and gasket (6) with new ones.
Apply a thin coat of light oil to the gasket before installing it to the case.



CAUTION

- Do not reuse the filter element, O-ring and gasket.
- When replacing the O-ring or gasket, check the fitting condition at the mounting surface to prevent it from being twisted and broken.

7. Remove dirt and foreign materials inside cover (7).
8. Put socket (8) with 27 mm width across flats to hexagonal part (C) at the bottom of case (4) and then turn it by ratchet wrench (9) to install the case securely.
Tightening torque: $30 \pm 2 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$ ($22.1 \pm 1.5 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$)
9. Tighten air bleeder plug (2) and drain plug (3).
10. Set cock (1) to "open" position (B).
11. Bleed the air according to "BLEEDING AIR FROM FUEL PIPING" in Chapter 4.
12. Start the engine, run it at idle speed for several minutes, and then check the filter mounting portion for oil leakage.

4.17.3 REPLACING FUEL FILTER



WARNING

HANDLING OF FUEL

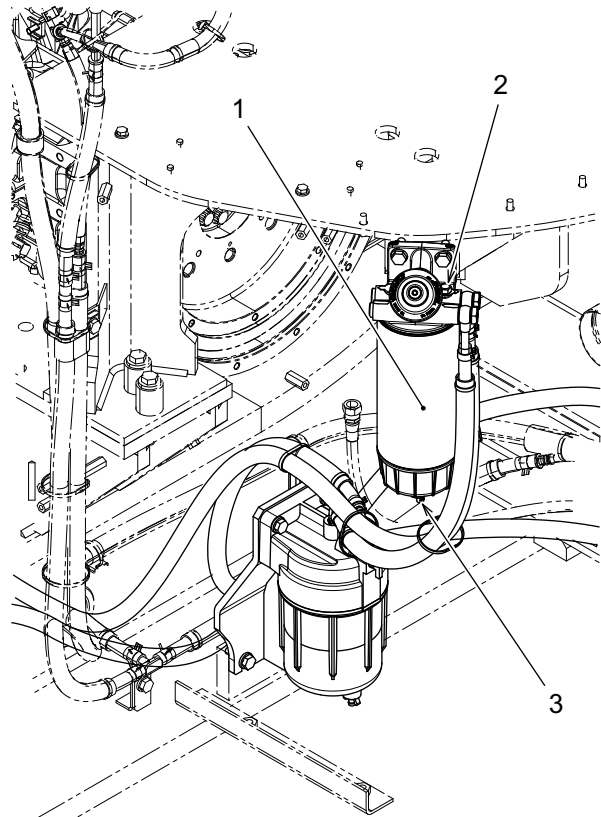
- Wipe off spilled fuel to prevent a fire.
- Make sure that there is no fuel leakage after performing work.



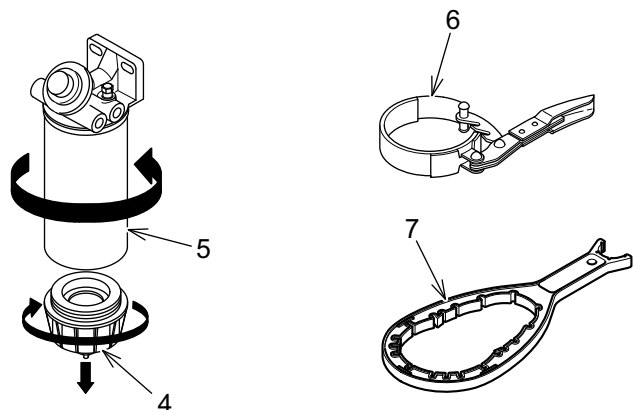
CAUTION

- Do not reuse the filter element, O-ring and gasket.
- When replacing the O-ring or gasket, check the fitting condition at the mounting surface to prevent it from being twisted and broken.

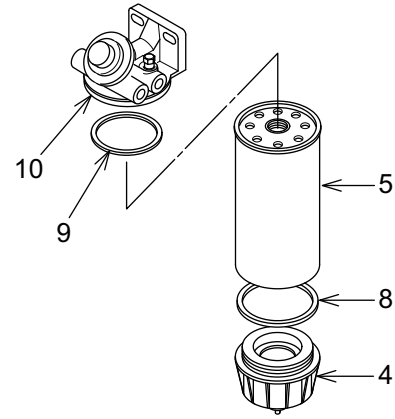
1. Place a container for drain fuel under fuel filter (1).
2. See "REPLACING FUEL PRE-FILTER" in Chapter 4 to close the stop valve of fuel pre-filter.
3. Clean the area around air bleeder plug (2).
4. Loosen air bleeder plug (2) and drain plug (3) to drain the fuel in the filter.



5. Remove case (4) first. Fix filter element (5) with band type filter wrench (6). Then turn case (4) with filter wrench (7) and remove it.
6. Turn filter element (5) with band type filter wrench (6) and remove it.



7. Remove dirt and foreign materials from the mounting surface of case (4).
8. Apply light oil slightly to new gasket (8) and attach it to case (4).
9. Install case (4) to a new filter element (5) securely.
10. Apply light oil slightly to new O-ring (9) and attach it on the upper surface of new filter element (5).
11. Remove dirt and foreign materials from the mounting surface of filter body (10).
12. Turn filter element (5) with band type filter wrench (6) to install it securely.
13. Tighten air bleeder plug (2) and drain plug (3).
14. Open the stop valve of the fuel pre-filter.
15. Bleed air according to "BLEEDING AIR FROM FUEL PIPING" in Chapter 4.



4.17.4 GREASING SWING BEARING

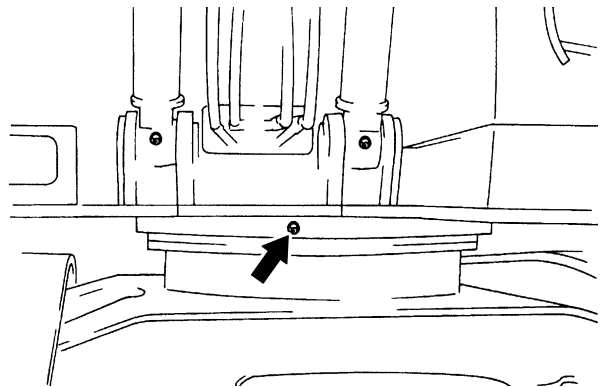


ABOUT GREASING SWING BEARING

Do not swing the machine while greasing the swing bearing because it is dangerous.

The grease nipple is at one location.

- Clean the grease nipple and swing the upper structure by every 90 degrees for greasing. Every time after swinging the upper structure, apply grease until the grease comes out through the seal of bearing. (About maximum 30 cc per each direction)

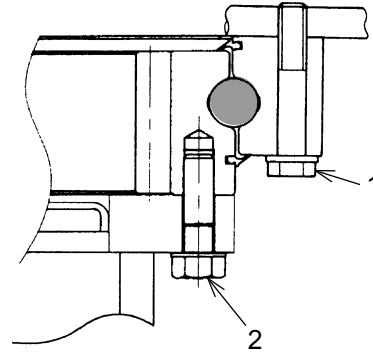


4.17.5 CHECKING SWING BEARING MOUNTING BOLT FOR LOOSENESS

Notice

Use a torque wrench when tightening the bolts of the swing bearing.

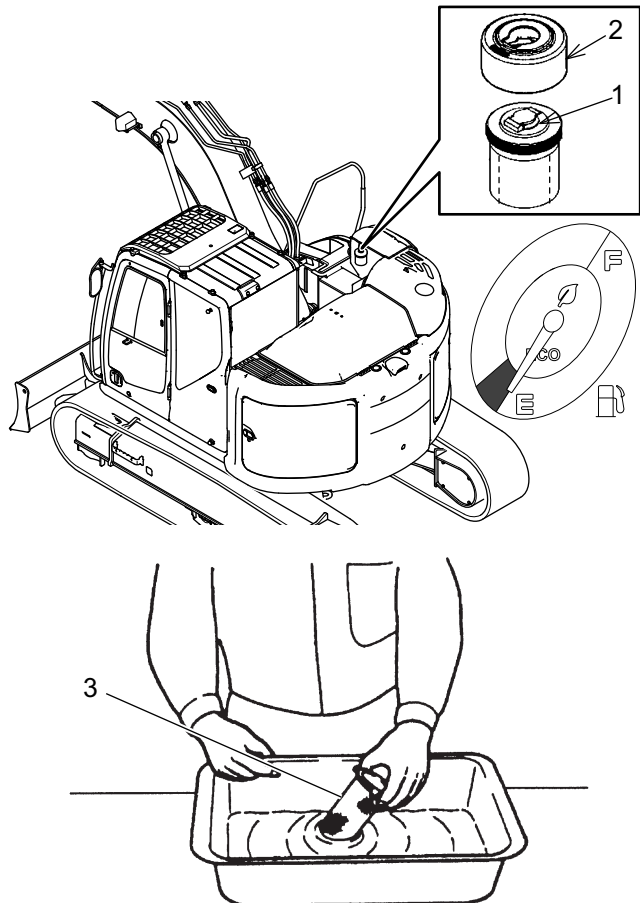
1. Check that bolts (1) and (2), which tighten the swing bearing are not loose.
2. When they are loose, remove bolts (1), and (2), apply the recommended thread locking agent (Loctite #262 or equivalent) and tighten them. Tighten diagonally positioned bolts alternately.



Mounting part	Tightening torque N·m(lbf·ft)
Inner race	932±93(687±69)
Outer race	932±93(687±69)

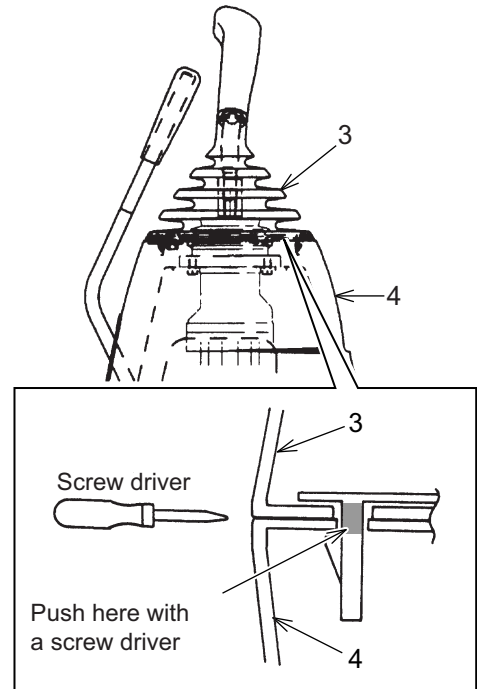
4.17.6 CLEANING FUEL TANK CAP AND STRAINER

1. Stop the engine.
2. Climb up the step on the control valve from the left front of the machine.
3. If rubber cover (2) is attached on the fuel port, remove it, and turn filler cap (1) to open it using the starter key.
4. Check the seal on filler cap (1), and replace it if damaged.
5. Wash strainer (3) with clean light oil, and install it. Replace it if damaged.
6. Attach filler cap (1), and after locking it with the starter key, attach rubber cover (2) by aligning the orientation of fuel cap (1).

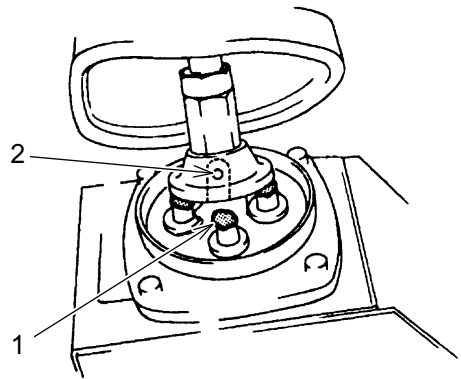


4.17.7 LUBRICATING PUSH ROD OF CONTROL LEVER

1. Insert a flat-head screwdriver between boot (3) and plastic cover (4) to release four clicks one by one.



2. Remove the rubber boot and the boot of the pilot valve and apply a small amount of grease to the top end surfaces of push rod (1) and the rotational sliding section.
3. After applying the grease, install plastic cover (4) and boot (3).



4.17.8 CHECKING AIR CONDITIONER REFRIGERANT



WARNING

REFRIGERANT

- Do not loosen the parts in the refrigerant circuit because there is a hazard of losing sight by getting coolant in your eyes and getting frostbite on your hands by touching it.
- Inhalation of the refrigerant may result in fatal injury. Also, do not bring a fire near the area where refrigerant gas is generated.

Notice

- When charging or replacing the refrigerant, confirm the type of refrigerant and use the specified refrigerant. (Refrigerant type: R-134a Quantity: 780g±50g)
The use of unspecified refrigerant may cause damage of the components.
- Operate the air conditioner at least once every week for several minutes to rotate the compressor regardless of the season. This can prevent refrigerant gas from leaking through the compressor seal.
- If an oil stain is found around a pipe joint, it is a sign of gas leakage. Contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer for inspection.

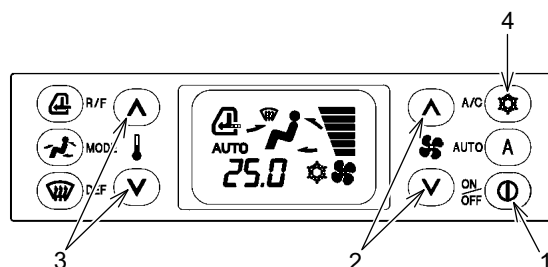
Notice

Be sure to follow the following regulations to protect the global environment.

- Do not release the refrigerant is sealed in this product to the atmosphere without care.
- Collect the sealed refrigerant from the unit when disposing of this product.

1. Start the engine, and set the engine speed to the middle speed position of the engine throttle.
2. Fully open the windows of the cab and the doors.
3. Set the air conditioner as shown in the following.

- (1) Main Power Switch: ON
- (2) Fan Speed Selector Switch: HI
- (3) Temperature Setting Switch: MAX COLD
- (4) Air Conditioner Switch: ON

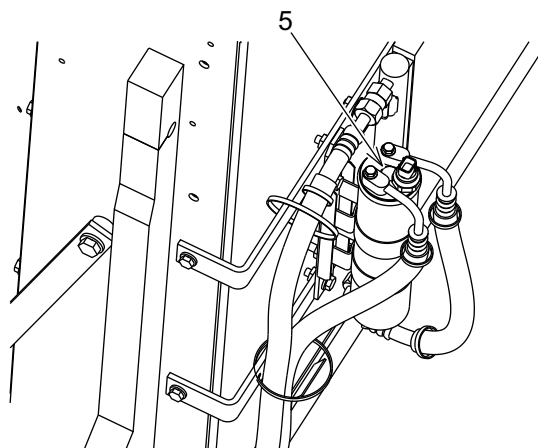



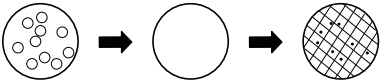

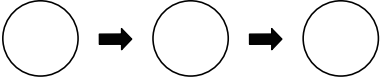





4. Check the amount of the refrigerant by seeing sight glass (inspection window) (5). Regarding the criteria for the amount of charged refrigerant, see the following figure.

A: The amount of refrigerant is proper.

B: The refrigerant is over charged. This will make both high and low pressures rise and have an adverse effect on the pressure switch operation and the air conditioning system.

C: The refrigerant is insufficient. Contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer for charging.



Refrigerant Amount	Condition of Sight Glass
<p>A Proper</p> 	 <p>After turning ON the main power switch, a little bubbles are visible. Then it becomes transparent and later light opaque white.</p>
<p>B When over-charged</p> 	 <p>After turning ON the main power switch, no bubbles are visible.</p>
<p>C When insufficiently-charged</p> 	 <p>After turning ON the main power switch, bubbles are seen continuously.</p>
 <p>With bubbles:</p>	Both gas and liquid refrigerant are mixed.
 <p>No bubbles:</p>	All refrigerant has become liquid and transparent.
 <p>Opaque white color :</p>	Oil and refrigerant are separated, showing light opaque white color.

4.18 1000 HOUR (12-MONTH) INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

Thoroughly read and understand "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" of this manual before performing the inspection and maintenance.

Perform this section together with "EVERYDAY CHECK-UP and 50, 100, 120, 250, and 500 HOUR INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES".

4.18.1 REPLACING RETURN FILTER



WARNING PAY ATTENTION TO HOT PARTS

- The oil in the hydraulic oil tank is under high pressure and high temperature.
Before removing the cover, stop the engine first, press the breather, and release the pressure from the tank.
 - Immediately after engine operation, the oil is hot and it may cause burns. Wait until the oil temperature cools down before attempting to change the hydraulic oil.
-

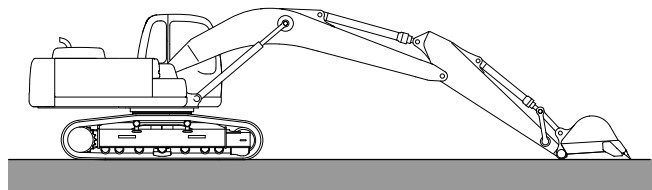
Notice

Hydraulic oil before filtration inside the filter contains dirt. When taking out the return filter, do not return the hydraulic oil remaining in the filter back to the tank.

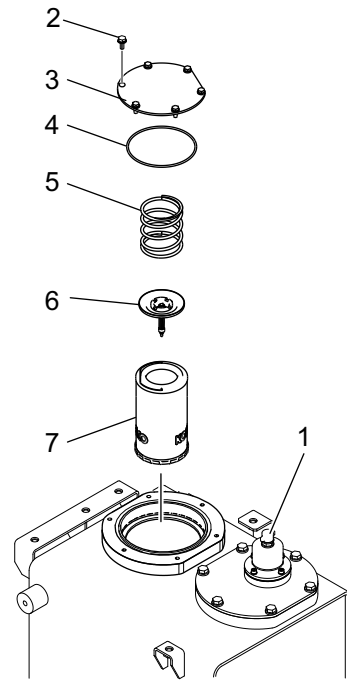
Notice

- Order return filter element kit (7) P/NoYN52V01025R200.
Replace the return filter after 50 hours of operation has been reached for the first time, and then every 1,000 hours.
For breaker specification, replace it every 250 hours.
 - A warning is displayed on the gauge cluster not only when the remaining maintenance interval set from the gauge cluster becomes 0, but also when the return filter is clogged. (See "WARNING DISPLAY SCREEN" in Chapter 2)
Regardless of the setting time of maintenance, when the hydraulic oil filter replacement warning is displayed, replace the return filter.
-

1. Move the machine to a level and firm place.
2. Park the machine in the hydraulic oil level inspection position.
3. Stop the engine and move the pilot control shut-off lever to the "LOCKED" position.



4. Keep pressing air breather (1) on the top of the hydraulic oil tank until the pressure inside the hydraulic oil tank is released.
5. Loosen bolts (2) on the upper surface of the tank, and then remove cover (3).
6. Take out spring (5), check valve (6) and element assembly (7) from the tank.
7. Replace O-ring (4) on the mounting surface of cover (3).
8. Assemble element kit (7) and insert it.
9. Install check valve (6) and spring (5).
10. Install cover (3).
Tightening Torque: $46.5 \pm 4.6 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ ($34.3 \pm 3.4 \text{ lbf}\cdot\text{ft}$)
11. Start the engine, set the machine in the hydraulic oil level check position by moving each control lever, and check the hydraulic oil level.



4.18.2 REPLACING AIR BREATHER ELEMENT

CAUTION

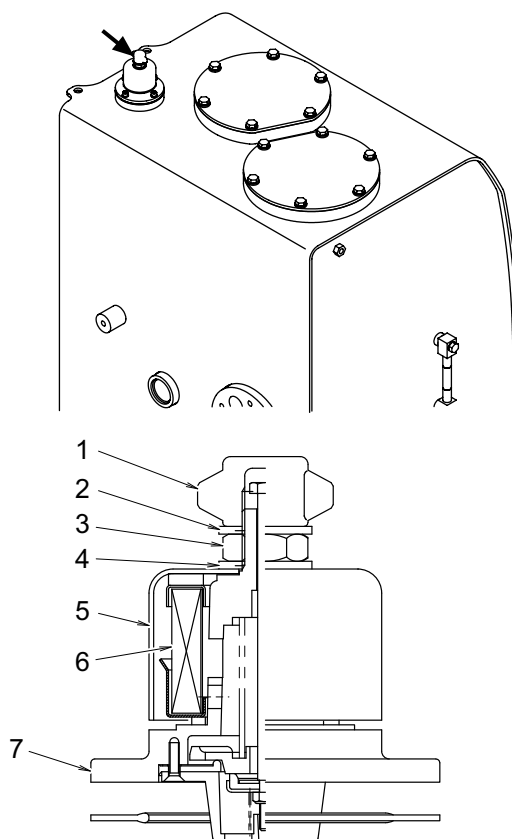
Immediately after engine operation, the oil is hot and it may cause in burns. Wait until the oil temperature cools down before attempting to change the element.

Notice

- To keep the hydraulic oil clean and to extend the service life of the hydraulic components, replace the filter element at regular intervals.
- Every 1000 hours replacement is a rough guideline. If the machine is operated in very sandy and dusty conditions, replace the oil filter earlier than the specified interval.

1. Move the machine to a level and firm place.
2. Put the bucket on the ground.
3. Stop the engine and move the pilot control shut-off lever to the "LOCKED" position.
4. Remove breather cap (1) on the top of the hydraulic oil tank and keep pressing the valve until the pressure inside the hydraulic oil tank is released.

5. After removing breather cap (1), remove seal (2), nut (3) and seal (4) in order.
6. Turn cover (5) in the counterclockwise direction, remove the cover, and then remove element (6).
7. Install new element (6) and install cover (5) aligning the groove.
8. Be sure to prevent water and dirt from entering the air intake and exhaust ports between cover (5) and body (7).
9. Attach seal (4) on top of cover (5), then attach nut (3) and set seal (2).



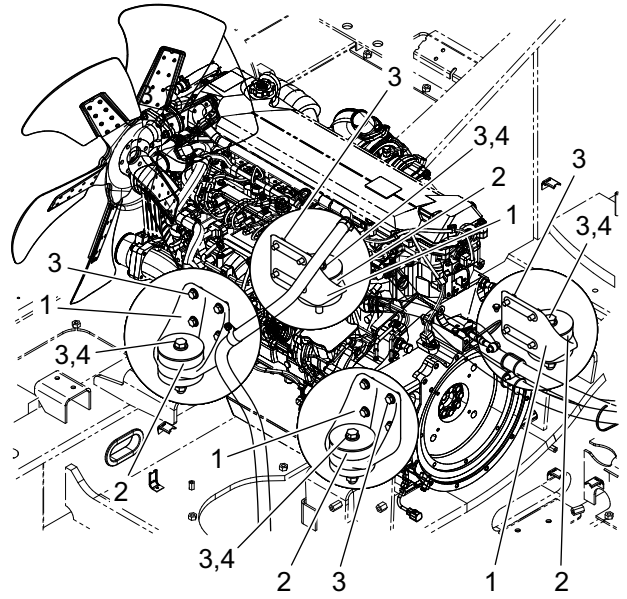
CAUTION

To avoid breakage of bolts, do not over-tighten nut (3).
Tightening Torque: 10 to 14 N·m (7.4 to 10.3 lbf·ft)

10. Securely tighten breather cap (1) clockwise by hand.

4.18.3 CHECKING ENGINE MOUNTING BRACKET FOR TIGHTENING CONDITION

1. Check damage and deterioration of engine mounting bracket (1) and rubber mount (2) and looseness of mounting bolts (3) and nuts (4).
When engine mounting bracket (1) and rubber mount (2) are damaged or deteriorated, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer for replacement.
2. When looseness is found, tighten mounting bolts (3) and nuts (4).
For the tightening torques, see "TIGHTENING TORQUES FOR BOLTS & NUTS (SPECIFIC POSITIONS)" in Chapter 4.



4.18.4 CHECKING BATTERY VOLTAGE



WARNING

HANDLING OF BATTERY

- Wear protective glasses, long-sleeve shirt and gloves when handling the batteries.
 - Do not bring a fire near the battery because the combustible hydrogen gas generated by the battery can cause explosion.
 - If the dilute sulfuric acid in the battery splashes onto your skin or into your eyes, it will cause burns or blindness. At such case, immediately wash the skin or eyes with sufficient clean water, and ask a special doctor to treat it as soon as possible.
 - Before performing inspection and maintenance on the batteries, be sure to stop the engine and set the battery power-off switch to the "OFF" position.
 - When removing the battery terminal be sure to remove the ground side (negative terminal) first and conversely, when attaching the battery terminal, attach the ground side last.
 - Do not put tools and hardware on the protective cover on the battery upper section. It may cause a short circuit resulting in a fire or explosion.
-



CAUTION

If the cover of the battery power-off switch is opened soon after the starter switch is turned OFF, the buzzer may start sounding. Do not turn "OFF" the battery power-off switch while the alarm buzzer is sounding. That may cause damages to electronic devices.

Notice

- Clean the battery terminals and apply grease or commercial anti-rust lubricant spray.
 - Do not dispose of the battery by yourself but always ask a professional service company to dispose of it.
 - If the batteries became old, do not attempt to use the old battery and a new battery together. The service life of the new battery may be shortened. When replacing the batteries, replace the both at the same time.
-
1. Measure the voltage of batteries and when it does not reach the specified voltage, charge or replace the batteries.
 2. After replacement, the battery should be properly secured to the machine.

4.19 2000 HOUR INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

Thoroughly read and understand "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" of this manual before performing the inspection and maintenance.

Perform this section together with "EVERYDAY CHECK-UP and 50, 100, 120, 250, 500, and 1000 HOUR INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES".

4.19.1 REPLACING COOLANT



HANDLING OF COOLANT AND CAP

Do not loosen or remove the reserve tank cap and the radiator cap when the coolant is under high pressure and high temperature. High temperature steam and the coolant will spout and could cause burns.

- When opening the cap, wait until the coolant cools down, and then slowly turn and open the radiator cap.
- The antifreeze is poisonous, so prevent it from contacting with skin. If the antifreeze gets into your eyes or on your skin, flush the eyes or skin with plenty of water, and seek medical attention.



- Do not open the radiator cap to prevent the coolant from spouting.
Check or refill the coolant of the reserve tank when the coolant is cooled down.
- Securely close the cap after opening it.
- If air remains inside the coolant circuit, it will lead to damage of the machine. Perform the work according to the procedure and do not allow the air to remain inside the coolant circuit.

Notice

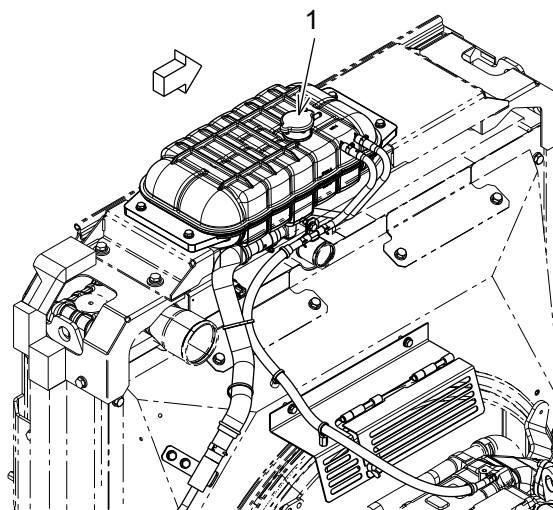
Use the KOBELCO genuine antifreeze at 50 % concentration. Use clean water such as tap water for the water to be mixed with the antifreeze.

- Use the specified antifreeze. If improper antifreeze is used, it will cause damage to the machine such as occurrence of rust inside the coolant circuit.
- The KOBELCO genuine antifreeze is non-amine type.
- Replace the coolant earlier than the specified interval when it is dirty and/or bubbling.

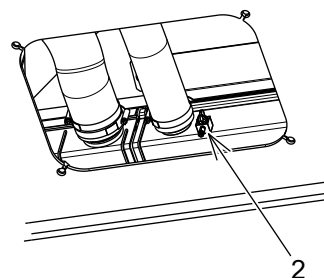
1. Move the machine to a level and firm place and lower the bucket to the ground.
2. Stop the engine and move the pilot control shut-off lever to the "LOCKED" position.
3. Open the engine hood and hold it with the stay.
4. Loosen reserve tank cap (1) slowly. After checking that the pressure is completely released, push the cap down, loosen it further, and then remove it. Here is the reserve tank filler opening.

[4. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE]

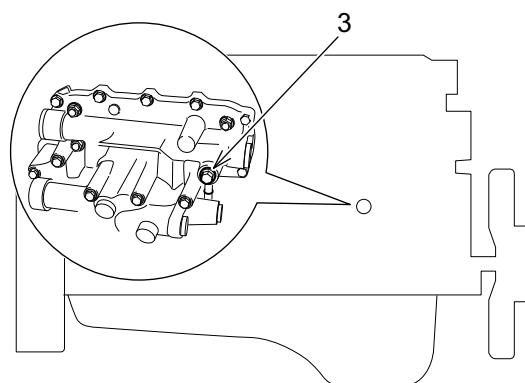
5. Remove the under cover under the radiator, place a container for drain coolant, and open drain cock (2) and drain plug (3) on the side face of the engine to drain the coolant.



6. After draining the coolant, close drain cock (2) and drain plug (3), and prepare a hose for pouring water, and pour tap water from the reserve tank filler opening. Pour tap water until the water level begins to remain at FULL (upper limit).



7. Open drain cock (2) and drain plug (3), and then start and run the engine with low idle for 10 minutes while washing the inside with flowing water. During the washing with flowing water, regulate the volumes of water being poured to keep the water level at FULL (upper limit) of the reserve tank. And also, always check the hose used for pouring water for coming off from the reserve tank filler opening.



8. Stop the engine and stop pouring water, and then discharge the water. After that, close drain cock (2) and drain plug (3).

9. Wash the radiator with cleaning solution. Regarding how to use the cleaning solution, follow the handling manual of the cleaning solution to be used.

10. After washing the radiator with the cleaning solution, perform washing with flowing water again according to procedures 5 to 7. At this time, continue the washing with flowing water until clean water comes out.

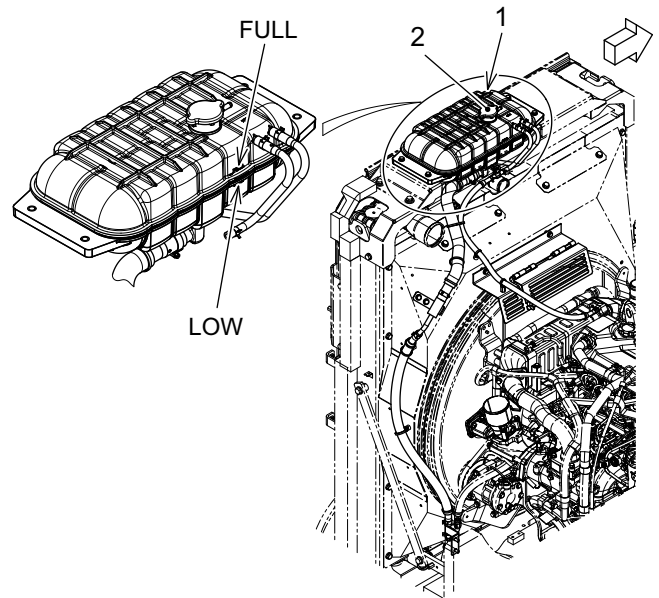
11. Drain the coolant and after that, close drain cock (2) and drain plug (3) and refill the coolant to the reserve tank. At this time, to avoid intrusion of air as much as possible, slowly pour the coolant. Pour the coolant until the coolant level begins to remain at FULL (upper limit).

12. To bleed the air inside the cooling circuits, start and run the engine for 5 minutes with low idle and then another 5 minutes with high idle, as stand-by operation. At this time, the cap of the reserve tank should be removed.

13. Stop the engine, wait approximately 3 minutes, and then check the coolant level of reserve tank (4). If the coolant level is at between FULL (upper limit) and LOW (lower limit), it is proper. If it is not proper, adjust it by refilling or draining the coolant to the proper level.

14. Close reserve tank cap (1), close the engine hood, and install the under cover under the radiator.

15. After the coolant cools down enough, check the coolant level of the reserve tank again.
If the coolant level is at between FULL (upper limit) and LOW (lower limit), it is proper. If it is not proper, adjust it by refilling or draining the coolant to the proper level.



4.19.2 REPLACING OIL IN SWING REDUCTION UNIT



WARNING HANDLING OF OIL IMMEDIATELY AFTER OPERATION

Immediately after operation, the oil is hot and it may cause burns. Start working after the temperature goes down.

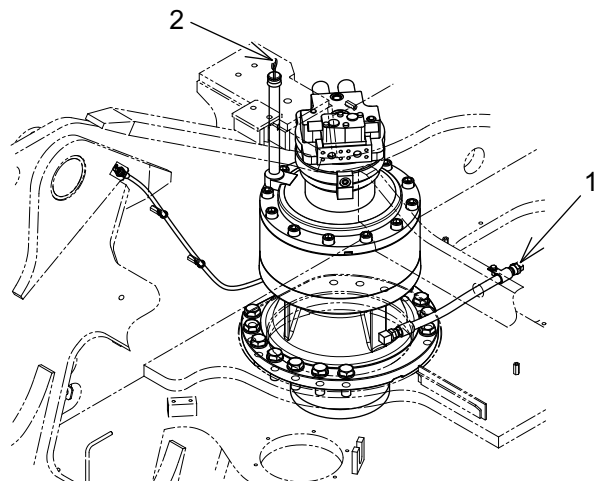
Notice

Replace the oil after 500 hours of operation has been reached for the first time.

Notice

- Check drain oil, and if metal chips or powder is found in the oil, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.
- Dispose of the drain waste oil properly as industrial waste.

1. Move the machine to a level and firm place.
2. Put the bucket on the ground.
3. Stop the engine and move the pilot control shut-off lever to the "LOCKED" position.
4. Place a container for drain oil under drain plug (1) at the rear lower part of swing reduction unit.
Container: 7.4L (2.0Gal) or more
5. Remove level gauge (2) and refill the specified gear oil to the specified quantity.
When the oil level is within the specified range of the scale of level gauge (2), it is proper.
For the specified gear oil, see "LUBRICANT, FUEL & COOLANT SPECIFICATIONS" in Chapter 4.
6. Attach level gauge (2).



4.19.3 REPLACING OIL IN TRAVEL REDUCTION UNITS



WARNING

HANDLING OF OIL IMMEDIATELY AFTER OPERATION

- Immediately after operation, the oil is hot and it may cause burns. Start working after the temperature goes down.
- Pressure may be generated inside the traveling devices. Slowly loosen the plug to release the internal pressure.

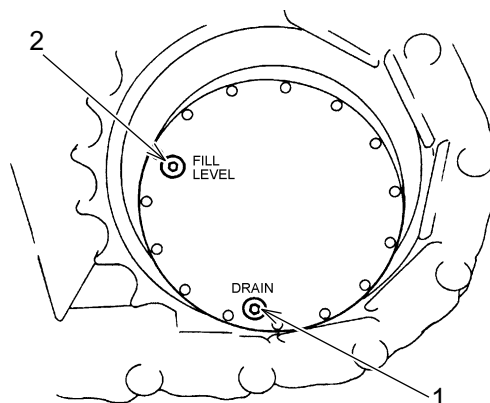
Notice

Replace the oil after 500 hours of operation has been reached for the first time.

Notice

- Check the drain oil, and if metal chips or powder is found in the oil, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.
- Dispose of the drain waste oil properly as industrial waste.

1. Move the machine to a level and firm place.
2. Stop the machine at a position in which drain plug (1) is positioned at the lower side and lower the bucket to the ground.
3. Stop the engine and move the pilot control shut-off lever to the "LOCKED" position.
4. Place a container for drain oil under drain plug (1).
Container: 8.0L (2.1 Gal) × 2 or more
5. Remove drain plug (1), level plug (2) and drain oil in container.
6. After draining the oil completely, clean drain plug (1) with light oil and attach it in place.
7. Fill with the specified oil in the specified quantity through hole for level plug (2) until the oil overflowed from level plug (2).
For the specified gear oil, see "LUBRICANT, FUEL & COOLANT SPECIFICATIONS" in Chapter 4.
8. Clean level plug (2) with light oil and attach it in place.
9. Similarly, replace the oil of the travel reduction unit on the other side.



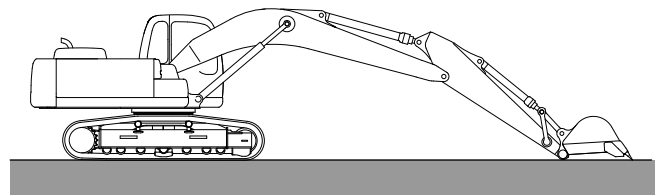
4.19.4 CLEANING SUCTION STRAINER



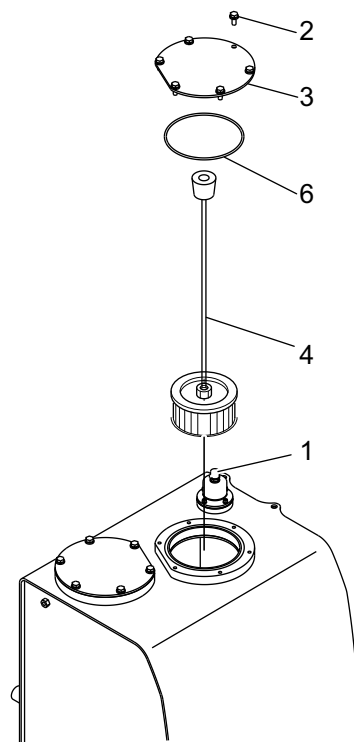
HANDLING OF HYDRAULIC OIL TANK

- The oil in the hydraulic oil tank is under high pressure and high temperature.
- Before removing the cover, stop the engine first, remove the breather cap, press the valve, and release the pressure from the tank.
- Immediately after engine operation, the oil is hot and it may cause burns. Wait until the oil temperature cools down before attempting to change the hydraulic oil.

1. Move the machine to a level and firm place.
2. Park the machine in the hydraulic oil inspection position.
3. Stop the engine and move the pilot control shut-off lever to the "LOCKED" position.
4. Clean the area around the cover to keep the hydraulic oil tank away from foreign materials.



5. Remove breather cap (1) on the top of the hydraulic oil tank and keep pressing the valve until the pressure inside the hydraulic oil tank is released.
6. Remove bolt (2) and cover (3) on the tank upper surface.



Notice

Do not drop bolts or others into the tank.

7. Take out suction strainer (4).

[4. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE]

8. Clean suction strainer (4) with light oil or cleaning solvent, dry it well and check it for damage. If damaged significantly, replace the strainer with a new one.

L: 1026±1mm(40.4±0.04 inch)

9. Check O-rings (5) and (6) on the bottom of the strainer, and if wear or damage is found, replace it with a new one.

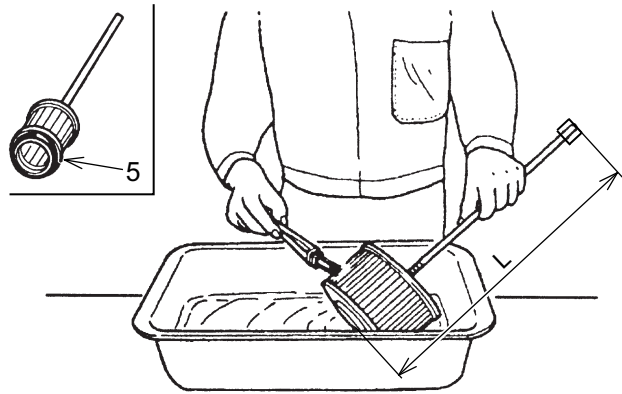
10. Insert suction strainer (4) into the hydraulic oil tank.

11. Install cover (3) with bolt (2).

Tightening Torque: 46.5±4.6N·m(34.3±3.4lbf·ft)

12. Start the engine, run it at low idle for several (5 to 7) minutes. After that, extend and retract each cylinder and swing the machine.

13. Park the machine in the hydraulic oil level inspection position, stop the engine and check the oil level. If the oil level is low, refill the hydraulic oil.



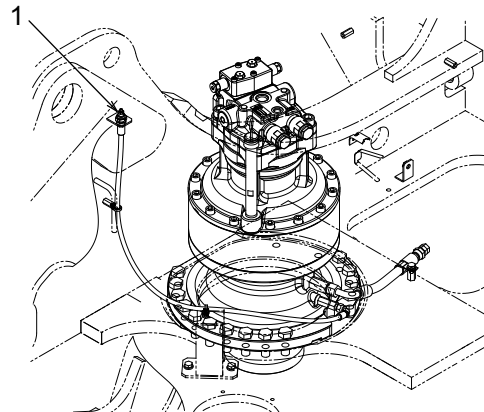
4.19.5 GREASING SWING REDUCTION UNIT



HANDLING IMMEDIATELY AFTER OPERATION

Immediately after operation, each part is hot and it may cause burns. Start working after the temperature goes down.

1. Move the machine to a level and firm place.
2. Put the bucket on the ground.
3. Stop the engine and move the pilot control shut-off lever to the "LOCKED" position.
4. Apply grease to grease nipple (1).
When the hose for greasing is connected, apply grease from the grease nipple at the end of the hose.



4.19.6 CHECKING GREASE IN SWING GREASE BATH

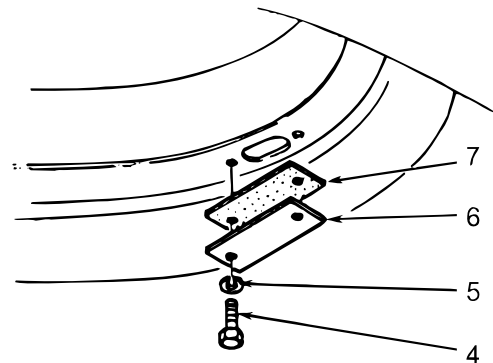
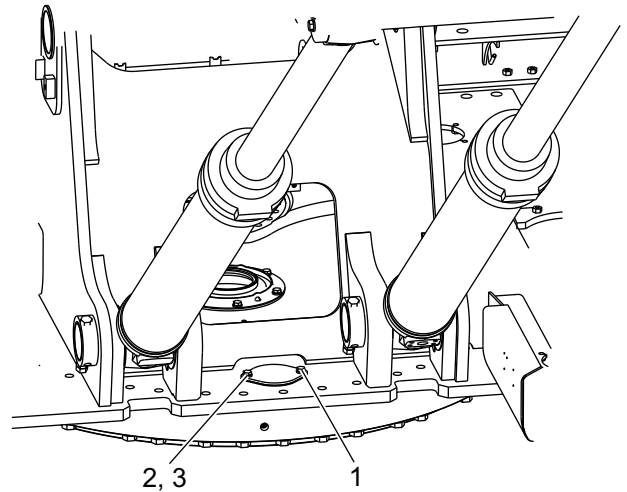
Notice

When grease quality deteriorates, it can cause damage on the pinion shaft of the swing reduction unit and the swing bearing.

When the swing bearings gears are damaged or the grease is deteriorated and needs to be replaced, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.

Because the upper structure needs to be disassembled to replace grease for the swing grease bath, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.

1. Loosen bolt (1) at the forward side of the upper structure, and remove cover (2) and packing (3) for inspection.
2. After inspection, replace with new packing (3), and after cleaning cover (2), apply Loctite #572 and then install it.
3. If water is deposited, loosen bolt (4) and spring washer (5) in the lower side of the lower frame, and remove cover (6) and packing (7) to drain the water. The grease may become clouded when mixed with a small amount of water; however, it should not cause trouble while the viscosity is high.



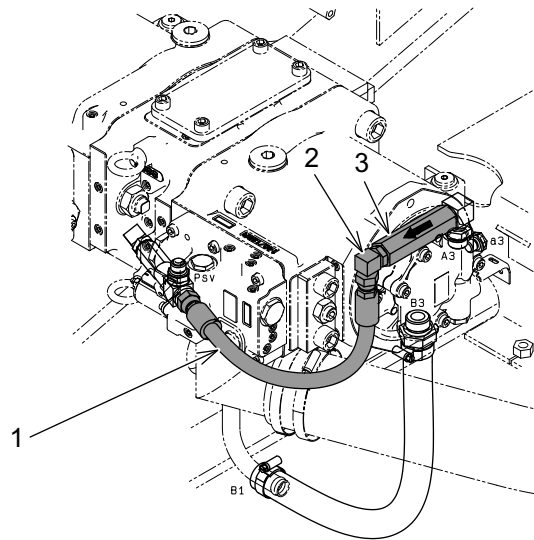
4.19.7 CLEANING PILOT LINE FILTER

CAUTION

Immediately after operation, hot hydraulic oil may spout and cause burns.
Wait until the oil temperature cools down before attempting to clean the pilot line filter.

Before performing the work, wait until the internal pressures of the hydraulic oil tank and the hydraulic system are released.

1. Open the side cover next to the pump and take out hose (1), connector (2) and line filter (3).
2. Clean line filter (3) with light oil and install it.

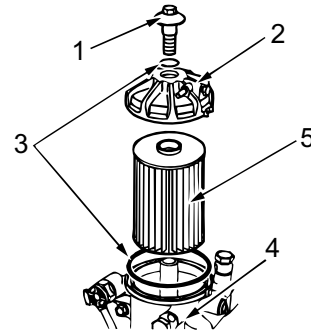


4.19.8 REPLACEMENT OF AIR SEPARATOR FILTER (FUEL FILTER) ELEMENT

CAUTION

- When draining the fuel, drain all fuel from inside the filter. When the element is replaced without draining all fuel, there is the possibility that unfiltered fuel remains in the filter and flows to the engine side.
- Prepare a container for catching dripped fuel from the filter that the fuel remains in the case.

1. Remove the center bolt (1), and remove the O-rings (3) (2 pcs.) and caps (2) from the fuel filter case (4).
2. Remove the element (5).
3. Remove any dust around the fuel filter case (4) inside and the element fitting point of the cap (2) inside.
4. Install a new element (5) in to the fuel filter case (4).



CAUTION

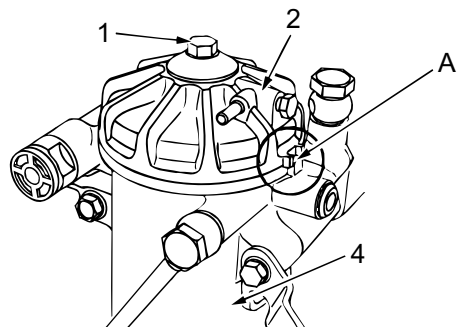
When the element is replaced without draining all fuel from the fuel filter case (4), unfiltered fuel remains in the fuel filter case; make sure that the filter case does not contain any remaining fuel.

5. Applying fuel to a new O-ring (3) and install them to the fuel filter case groove.

CAUTION

- Do not reuse the fuel filter element (5).
- As the O-ring (3) is included in the element kit, do not use an O-ring again after it has been removed once.

6. Align the match mark (A) and set the cap (2) to the fuel filter case (4) and tighten the center bolt (1). Tightening torque: 24.5 to 34.3N·m (18.1 to 25.3 lbf·ft)



CAUTION

- Be careful to prevent twisted damage of the O-ring (3).
- Make sure the O-ring (3) is fitted to the clamp face.
- Match the match mark (A) of the fuel filter cap at the fuel filter case.

7. Bleed the air from the fuel system.
Refer to "Bleeding Air from the Fuel System" in Chapter 4 for bleeding the air from the fuel system.

[4. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE]

Notice

Push the priming pump of main filter, and fill the fuel piping with fuel. And the air in the piping is removed.

4.20 5000 HOUR INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

Thoroughly read and understand "SAFETY PRECAUTIONS" of this manual before performing the inspection and maintenance.

Perform this section together with "EVERYDAY CHECK-UP and 50, 100, 120, 250, 500, 1000, and 2000 HOUR INSPECTION & MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES".

4.20.1 REPLACING HYDRAULIC OIL



HANDLING OF HYDRAULIC OIL TANK AND OIL

- The oil in the hydraulic oil tank is under high temperature and high pressure and it is dangerous. Before removing the cover, stop the engine first, remove the breather, and release the pressure from the tank.
- Immediately after engine operation, the oil is hot and it may cause burns. Wait until the oil temperature cools down before attempting to replace the hydraulic oil.

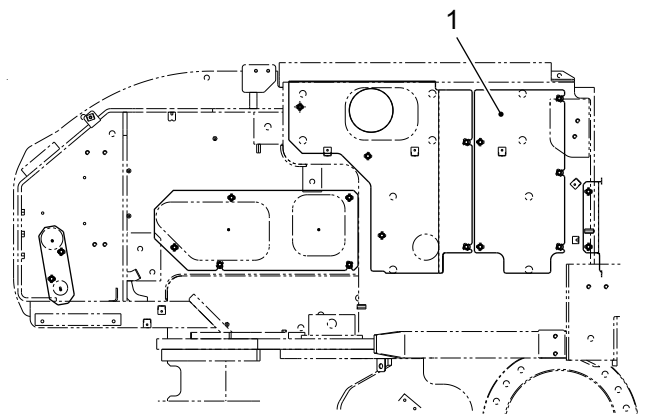
Notice

When the hydraulic breaker is installed, the deterioration of the hydraulic oil is faster than that of the normal bucket digging work. See "PERIODIC INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE OF NIBBLER (CRUSHER) AND BREAKER" in chapter 8 to maintain the hydraulic oil.

Notice

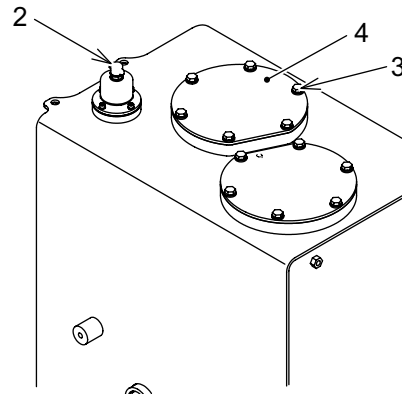
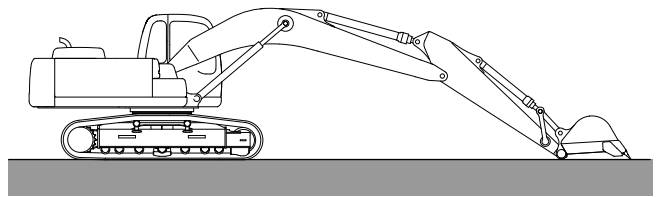
- Dispose of the drain waste oil properly as industrial waste.
- When using the hydraulic oil KW68, the oil should be replaced every 2000 hours.

1. Move the machine to a level and firm place.
2. Swing the upper structure so that under cover (1) on the bottom of hydraulic oil tank is positioned to the midpoint of right and left track shoes.



[4. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE]

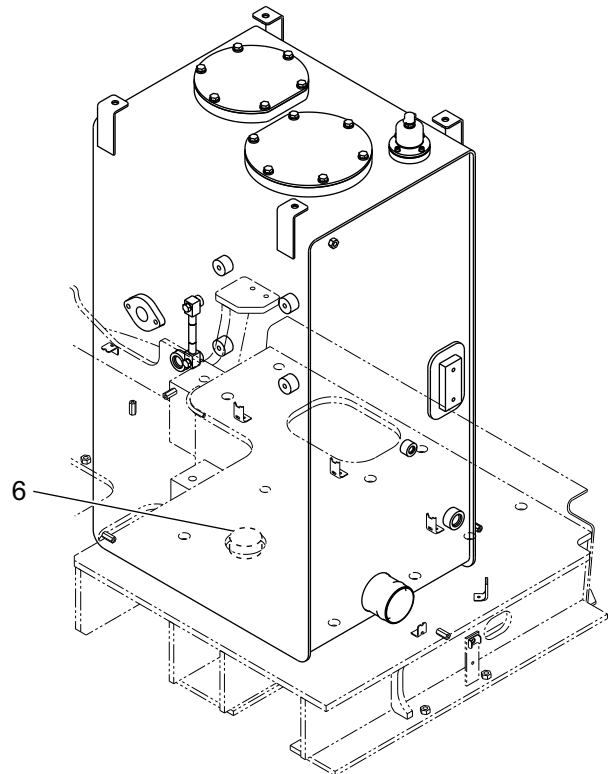
3. Retract the arm cylinder and bucket cylinder and place the bucket and dozer (if equipped) on the ground.
4. Stop the engine and move the pilot control shut-off lever to the "LOCKED" position.
5. Remove the under cover (1).
6. Clean the surface around the cover to keep foreign materials away from the hydraulic oil tank.
7. Remove breather cap (2) on the top of the hydraulic oil tank and keep pressing the valve until the pressure inside the hydraulic oil tank is released.
8. Loosen bolts (3) on the upper surface of the tank, and then remove cover (4).



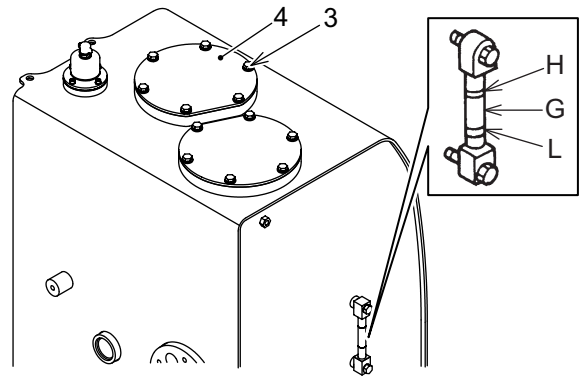
Notice

Do not drop bolts or others into the tank.

9. Place a container for drain oil under drain plug (6) on the bottom of the hydraulic oil tank.
10. Loosen drain plug (6) slowly and drain hydraulic oil completely.
11. Clean drain plug (6) and install it in place.
Tightening Torque: $108 \pm 10 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$ ($79.7 \pm 7.4 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$)



12. Refill hydraulic oil through filler port on the top of the hydraulic oil tank.
Pour the oil while checking the oil level with level gauge (G).
13. Attach filler port cover (4) with six bolts (3).
Tightening torque: $46.5 \pm 4.6 \text{ N} \cdot \text{m}$ ($34.3 \pm 3.4 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$)
14. Install the under cover (1).
15. Start the engine, run it at low idle for several (5 to 7) minutes. After that, extend and retract each cylinder and swing the machine.
16. Set the machine in the hydraulic oil level inspection again, stop the engine and check the oil level. If the oil level is low, refill the hydraulic oil.



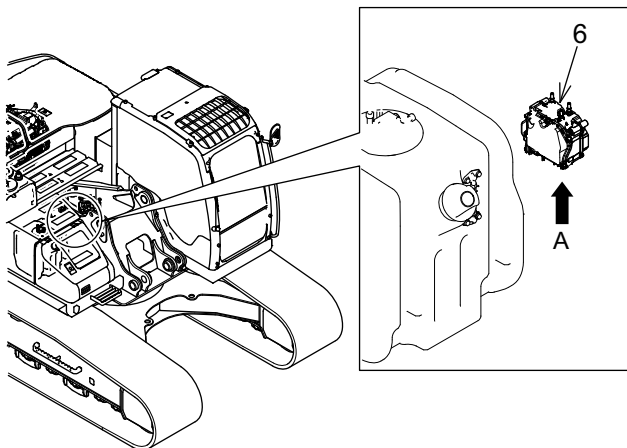
4.20.2 REPLACING DEF/AdBlue SUPPLY MODULE FILTER

CAUTION

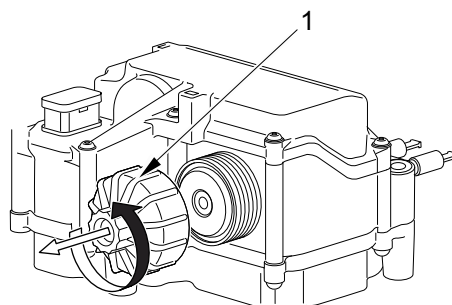
- Do not reuse the filter element, O-ring and gasket.
- When replacing the O-ring or gasket, check the fitting condition at the mounting surface to prevent it from being twisted and broken.

Contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer for the replacement of DEF/AdBlue supply module filter.
Before replacing the filter, stop the engine and wait about 30 minutes.

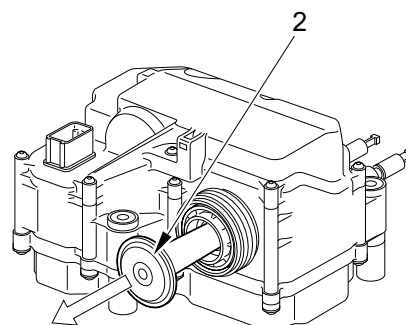
1. DEF/AdBlue supply pump (6) is mounted to the upper frame on the right side of the machine.
A: Filter side
2. When there is a cover around the pump, remove it.
3. When replacing the filter, DEF/AdBlue may spill. Prepare a container to catch DEF/AdBlue under pump (6) and cloth to wipe off DEF/AdBlue.



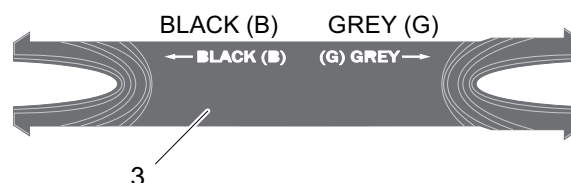
4. Turn filter cover (1) of the pump to remove it.
Wrench size: 27 mm (1.063 inch)



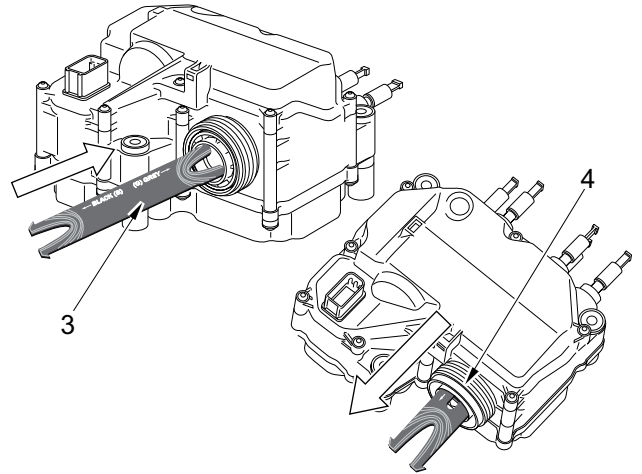
5. Remove equalizing filter (2).



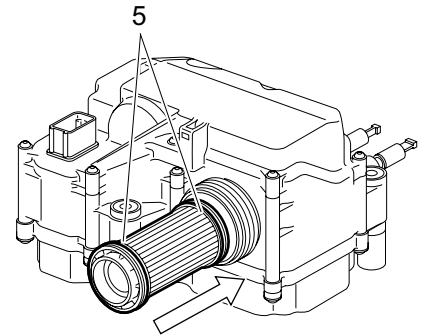
6. Use removing tool (3) to replace the filter.



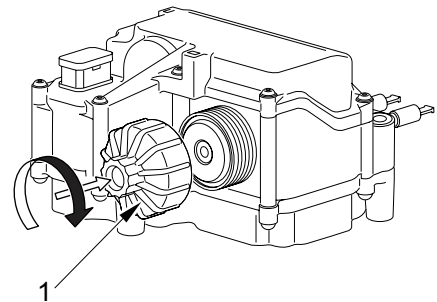
7. Insert the black side of removing tool (3), hook it to filter (4) and take out filter (4).



8. Apply DEF/AdBlue slightly to new O-ring (5) and attach it on new filter (4). Follow with the precautions of DEF/AdBlue handling.
9. Attach filter (4) and equalizing filter (2) to pump (6).
10. Remove the dirt and foreign materials from the mounting surfaces of filter cover (3) and the supply module.



11. Attach filter cover (1) with a wrench.
Tightening Torque: 20 to 25 N·m (15 to 18 lbf·ft)
12. When the cover was removed, attach it in place.



CAUTION

After the operation, make sure that DEF/AdBlue is not leaking from the area around the DEF/AdBlue supply module, DEF/AdBlue tank, DEF/AdBlue piping and muffler.

5. TRANSPORTATION

5.1 TRANSPORTATION

When transporting the machine, observe the transportation related regulations and transport the machine dealer.

5.1.1 STRICTLY OBSERVE TRANSPORTATION RELATED LAWS AND REGULATIONS

When performing transportation, contact the nearest KOBELCO branch or sales office.

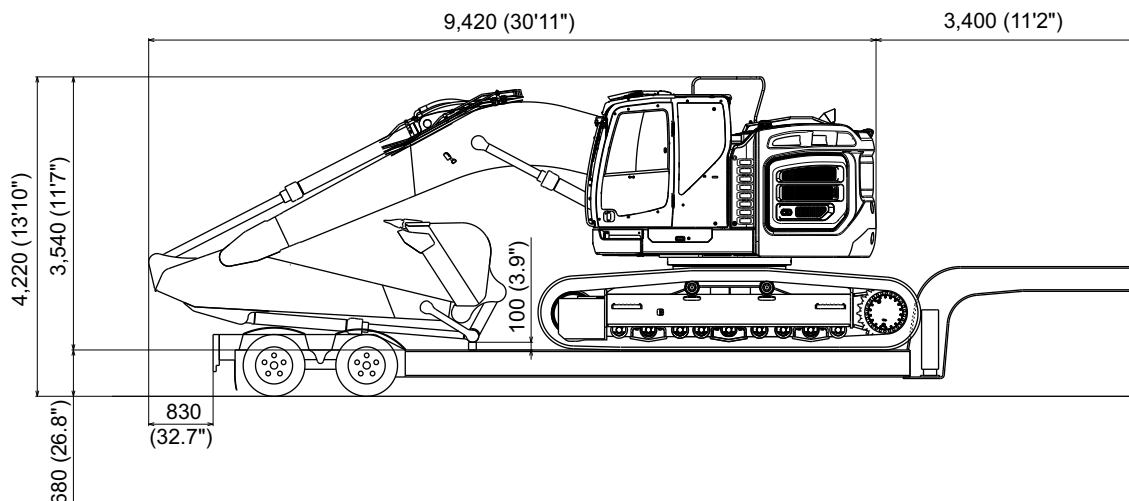
- When transporting this machine with a trailer, etc., consider the width, height, length and mass of the machine. The transportation mass and dimension vary depending on the type of shoe and the specifications of the attachment.
- Refer to mass and dimensions described in "SPECIFICATIONS" and "OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT" in this manual to select the proper transportation method.
- Perform a previous inspection on the route such as limitations on width, height and mass (weight) of vehicles and traffic regulations, etc.



CONTROL PATTERNS OF THE CONTROL LEVERS

Before operation, be sure to pay attention to the surroundings and operate each control lever slowly and confirm that each motion is in accordance with the control pattern indicated on the label. When it is not matched, replace the label with the proper label matching with the actual motion.

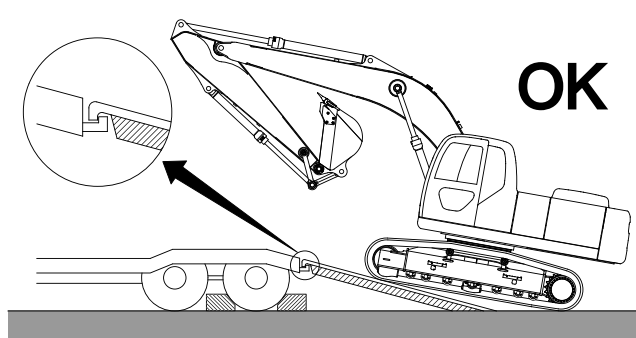
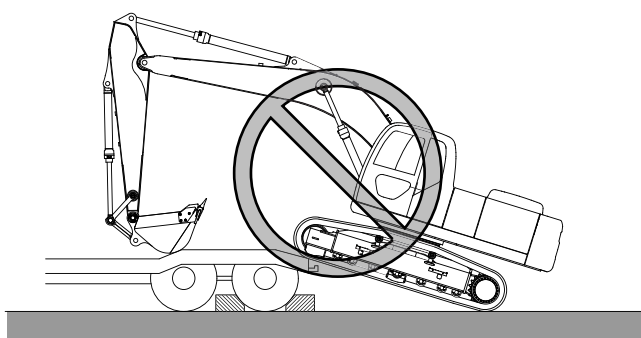
In addition, see "PRECAUTIONS FOR OPERATIONS" in Chapter 1 for precautions regarding operations.



The dimensions and weight are 3.10 m (10'2") for the arm, 1.2 m³(1.57 cu·yd) bucket, and 6.20m (20'4") boom specification.

MODEL	OPERATING MASS			
	600 mm (23.6")	700 mm (27.6")	800 mm (31.5")	850 mm (33.5")
SK380SRLC	36,800 kg (81,100 lbs)	37,600 kg (82,900 lbs)	38,000 kg (83,800 lbs)	38,200 kg (84,200 lbs)

5.2 LOADING/UNLOADING THE MACHINE



WARNING

Loading/unloading the machine

- Load/unload the machine on a level and hard ground.
- Use ramps, platforms, and embankment with sufficient width, length, slope, rigidity, and strength.
- Remove mud and dirt of the undercarriage to prevent the machine from skidding on the ramp. In addition, remove any deposit on the ramp including water, snow, ice, grease, and oil.
- When loading or unloading the machine, set engine speed to LOW and travel speed select switch to LOW (1st) speed.
- Do not use the attachment for loading and unloading the machine to avoid danger.
- Use only the travel levers when the machine is on ramps.
- When going over the ramp top to/from a trailer, the machine may lose balance due to an abrupt change in the center of gravity. Be sure to travel slowly.
- Be sure to turn the auto acceleration switch to the "OFF" position. When the machine is operated with the auto acceleration turned to the "ON" position, the engine speed may change abruptly.
- Do not make a turn on the ramp to avoid tipping. Make a turn after returning to the ground or the trailer bed.
- When the machine is going down a slope or being loaded on or unloaded from the trailer, set the LOW (1st)/HIGH (2nd) travel speed select switch to LOW.

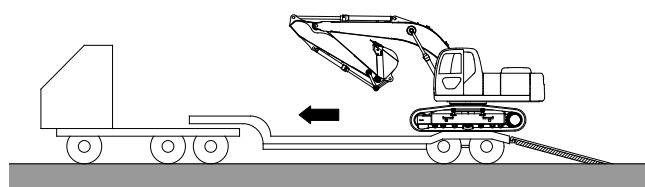
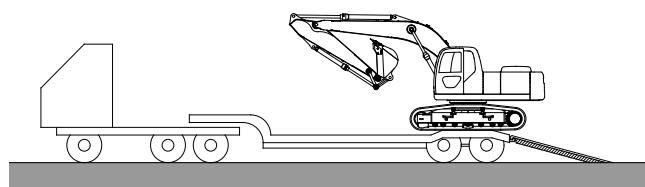
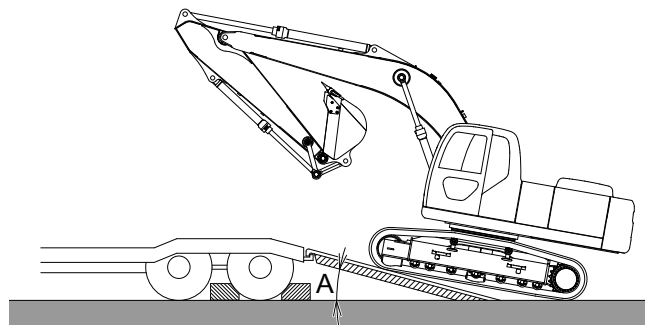
Since the LOW (1st)/HIGH (2nd) automatic travel speed select switching system automatically changes the traveling speed, it may adversely affect machine control when the machine is going down a slope or being loaded on or unloaded from the trailer. This abrupt change of machine control may cause severe accidents.

5.2.1 LOADING

Use the following procedure.

WHEN USING A RAMP

1. Chock the trailer tires to prevent the trailer from moving.
2. Use a ramp with sufficient length, width, strength and gradient. Install the ramp so its angle (A) to the ground is 15 degrees or less.
3. Start the engine, and move down the control lock lever to the "UNLOCKED" position.
4. On the switch panel on the gauge cluster, press the travel speed select switch to set it to the LOW (1st) speed.
5. Make sure the machine position is aligned to the ramp before going up on the ramp, raise the dozer (if installed), and travel slowly.

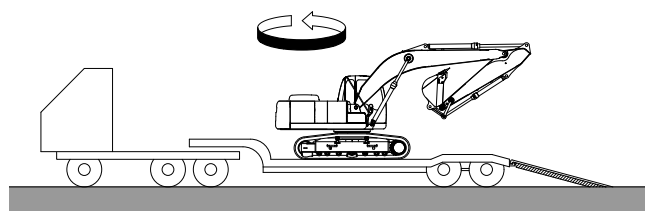


CAUTION

When this machine is traveling up or down the ramp, fold the arm and attachment and raise the boom to avoid interference with the ramp or trailer bed, as shown in the figure.

When the clearance between the ramp or the trailer bed is insufficient, the machine may abruptly lean to one side when it goes over the ramp top, and strike its arm or bucket cylinder against the trailer bed, ramp, or ground, resulting in damage to the cylinder.

6. When the machine comes to the required position, slowly swing the upper structure 180 degrees.
7. Lower the attachment/equipment slowly.
8. Move the control lock lever to the "LOCKED" position.
9. Perform cool-down operation with the engine in the low idle position, and then stop the engine and remove the starter key.

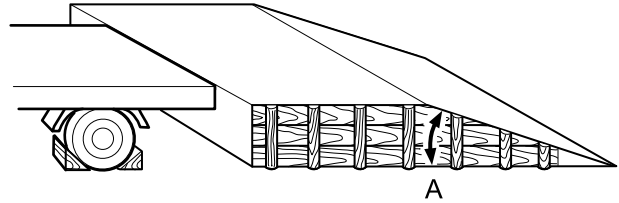


[5. TRANSPORTATION]

10. Lock the lock devices such as guards and doors.

WHEN USING PLATFORM OR EMBANKMENT

1. Make the embankment wide enough to the machine width. The angle (A) of the platform or embankment to the ground should be 15 degrees or less.
2. Check that the embankment is sufficiently sturdy to hold the machine weight.
3. The surface of the platform or embankment must be level to that of the trailer bed.
4. Park the trailer properly at the required position.



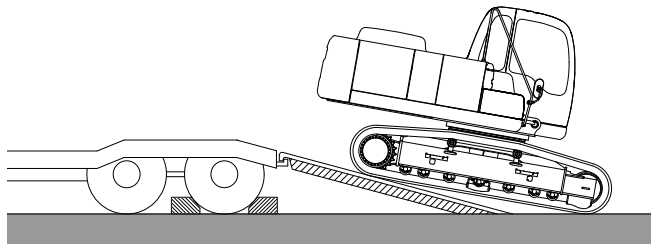
LOADING A MACHINE WITHOUT ATTACHMENT/EQUIPMENT



DO NOT SWING

Do not swing the machine during loading and unloading the machine.
It may cause the machine to tip/roll over to the counterweight side.

- When loading a machine without an attachment/equipment, adjust the travel direction so the counterweight comes to the top of the slope.



5.2.2 FIXING THE MACHINE

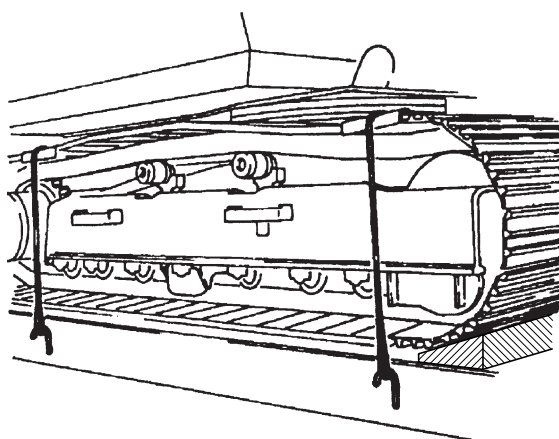
Notice

- Retract the radio antenna in before transportation. In addition, remove the mirrors if required. Store the removed parts securely in the cab.
- Place a wood block under the bucket (attachment) link to avoid contacting the ground and protect the bucket cylinder from being damaged during transportation.

After loading the machine on the required position, fix the machine by the following procedures.

CRAWLER

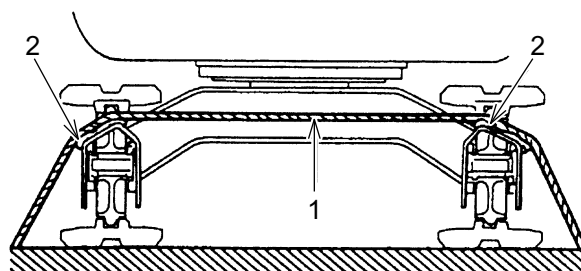
1. Check that all guards and doors are locked.
2. Chock the front and rear of the crawlers and fix the machine securely with wire ropes of appropriate strength to prevent the body from moving back and forth or rolling by vibration of the trailer. In addition, secure individual parts and removed parts securely on the trailer.



RUBBER CRAWLER AND PAD SHOE

1. Check that all guards and doors are locked.
2. Chock the front and rear of the crawlers and fix the machine securely with wire ropes of appropriate strength to prevent the body from moving back and forth or rolling by the vibration of the trailer. In addition, secure individual parts and removed parts securely on the trailer.

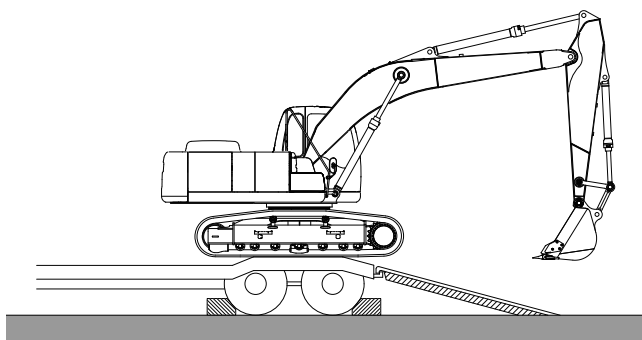
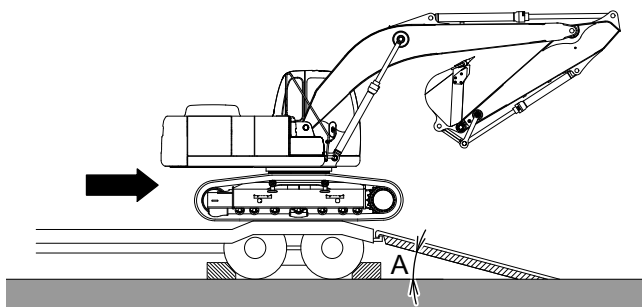
Do not directly apply the wire rope (1) on the rubber crawler or the pad shoe. Place pads (2) (such as soft cloth) at the left and right of the crawler frame to fix the rope securely on the loading platform of the truck.



5.2.3 UNLOADING

Use the following procedure.

1. Chock the trailer tires to prevent the trailer from moving.
2. Use ramps with sufficient length, width, strength and gradient. Attach the ramps so its angle (A) to the ground is 15 degrees or less.
3. Remove chains or wire ropes that have been fixing the machine.
4. Start the engine, and move down the pilot control shut-off lever to the "UNLOCKED" position.
5. On the switch box, press the travel speed select switch to set it to the LOW (1st) speed.
6. Raise the boom slowly.
7. Raise the attachment. With the arm retracted to under the boom, raise the dozer (if equipped) and travel slowly.
8. Level the machine at the rear end of the trailer and stop temporarily.
9. Make sure the machine position is aligned parallel to the ramps, and adjust the angle between the arm and boom to 80 to 100 degrees.

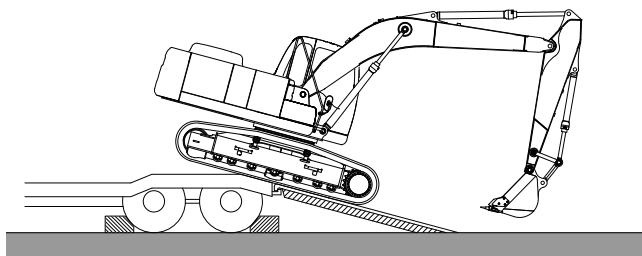


CAUTION

When this machine is traveling up or down the ramp, fold the arm and attachment and raise the boom to avoid interference with the ramp or trailer bed, as shown in the figure.

When the clearance between the ramp or the trailer bed is insufficient, the machine may abruptly lean to one side when it goes over the ramp top, and strike its arm or bucket cylinder against the trailer bed, ramp, or ground, resulting in damage to the cylinder.

10. Until the machine completely passes through the ramps, travel down the ramps slowly with moving the boom and the arm slowly to keep the bucket close to the ground so that it can be lowered to the ground in an emergency.
11. After passing through the ramps, slowly swing the upper structure 180 degrees to take the front traveling position (so the travel reduction unit comes to the rear).

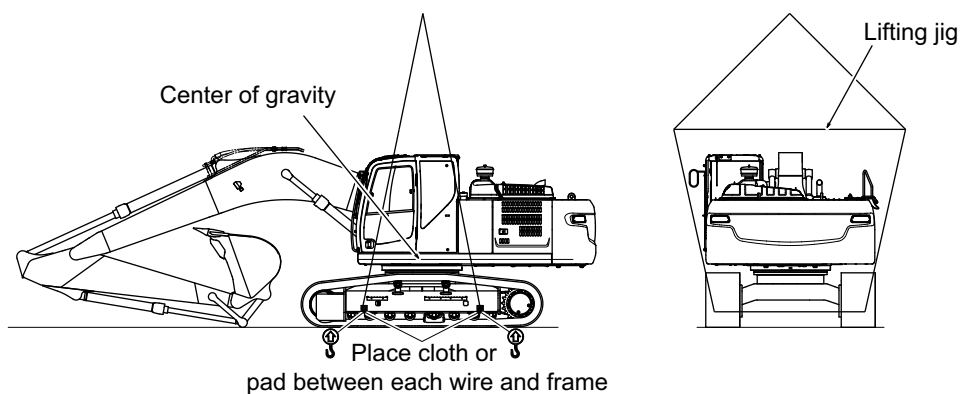


5.3 MACHINE LIFTING



MACHINE LIFTING

- Wire ropes or other lifting tools used should have no damage nor deterioration, but have sufficient strength and length.
- With improper method of lifting and placing wire ropes, the lifted machine may move, causing personal injury or damage to the machine.
- Be careful not to apply a load suddenly to the wire ropes and the lifting tools.
- When lifting the machine, evacuate from the areas surrounding the machine. At the time of lifting, unexpected movement of the machine can occur.
- During the machine lifting operation, keep away from the area around and under the machine.
- When lifting the machine as a group work, surely send and receive signals to each other.
- Do not lift the machine with a worker on it.
- Keep the machine horizontal when lifting it.



Notice

- This lifting procedures are applicable for machines in a standard specification.
In the actual lifting operation, the weight and center of gravity of the machine as well as the strength of the wire ropes and sling jigs must be checked. For details, contact KOBELCO or your KOBELCO authorized dealer.
- Use wire ropes and sling jigs with a sufficient length to avoid contact with the machine during the lifting operation.
- When necessary, cover the wire ropes with a cloth or pad to protect the machine body from damage.

5.3.1 LIFTING PROCEDURES

1. Move the machine to a level place.
2. Fully extend the arm cylinder and the bucket cylinder of the attachment/equipment, and lower the boom to place the attachment/equipment on the ground.
3. Align the orientation of the cab and the crawlers in parallel.
4. Move the pilot control shut-off lever to the "LOCKED" position, stop the engine, and pull out the starter key.
5. Close the front window and the window glasses of the cab, the cab door, the left and right side doors, and the engine hood and then lock them.
6. Pass the wire ropes through the spaces between the first lower roller and the second lower roller at the front and rear sides of the machine.
7. Adjust the sling angle of the wire rope to 20 to 30 degrees and then lift the machine.
8. Lift the machine and after the machine leaves the ground, stop the movement, wait until the machine is stabilized, and then slowly lift up the machine.

5.4 INSTALLING AND REMOVING MIRROR

When the machine is shipped from a factory, the mirrors are not installed.

When removing and installing the mirrors, see “ADJUSTMENT OF MIRRORS” in Chapter 3.

5.5 TOWING THE MACHINE

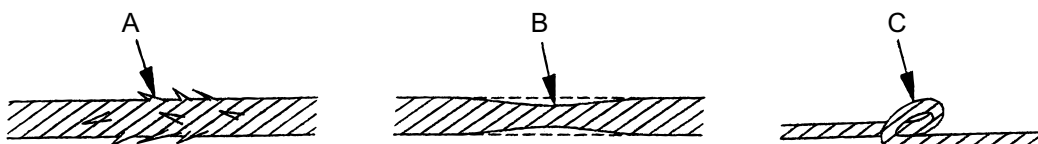


READ THE OPERATOR'S MANUAL

Read, understand and follow the safety messages and instructions in this manual. If these safety messages are not followed, serious injury or death could occur.

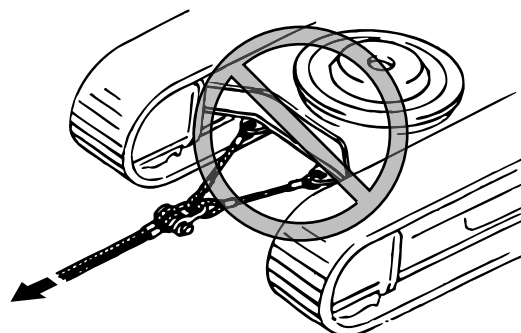
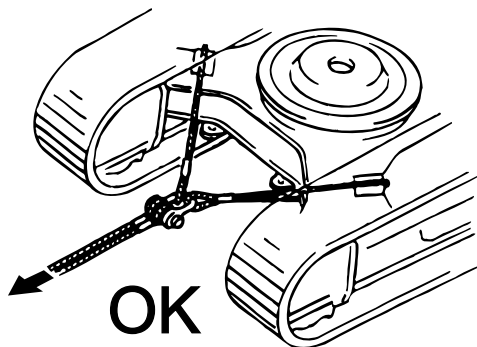
To prevent serious injury or death from improper towing methods.

- Always wear leather gloves when handling wire rope or chains.
- The allowable force of the crawler frame is the 100 % load of the machine total weight.
- Check the wire rope or chains to be used for towing is strong enough to tow the weight of your machine.
- Never use a wire rope which has cut strands (A), reduced diameter (B), kinks (C) or other visible damage or the wire rope may break while towing.
- Never tow the machine across a slope.
- Never stand between the towing machine and the machine or object that is being towed.
- To prevent damage to the wire rope or chains, place pads between the wire rope or chains and edges of the lower frame.
- Do not shock load the wire rope or chains. Tow slowly and avoid sudden load changes to the wire rope or chains.
- Shackles must be used for towing.



5.5.1 TOWING METHOD OF THE MACHINE

- Only tow the machine if absolutely necessary, e.g. moving the machine to a safe location for repair.
- If the machine cannot travel under its own power, attach wire rope or chains that are strong enough to tow your machine to the positions on the lower frame as shown. Never use the lower frame holes for towing. Then tow the machine using another machine.
- Keep the wire rope or chains level and keep both machines in a straight line when towing as shown in the figure.
- In case of towing needing to disengage the travel motor brakes, chock both track crawlers securely to prevent the machine from moving uncontrollably before disengaging the travel motor brakes.



6. SPECIFICATION

6.1 GENERAL SPECIFICATIONS

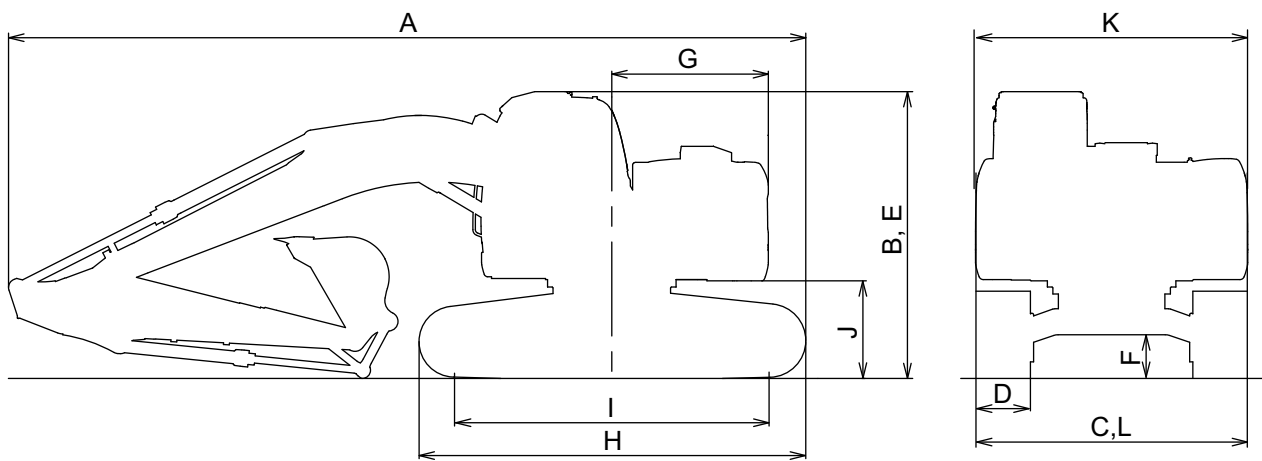
6.1.1 SK380SRLC

	Item		Unit	SK380SRLC
	Operating mass		kg (lb)	36,800 (81,100)
	Bucket capacity		m ³ (cu·yd)	1.20 (1.57)
	Engine name		—	HINO J08EYD diesel engine
	Engine rated power	With fan	kW/min ⁻¹	188 / 2,100
		Without fan		200 / 2,100
A	Overall length		mm (ft.in.)	9,980 (32'9")
B	Overall height		mm (ft.in.)	3,530 (11'7")
C	Overall width		mm (ft.in.)	3,190 (10'6")
D	Track shoe width (Grouser shoe)		mm (inch)	600 (23.6")
E	Cab height		mm (ft.in.)	3,350 (10'12")
F	Minimum ground clearance (excluding lug height)		mm (inch)	500 (7.7")
G	Tail swing radius		mm (ft.in.)	1,900 (6'3")
H	Crawler overall length		mm (ft.in.)	4,960 (16'3")
I	Tumbler center distance		mm (ft.in.)	4,050 (13'3")
J	Clearance height under upper structure (excluding lug height)		mm (ft.in.)	1,160 (3'10")
K	Overall width of upper structure		mm (ft.in.)	3,180 (10'5")
L	Crawler overall width		mm (ft.in.)	3,190 (10'6")
	Ground contact pressure		kPa(psi)	69 (10.0)
	Swing speed		min ⁻¹ (rpm)	8.4
	Travel speed (low/high)		km/h(mph)	2.8 / 4.6 (1.7 / 2.9)
	Gradeability		% (deg)	70 (35)

Notice

General specifications indicate the specifications of standard machine with the 6.20m (20'4") boom and the 3.10m (10'2") arm.

Bucket capacity is indicated by ISO.



6.2 SHOE TYPES AND USES

Notice

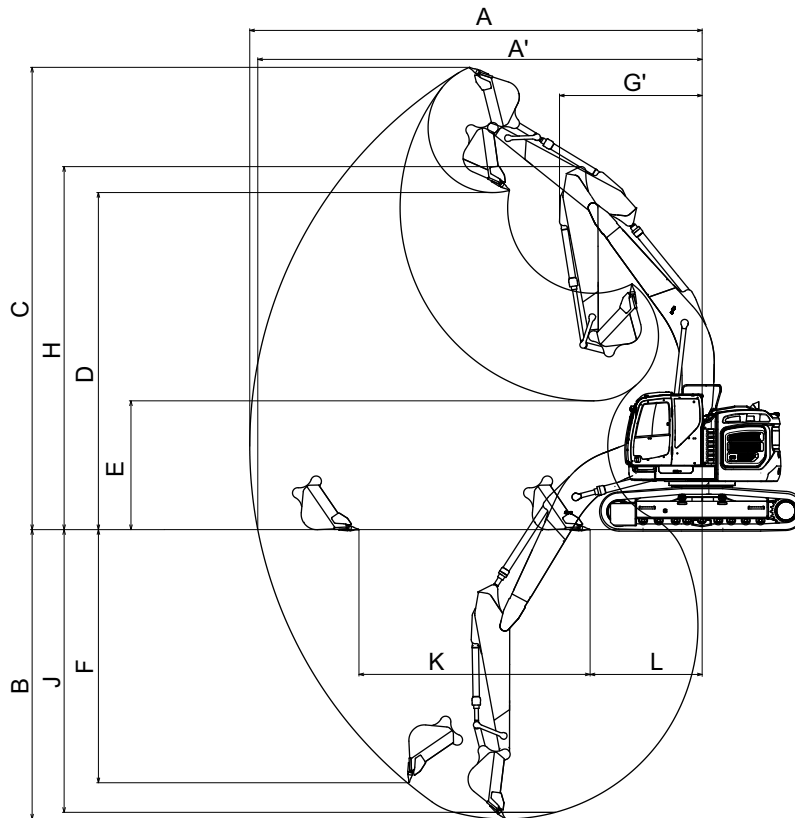
- Never use the shoes other than the grouser shoe of 600mm (23.6") in barren (a field with a lots of rocks and gravel).
Traveling and digging work in barren could cause bent shoes and loose shoe bolts and may also damage other travel system components (link, roller, etc.).
- The attachment is with a 3.10m (10'2") arm and a 1.20m³(1.57cu·yd)(heaped) bucket.
- The dimensions marked with * do not include height of shoe lug.

6.2.1 SK380SRLC

Type		Grouser shoe			
		600 (23.6")	700 (27.6")	800 (31.5")	850 (33.5")
Use		For ordinary soil	For soft soil	For soft soil	For soft soil
		(Option)	(Option)	(Option)	(Standard)
Body specification	Operating mass kg (lb)	36,800 (81,100)	37,600 (82,900)	38,000 (83,800)	38,200 (84,200)
	Machine mass kg (lb)	29,400 (64,800)	30,200 (66,600)	30,700 (67,700)	30,900 (68,100)
	Handrail height mm (ft-in)	3,530 (11'7")	←	←	←
	*Minimum ground clearance mm (inch)	500 (19.7)	←	←	←
	Crawler overall length mm (ft-in)	4,960 (16.3)	←	←	←
	Crawler overall width mm (ft-in)	3,190 (10'6")	3,290 (10'10")	3,390 (11'1")	3,440 (11'5")
	Ground contact pressure kPa (psi)	69 (10.0)	60 (8.7)	53 (7.7)	51 (7.4)

6.3 WORKING RANGES

6.3.1 BACKHOE ATTACHMENT



Types of Attachment		3.10m(10'2") Standard Arm 1.20m ³ (1.57 cu-yd) Bucket
Item		
A	Maximum digging reach	10,930 (35'10")
A'	Maximum reach at ground reference plane	10,740 (35'3")
※B	Maximum digging depth	6,990 (22'11")
※C	Maximum height of cutting edge	11,170 (36'8")
※D	Maximum dumping height	8,150 (26'9")
※E	Minimum dumping height	3,110 (10'2")
※F	Vertical digging depth	6,110 (20'1")
G	Front minimum swing radius	3,450 (11'4")
G'	Front minimum swing length	3,450 (11'4")
※H	Height at minimum swing radius	8,770 (28'9")
※J	Eight feet level digging depth	6,830 (22'5")
K	Horizontal digging stroke at ground level	Stroke 5,590 (18'4")
L		At minimum 2,710 (8'11")

Notice

The dimensions marked with * do not include height of shoe lug.

6.4 ATTACHMENT TYPE AND COMBINATION

6.4.1 FRONT VARIATION

- When a bucket with large capacity is used, it should be used in combination with a short arm so that the machine is stabilized and excessive load to the front part and the cylinders can be avoided.
 - When a long boom or arm is used, it should be used in combination with a bucket with small capacity.
-



INTERFERENCE BY FRONT ATTACHMENT

Check clearance between the front attachment and the operator's station and other parts of the machine before starting operation because a certain kinds of front attachment and combination of the options installed on the base machine may cause the front attachment to interfere with the operator's station or other parts of the machine.

Notice

- Some installed attachments may cause failures of this machine or the attachment/equipment, voiding the manufacturer's warranty.
Contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer for the attachment to be installed.
 - Before using an inversely installed bucket, check that it does not interfere with the arm because interference can occur during operation and cause damage.
-

7. MACHINE OPERATION MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

7.1 MACHINE OPERATION MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

- Machine Operation Management System is the system that manages information, such as the operating information and failure of the hydraulic excavator.
- To use this system, communication contract is required. Consult your KOBELCO authorized dealer for the contract.



ABOUT DISASSEMBLY AND REPAIR

Never disassemble or repair the communication controller or transceiving antenna of this system. Do not pinch the cable or pull it by force and damage it. This may cause a failure or fire of the machine.



- Electromagnetic waves generated from the components of this system may adversely affect the medical electric devices, such as cardiac pacemaker device.
When using medical electric devices while operating the machine, use extreme caution and consult the manufacturers of the medical electric devices in advance.
 - Do not spill water over the cable and the components of this system. This may cause a failure of the machine.
-

Notice

- Installation and removal of the components and the cable of this system is performed by your KOBELCO authorized dealer.
 - The communication controller of this system does not require inspection and operation.
-

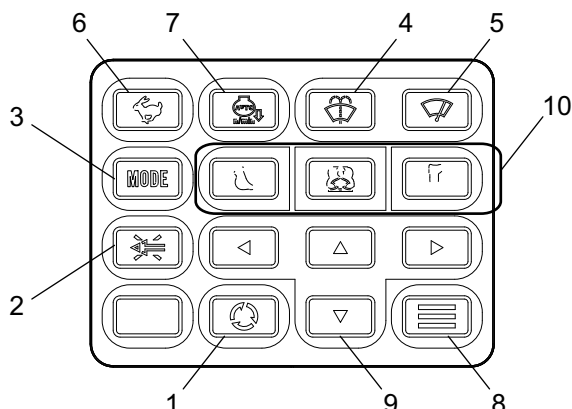
Notice

- Because this system uses wireless signals, it cannot be used in a place where no radio wave reaches (in the mountains, inside a building, in a tunnel, etc.), in a place of weak radio wave, or outside the communication area. When making the contract, check the communication area with your KOBELCO authorized dealer.
 - This system consumes very little electricity even when the starter switch is OFF (turned off).
For a long term storage of the machine, see "PRECAUTIONS FOR LONG-TERM STORAGE" in Chapter 3.
 - The battery of the communication controller is consumables. Battery life may vary depending on the use environment. However, it should be replaced regularly approximately once every year.
-

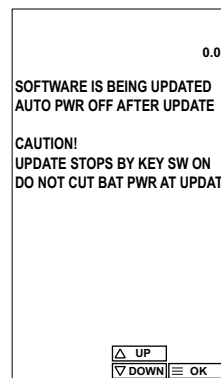
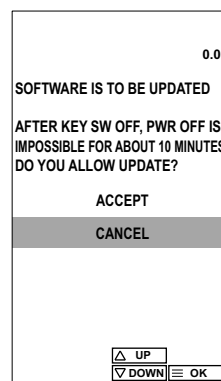
7.2 REMOTE DOWNLOAD SYSTEM

This system sometimes automatically renews (downloads) the software of the controller in this machine. At that time, the instruction will appear on the gauge cluster, so that operate the switch panel of the gauge cluster.

- (1) Screen Change Switch
- (2) Buzzer Stop Switch
- (3) Work Mode Select Switch
- (4) Washer Switch
- (5) Wiper Switch
- (6) Travel Speed Select Switch
- (7) Auto Acceleration Switch
- (8) Menu Switch
- (9) Arrow Switch
- (10) Attachment Mode Select Switch



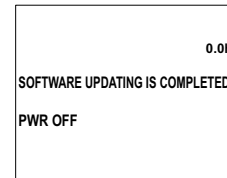
1. When the renewal of the software becomes possible, turn the starter switch to the "ON" position, or turn it to the "START" position and start the engine, then the following selection screen appears on the gauge cluster.
2. Using the up and down arrow switches (9), move the cursor to "ACCEPT".
3. Press "menu switch" (8) to set the renewal. (At this time, the renewal of the software does not start)
4. Then the screen returns to the normal screen, so that continue the machine operation.
5. Then, turn the starter key to the "OFF" position to display the following screen on the gauge cluster, and then the renewal of the software starts. It takes almost 10 minutes for the renewal.



CAUTION

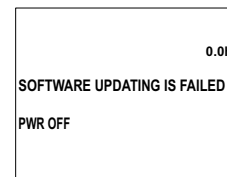
During the renewal of the software, do not turn OFF the battery power-off switch or remove the battery terminals. If the battery power is shut off during the renewal, it can damage the controller.

6. When the renewal is completed, the following screen appears on the gauge cluster and the power turns OFF.



Notice

- The renewal of the software is performed when required.
- The renewal of the software will not start when "CANCEL" is set, 30 seconds elapses with the selection screen displayed, or the pilot control shut-off lever is moved to the "UNLOCKED" position, even if the starter key is turned "OFF".
In that case, the next time the starter key turns "ON", the selection screen appears again.
- During the renewal of the software, if the starter key turns "ON", the renewal stops and the power turns OFF.
In that case, the next time the starter key turns "ON", the selection screen appears again.
- If a certain period has passed after the selection screen appeared because "CANCEL" has been set repeatedly, the selection screen stops to appear and the renewal of the software is not performed.
- The renewal of the software sometimes fails. At that time, the following screen appears on the gauge cluster and the power turns OFF.
In that case, the next time the starter key turns "ON", the selection screen appears again.
When the renewal of the software keeps failing, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.



8. OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

8.1 OPERATION OF HYDRAULIC NIBBLER (CRUSHER) AND BREAKER

8.1.1 SELECTION OF NIBBLER (CRUSHER) AND BREAKER

- When installing a nibbler (crusher) or a breaker, select a proper one for the machine stability and the working pressure.
Also, handle it by following precautions of handling specified by the manufacturer of the nibbler (crusher) or the breaker.
- Use of the unapproved attachment/equipment voids KOBELCO's liability for the machine.

8.1.2 INSTALLATION OF NIBBLER (CRUSHER) OR BREAKER

After installing the nibbler (crusher) or the breaker, check that there are no looseness of the installation portions, oil leakage from the piping, and abnormal sound before starting operation.

After removing the nibbler (crusher) and the breaker, plug the machine side piping at the arm end and the nibbler (crusher) or breaker piping to prevent foreign materials and water from entering the piping.

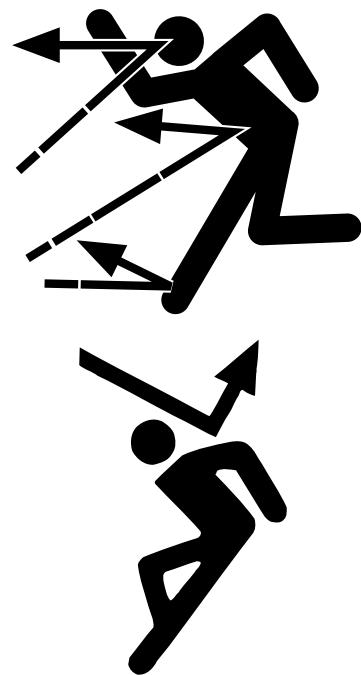
8.1.3 POTENTIAL HAZARDS WHEN OPERATING

PAY ATTENTION TO FALLING MATERIALS AND FLYING DEBRIS

Be sure to install the top guard and the front guard (option) when performing demolition, working in quarry or mining applications or any site in which falling materials and/or flying debris can be generated .

- If working with the hydraulic breaker or other attachments, be sure to install front guard.
- When performing work that may result in falling material and flying debris, keep people a safe distance away from the work area.
- Always close the front window and doors before operating.

As for installing the front guard (option), contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.



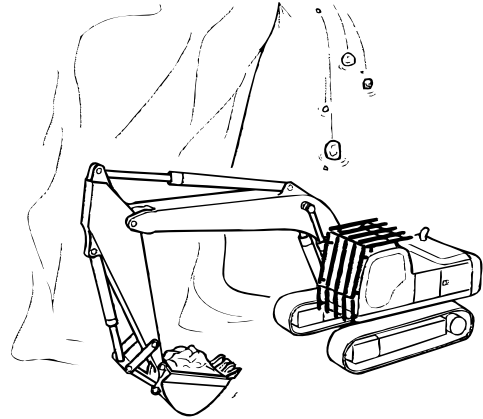
CHECK PROTECTIVE RELATED GUARDS AND EQUIPMENT

- Check that all protective related guards, covers, windows and mirrors are not damaged and are secure prior to operation. If any damage or other issue is found, do not use the machine until the protective related parts and equipment has been replaced. Never attempt to repair protective related parts and equipment.
- Understand how the protective systems and the protective related equipment protects you as the operator and others around the machine.
- Never remove protective related parts and equipment from the machine.

LIMITED PROTECTION FROM OBJECTS FALLING ON THE CAB

When operating near areas where landslides may occur or where rocks or other debris may fall, be aware that the cab and the guards installed provide limited protection for the operator and may not prevent serious injury or death.

- The top guard is designed according to ISO10262 and should not allow loads up to 227 kg (500 lbs.) dropped from a height of 5.22 m (17 ft.) to penetrate the cab. During building demolition or other activities, the load, the distance of the drop, or both could produce forces that exceed the limits of the top guard and cause serious injury or death.
- Never weld, drill or modify the top guard or other protective structures. Any modification could weaken the structural integrity of these protective structures, resulting in serious injury or death in case of collision, falling objects or landslides.
- Do not install any cab lifting device to the top guard or other protective structures.
- If an accident occurs, do not try to straighten or repair the top guard or other protective structures. Contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer for functional verification or replacement of any of the protective structures.



8.1.4 PRECAUTIONS IN USE OF BREAKER

DO NOT PRY AND BREAK FORCIBLY

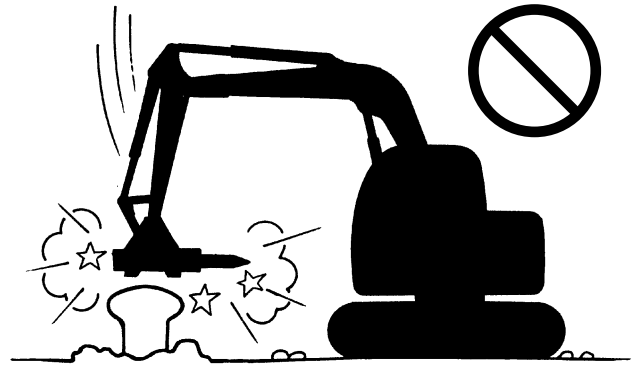
Do not break a rock or concrete by prying it with the breaker. Prying may cause damages to the boom, the arm, and the breaker.



DO NOT USE BREAKER FOR OTHER THAN INTENDED PURPOSE

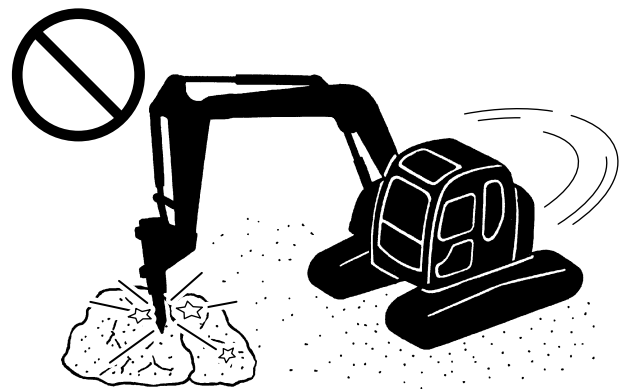
Do not break a rock or concrete by falling or hitting the breaker.

Hitting may cause damages to the boom, the arm, the breaker, and the base machine.



DO NOT MOVE DEBRIS

Do not use the breaker for moving debris and others. Especially, when pulling down rocks and others with the flank of the breaker by using the swinging force, it may cause damages to the boom, the arm, the breaker, and the base machine.

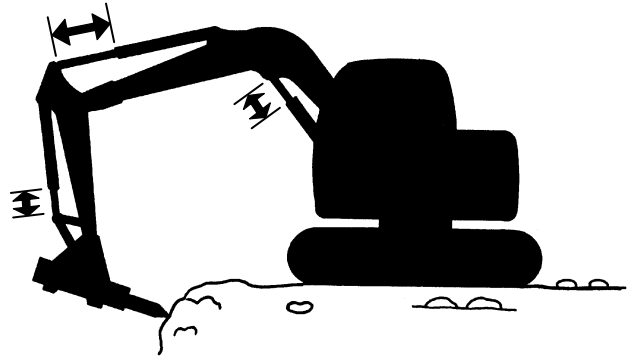


[8. OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT]

CYLINDER ROD AT STROKE END

Operate the cylinder rod with leaving some space to the stroke end.

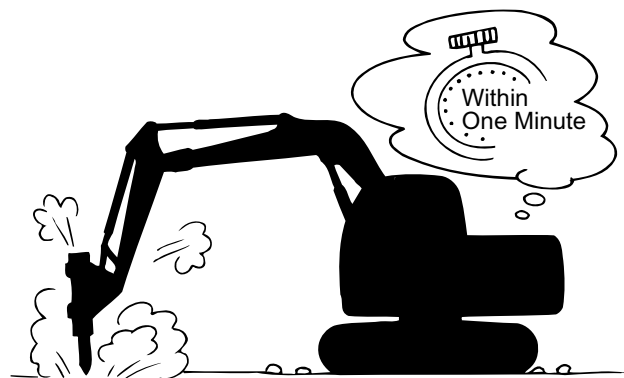
Operating the hydraulic cylinder at the stroke end during demolition work may cause excessive loads on the boom, the arm, and the base machine, resulting in damages.



CONTINUOUS USE FOR 1 MINUTE OR LONGER

If an object cannot be broken by hitting the same point for 1 minute or more, change the target point.

Using the breaker continuously causes increase of the hydraulic oil temperature or abnormal wear of the breaker chisel.



NEVER PERFORM LIFTING WORK

Never use the breaker for lifting work.

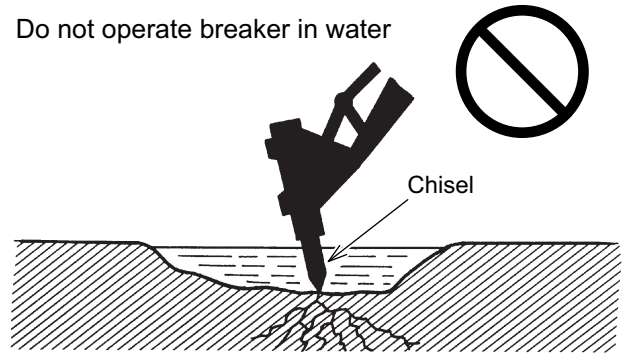


DO NOT OPERATE BREAKER IN WATER

Do not operate the breaker in water.

Working in the water can cause rust on the breaker and damage the sealed portions. Consequently, rust, dirt, and water may enter the hydraulic oil and damage the hydraulic components of the base machine.

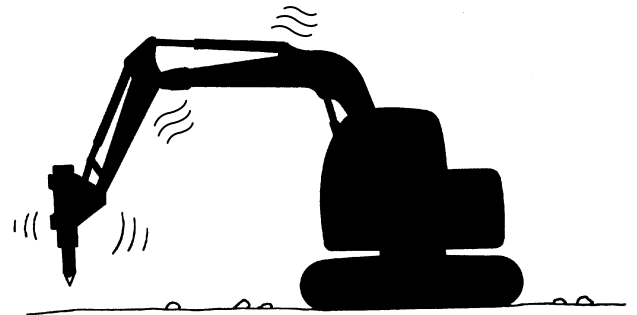
Do not operate breaker in water



STOP WORKING WHEN HOSE SWINGS

When the hydraulic hose swings abnormally during breaker work, stop the work and immediately contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.

If you continue working, it may cause damages to the hydraulic components and piping.



DO NOT OPERATE BREAKER WITHOUT WORK MATERIAL

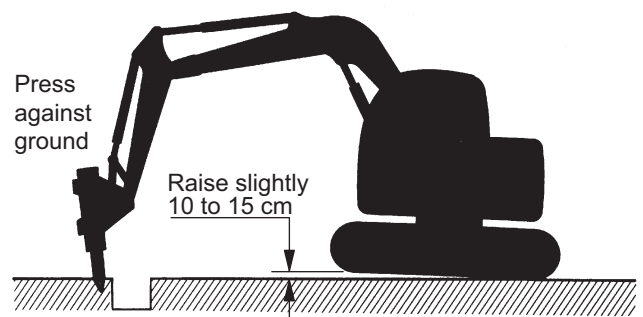
Do not operate the breaker without contact. Operation without material under the tool causes increase of the hydraulic oil temperature and damages to the breaker.



PAY ATTENTION TO LIFTING UP OF MACHINE

The lifting amount of the machine during breaker work shall be 10 to 15cm.

If the lifting amount is large, it can cause damages to the boom and the arm.

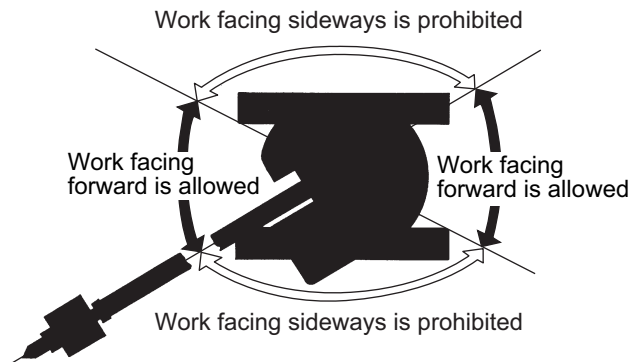


[8. OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT]

DO NOT WORK FACING SIDEWAYS

Do not operate the breaker when the machine is facing sideways.

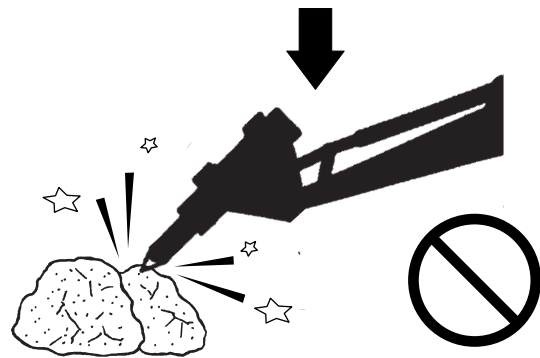
It will cause excessive loads on the travel system, resulting in bending of the shoe plates and oil leakage from the roller.



PAY ATTENTION TO DIRECTION OF BREAKER

The pushing direction of the breaker shall be in the same direction of the chisel axle. Apply the chisel perpendicularly to a surface to be broken during operation.

If you work in an unnatural posture, the sealed portions of the breaker may be damaged, causing foreign materials or water to enter the machine and resulting in damages to the hydraulic components.



DO NOT OPERATE BREAKER IN HORIZONTAL OR UPWARD DIRECTION

Do not operate the breaker in the horizontal or upward direction.

It will cause excessive loads on the boom, the arm and the base machine, resulting in damages.



PAY ATTENTION TO INTERFERENCE BETWEEN CHISEL AND BOOM

When the machine is in a position of holding the breaker inward, it may cause interference between the chisel and the boom. Be careful about operation.



8.1.5 PRECAUTIONS IN USE OF NIBBLER (CRUSHER)

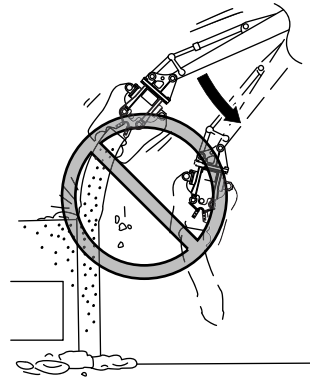
CAUTION

To protect the operator from flying debris and demolished structures, install the front guard and top guard on the cab before demolition.

DO NOT PRY OBJECT

Do not pry or pull down an object while holding it by the nibbler (crusher).

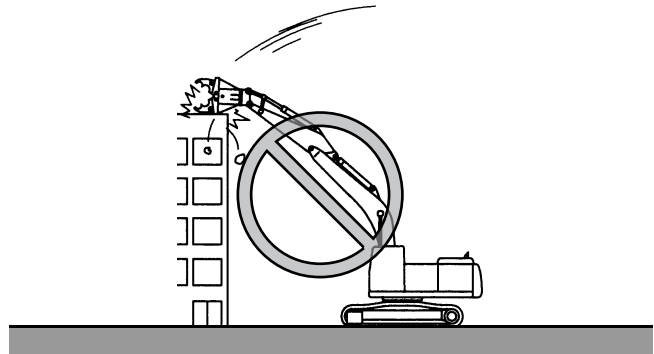
Prying may cause damages to the boom, the arm, and the nibbler (crusher).



DO NOT USE NIBBLER (CRUSHER) FOR OTHER THAN INTENDED PURPOSE

Do not drop or hit the nibbler (crusher) to an object.

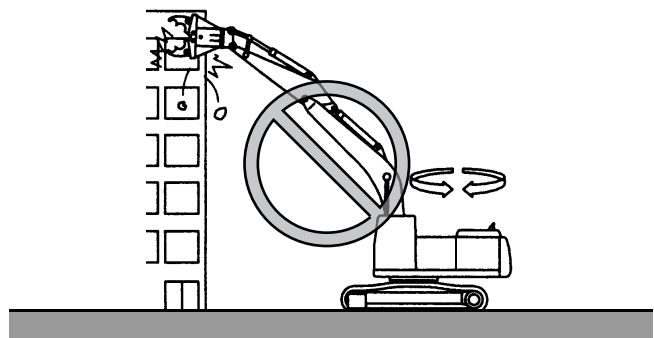
Hitting may damage the boom, the arm, the nibbler (crusher), and the base machine.



DO NOT SWING DURING NIBBLER (CRUSHER) WORK

Do not demolish or pull down an object by using the swinging force of the machine while holding the object by the nibbler (crusher).

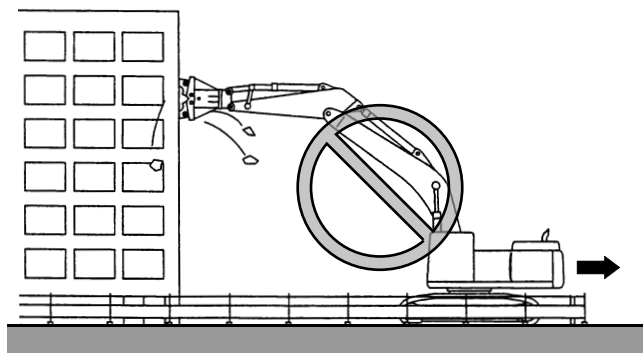
It may cause damages to the boom, the arm, the nibbler (crusher), and the base machine.



DO NOT TRAVEL DURING NIBBLER (CRUSHER) WORK

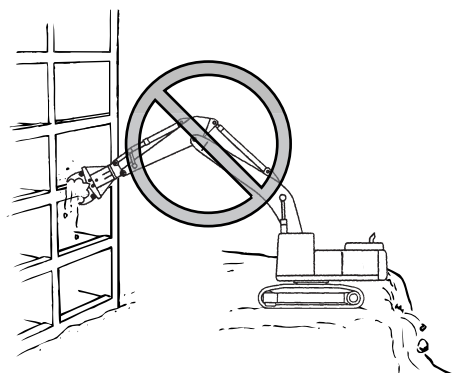
Do not demolish or pull down an object by traveling the machine while holding the object by the nibbler (crusher).

It may cause damages to the boom, the arm, the nibbler (crusher), and the base machine.

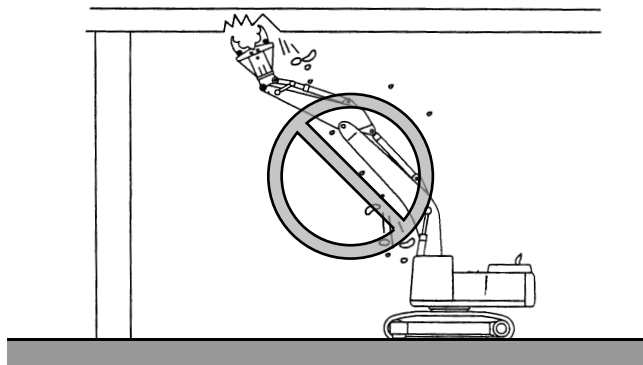
**DO NOT WORK ON UNSTABLE PLACE**

Do not perform work when the machine is on a weak ground or debris.

Working under unstable condition may cause the machine to tip over.

**WATCH OUT FOR FALLING OBJECTS OVERHEAD**

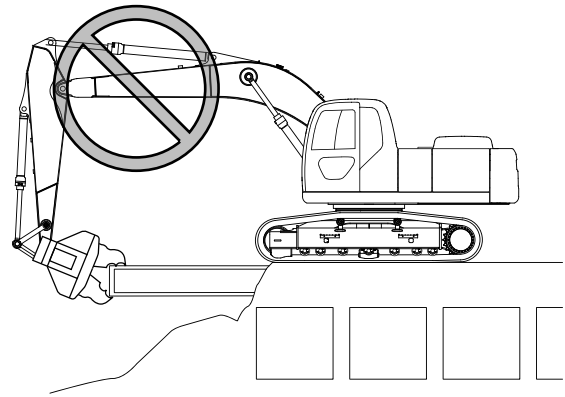
Operating the nibbler (crusher) over the machine can cause demolished structures to fall onto the machine.



[8. OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT]

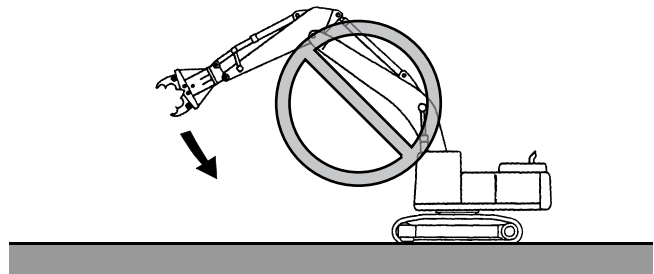
PAY ATTENTION TO GROUND

If an object under the machine is demolished, it causes the ground of the machine to be unstable, resulting in falling of the machine.



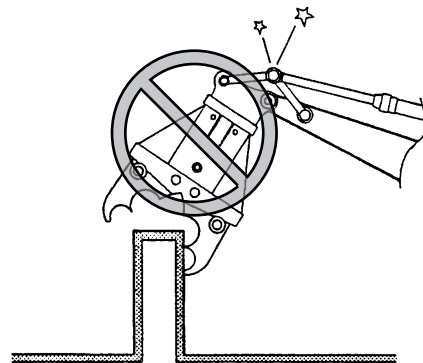
DO NOT OPERATE MACHINE ABRUPTLY

Do not operate or stop the boom, the arm, and the nibbler (crusher) abruptly. It can cause damages to each cylinder and the machine to tip over.



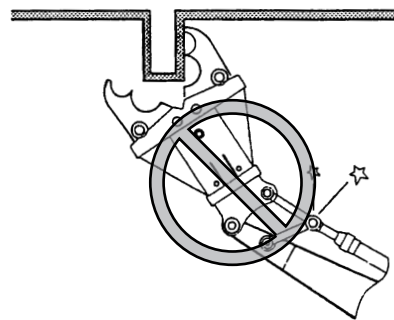
CYLINDER ROD AT STROKE END

Operate the cylinder rod with leaving some space to the stroke end. Operating the hydraulic cylinder at the stroke end during demolition work may cause excessive loads on the boom, the arm, the link portions, and the base machine, resulting in damages.

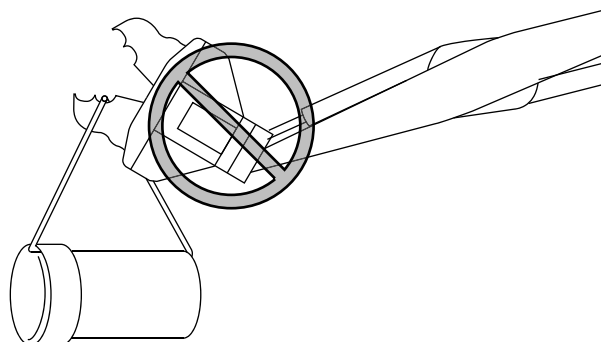


DO NOT HOLD OBJECT OBLIQUELY BY NIBBLER (CRUSHER)

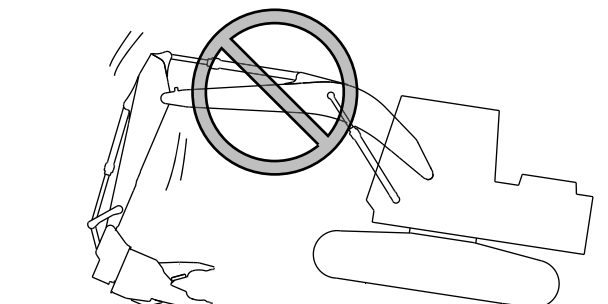
Do not set the machine in a position or posture in which the nibbler (crusher) has to hold an object obliquely. It will cause excessive loads on the arm and the link portions, resulting in damages.

**NEVER PERFORM LIFTING WORK**

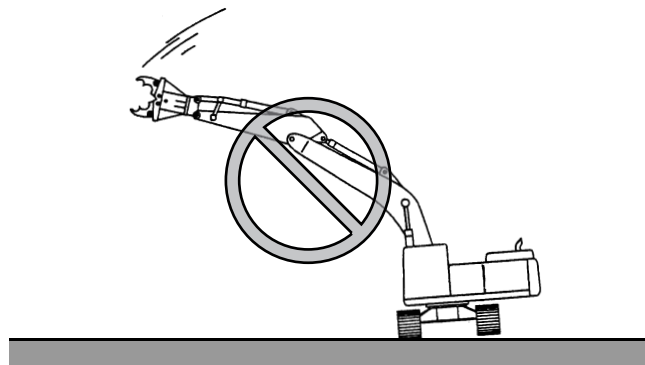
Never use the nibbler (crusher) for lifting work.

**DO NOT LIFT BASE MACHINE**

Do not lift up the base machine by pushing the nibbler (crusher) against the ground. It will cause damages to the boom, the arm, and the nibbler (crusher).

**PAY ATTENTION TO WORKING SIDEWAYS**

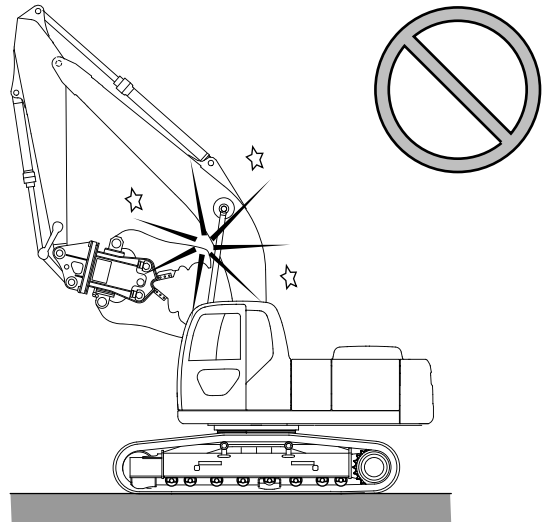
Operating the nibbler (crusher) while the machine is facing sideways may cause the crawlers to be raised off the ground and the machine to become unstable. Always ensure machine is stable before operating.



[8. OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT]

PAY ATTENTION TO INTERFERENCE BETWEEN NIBBLER (CRUSHER) AND BOOM

When the machine is in a position of holding the nibbler (crusher) inward, it may cause interference between the nibbler (crusher) and the boom. Be careful about operation.



8.2 SELECTION OF ATTACHMENT MODE AND SELECTOR VALVE

8.2.1 SELECTION OF ATTACHMENT MODE

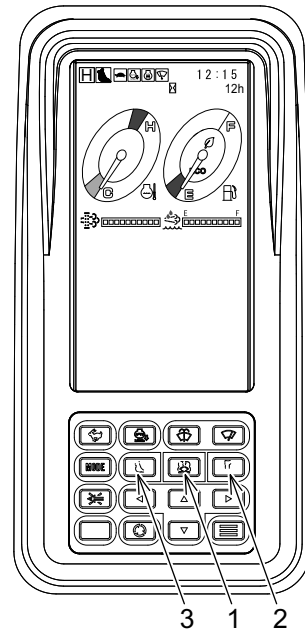
It is necessary to switch the attachment mode according to the attachment being installed.

CAUTION

- When working with a hydraulic breaker or nibbler (crusher) installed, be sure to check that an appropriate attachment mode is selected, by seeing the attachment mode select switch and the multi-display.
- When the attachment mode is inappropriate, use the attachment mode select switch to switch to an appropriate mode so that the attachment to be used matches the attachment mode.
- When the attachment mode is not selected appropriately, it will cause malfunction or failure of the machine.
- When the attachment mode icon of "bucket", "nibbler", or "breaker" flickers, it tells that the attachment mode is not proper.

The attachment mode is always set according to the position of the attachment mode select switch. Before beginning work, make sure that the selected attachment mode is appropriate.

- (1) Nibbler
- (2) Breaker
- (3) Bucket



Attachment Mode	Switch Condition	Multi-Display Indication	Selection of Attachment
Breaker mode		The breaker symbol appears. The work mode of "S", "E", or "H" is shown upper left.	Select this mode when the attachment like a breaker requires the single flow circuit.
Nibbler mode		The nibbler symbol appears. The work mode of "S", "E", or "H" is shown upper left.	Select this mode when using the attachment with a flow and return circuit like a nibbler (crusher).
Bucket mode		The bucket symbol appears. The work mode of "S", "E", or "H" is shown upper left.	Select this mode when digging.

CAUTION

- When performing breaker work, be sure to select the breaker mode. Working in a mode other than the breaker mode causes damage in the hydraulic components and/or breaker.
- Be sure to place the attachment to the ground and ensure safety before switching the attachment mode. In particular, switching to the breaker mode during nibbler (crusher) work may cause a holding load to fall off.
- When the attachment mode icon of "bucket", "nibbler", or "breaker" flickers, it tells that the attachment mode is not proper.

WORK MODE AND HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT

Attachment	Attachment Mode	Hydraulic Circuit	Set Pressure of Overload Relief Valve
In case of single flow circuit attachment, such as breaker	Breaker mode	The return circuit will automatically become a circuit which does not go through the control valve.	Factory setting: 24.5 MPa
In case of flow and return circuit attachment, such as nibbler (crusher)	Nibbler mode	The return circuit will automatically become a circuit which goes through the control valve.	Factory setting: 24.5 MPa

Notice

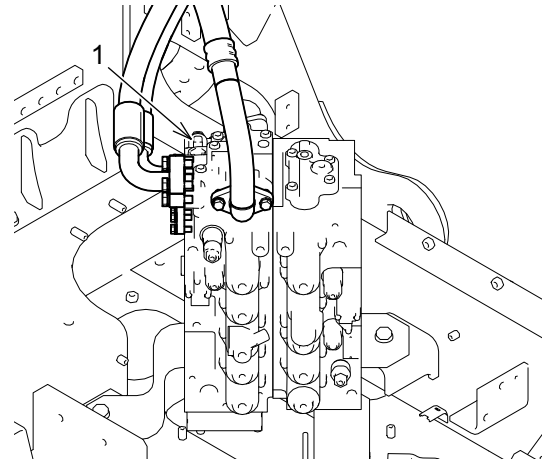
- When the breaker is installed, the return circuit needs to be returned to the return filter directly without going through the control valve. Therefore, make sure to select the breaker mode. Do not use the breaker mode for other than the breaker.
- The set pressure of overload relief valve is set to 24.5 MPa when being shipped from the factory. Depending on the attachment, adjustment may be required. In that case, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.

8.2.2 SWITCHING SELECTOR VALVE

Selector valve (1) switches the flow of hydraulic oil. The selector valve is switched automatically according to the selected attachment mode. Therefore, it is necessary to switch to an appropriate attachment mode according to the attachment being installed.

For switching the attachment mode, see "SELECTION OF ATTACHMENT MODE" in Chapter 8 in the operation & maintenance manual.

**⚠ NIBBLER AND BREAKER SWITCHING FAILURE
PARK AND REPAIR MACHINE**



Attachment Mode	Mechatro Controller Output	Hydraulic Circuit	Mechatro Controller Input	
	Selector Switching Valve	Piping	Selector Switching Valve FB	Selector Detecting Pressure FB
Digging/Nibbler	OFF	Nibbler piping	OFF	OFF
Breaker	ON	Breaker piping	ON	ON

⚠ CAUTION

When the indication of selector valve failure is displayed on the multi-display, the output and input signals of the mechatro controller may be different from the table.

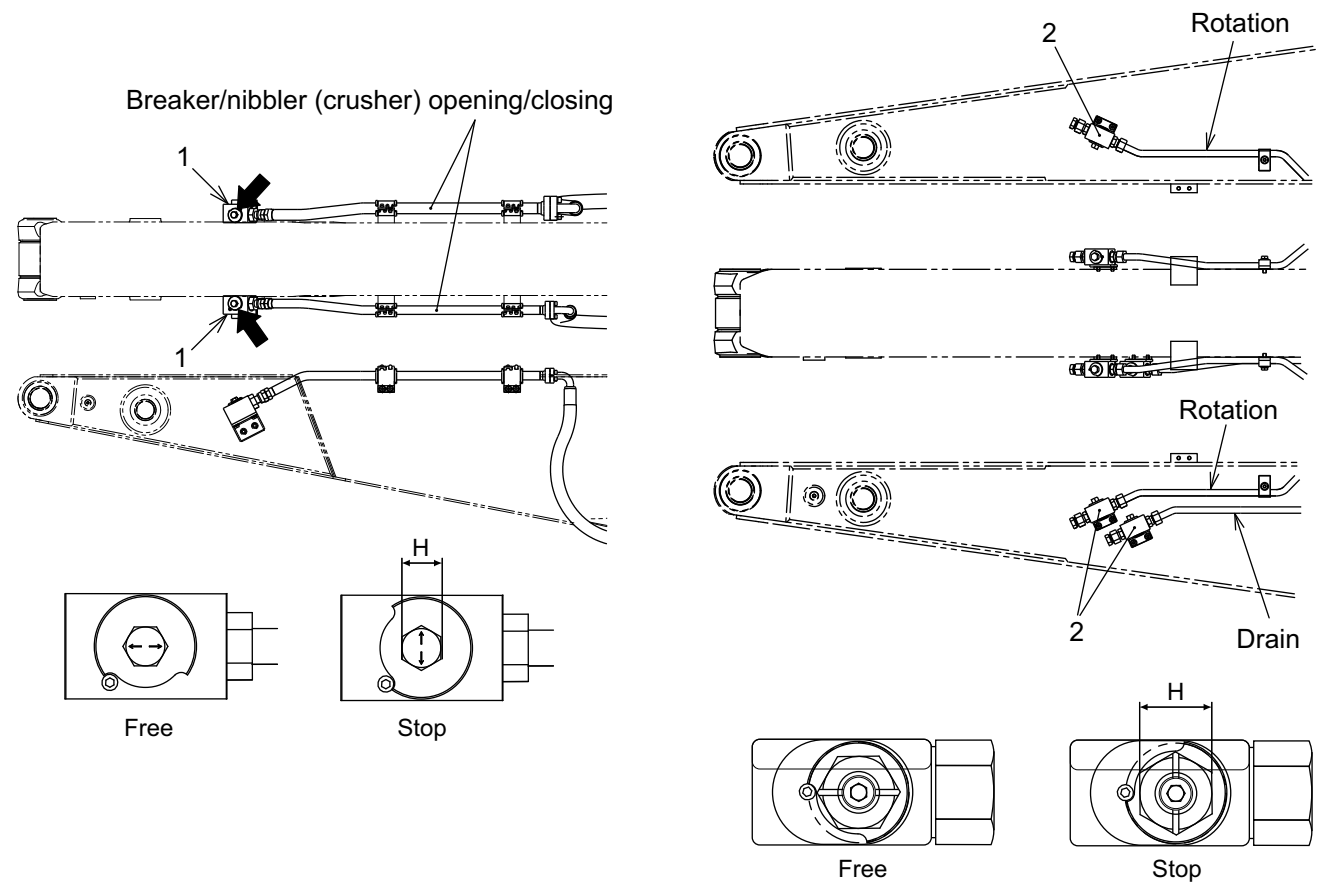
Turn the attachment mode select switch to select the appropriate attachment mode again. When the indication of selector valve failure does not go off even when the appropriate attachment mode is selected, it may be due to an electric failure. Contact your KOELCO authorized dealer.

8.3 SWITCHING STOP VALVE

Stop valves (1), and (2) at the arm top end are used to stop the flow of hydraulic oil. When installing and removing the attachment, the stop valves must be switched to the stop position.

VALVE POSITION

- Free: Hydraulic oil flows
- Stop: Hydraulic oil stops



TOOLS

Hydraulic Circuit	Stop Valve	Wrench Size (H)
Breaker/nibbler opening/closing	1	24 mm
Rotation	2	24 mm
Drain		

8.4 FLOW RATE ADJUSTMENT

Depending on the attachment being installed, the flow rate of service circuit needs to be changed.
For the setting procedure of flow rate, see "USER MENU SETTING" in Chapter 2.

CAUTION

The flow rate specification varies according to each breaker.

Using the breaker at a flow rate over that described in the specification may cause seizure or overheat of the breaker. Make sure to check the specification of each breaker and adjust the flow rate accordingly.

8.5 CONTROL OF PROPORTIONAL HAND CONTROL ROTATION, NIBBLER (CRUSHER), BREAKER



WARNING ATTACHMENT TO BE INSTALLED

The operation methods are explained based on the example of a rotation nibbler (crusher) or breaker installed as a front attachment.

The explanation is based on a case that rotational operation system is connected to the rotation pipings and the opening/closing operation system or breaker operation system is connected to the nibbler (crusher) pipings.

Operation may differ depending on a manufacturer and specification of an attachment installed.

Check the operation manual for the manufacturer specification of the attachment before operation.

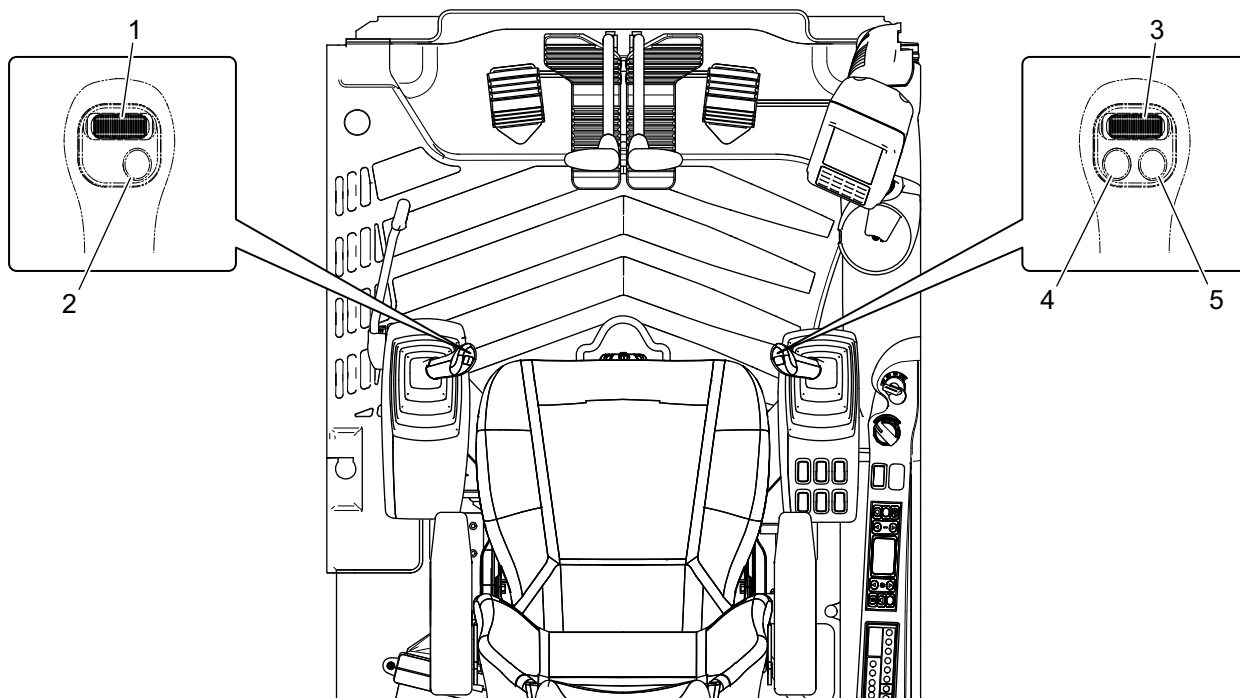


WARNING ABOUT USE OF PROPORTIONAL HAND CONTROL

Read, fully understand and follow all safety precautions and procedures in the operation & maintenance manual before attempting any operation of the machine.

Notice

When using the nibbler or the breaker, see "SELECTION OF ATTACHMENT MODE AND SELECTOR VALVE" in Chapter 8 in the operation & maintenance manual.

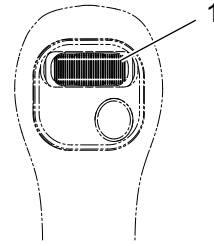


Left Control Lever Switch		Right Control Lever Switch	
1	Rotation control switch	3	Nibbler control switch
2	Horn switch	4	Breaker control switch
		5	Power boost switch

8.5.1 ROTATION HAND CONTROL

Slide the switch (1) that is located on left control lever to actuate the "rotation operation".

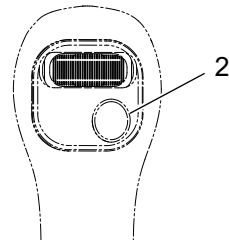
The table below shows that when switch (1) is slid, the left and right, which side of the front attachment the high pressure oil flows when seeing it from the inside of the cab.



Operation procedures	Oil flow
Sliding to the left	R.H
Sliding to the right	L.H

8.5.2 HORN SWITCH

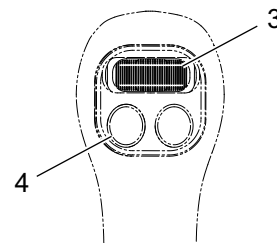
For horn switch (2), see "HORN SWITCH" in Chapter 2 in the operation & maintenance manual.



8.5.3 NIBBLER (CRUSHER) OPERATION

Slide switch (3) that is located on the right control lever to open or close the "nibbler (crusher)".

The table below shows that when switch (3) is slid, the left and right, which side of the front attachment the high pressure oil flows when seeing it from the inside of the cab.



Operation procedures	Oil flow
Sliding to the left	L.H
Sliding to the right	R.H



NIBBLER (CRUSHER) OPERATION

Do not touch breaker switch (button) (4) when operating the nibbler (crusher).



PRECAUTIONS FOR LEAVING THE OPERATOR'S SEAT

Do not leave the machine with the engine running.

Notice

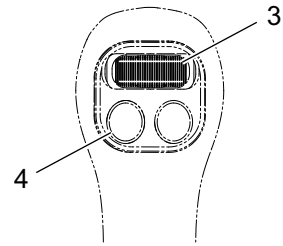
According to the slide distance of the nibbler (crusher) control switch, the hydraulic oil flow rate increases.

8.5.4 BREAKER OPERATION

To operate the breaker, press switch (4).

The table below shows that when switch (4) is slid, the left and right, which side of the front attachment the high pressure oil flows when seeing it from the inside of the cab.

Operate the breaker for 30 seconds, then release the switch.



Operation procedures	Oil flow
Press switch (4)	L.H
Release switch (4)	Stops (does not flow)

Notice

The breaker can be operated by sliding nibbler control switch (3) to the left. However, use breaker control switch (button) (4) as much as possible.



WARNING

PRECAUTIONS FOR LEAVING THE OPERATOR'S SEAT

Do not leave the machine with the engine running.

8.5.5 POWER BOOST SWITCH

For power boost switch (5), see "POWER BOOST SWITCH" in Chapter 2 in the operation & maintenance manual.

8.6 CONTROL OF PROPORTIONAL HAND CONTROL NIBBLER (CRUSHER), BREAKER



WARNING

ATTACHMENT TO BE INSTALLED

The operation methods are explained based on the example of a nibbler (crusher) or breaker installed as a front attachment.

The explanation is based on a case that the opening/closing operation system or breaker operation system is connected to the nibbler (crusher) pipings.

Operation may differ depending on a manufacturer and specification of an attachment installed.

Check the operation manual for the manufacturer specification of the attachment before operation.



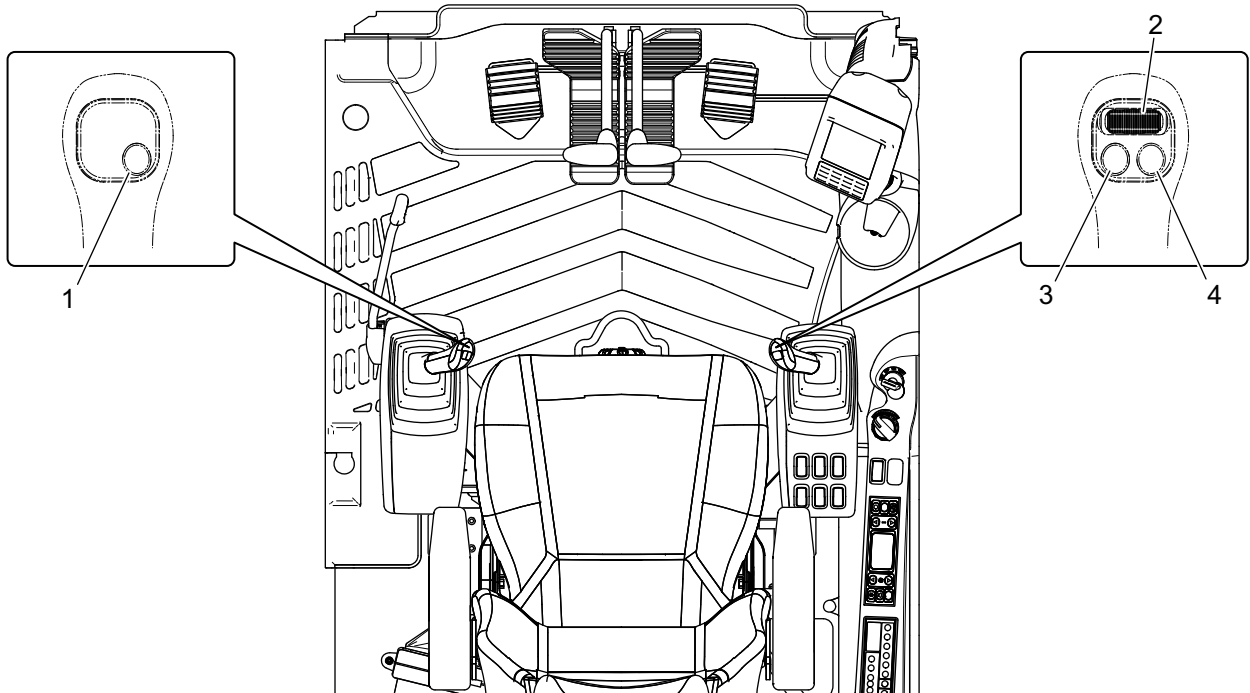
WARNING

ABOUT USE OF PROPORTIONAL HAND CONTROL

Read, fully understand and follow all safety precautions and procedures in this manual before attempting any operation of the machine.

Notice

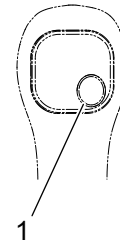
When using the nibbler (crusher) or the breaker, see "SELECTION OF ATTACHMENT MODE AND SELECTOR VALVE" in Chapter 8 in the operation & maintenance manual.



Left Control Lever Switch		Right Control Lever Switch	
1	Horn switch	2	Nibbler control switch
		3	Breaker control switch
		4	Power boost switch

8.6.1 HORN SWITCH

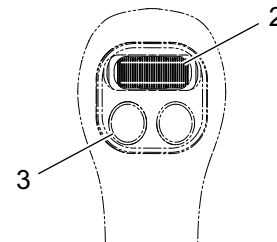
For horn switch (1), see "HORN SWITCH" in Chapter 2 in the operation & maintenance manual.



8.6.2 NIBBLER (CRUSHER) OPERATION

Slide switch (2) that is located on the right control lever to open or close the "nibbler (crusher)".

The table below shows that when switch (2) is slid, the left and right, which side of the front attachment the high pressure oil flows when seeing it from the inside of the cab.



Operation procedures	Oil flow
Sliding to the left	L.H
Sliding to the right	R.H



NIBBLER (CRUSHER) OPERATION

Do not touch breaker switch (button) (3) when operating the nibbler (crusher).



PRECAUTIONS FOR LEAVING THE OPERATOR'S SEAT

Do not leave the machine with the engine running.

Notice

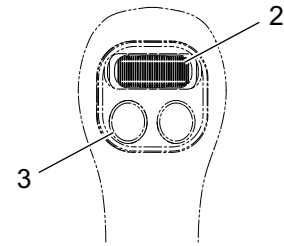
According to the slide distance of the nibbler (crusher) control switch, the hydraulic oil flow rate increases.

8.6.3 BREAKER OPERATION

To operate the breaker, press switch (3).

The table below shows that when switch (3) is slid, the left and right, which side of the front attachment the high pressure oil flows when seeing it from the inside of the cab.

Operate the breaker for 30 seconds, then release the switch.



Operation procedures	Oil flow
Press switch (3)	L.H
Release switch (3)	Stops (does not flow)

Notice

The breaker can be operated by sliding nibbler control switch (2) to the left. However, use breaker control switch (button) (3) as much as possible.



WARNING

PRECAUTIONS FOR LEAVING THE OPERATOR'S SEAT

Do not leave the machine with the engine running.

8.6.4 POWER BOOST SWITCH

For power boost switch (4), see "POWER BOOST SWITCH" in Chapter 2 in the operation & maintenance manual.

8.7 PERIODIC INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE OF NIBBLER (CRUSHER) AND BREAKER

8.7.1 PERIODIC INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE CHART OF NIBBLER (CRUSHER) AND BREAKER

When this machine is used with the hydraulic breaker, the deterioration and contamination of hydraulic oil becomes faster than that of the normal bucket digging work because the machine is used under more severe conditions. Neglecting the maintenance could result in a failure of the base machine, hydraulic breaker, and hydraulic components. To extend the service life of hydraulic components, replace the hydraulic oil and the filter elements, at the following intervals.

Item	Inspection and Maintenance Point	Replacement Interval (Hours)		
		First Time	Second Time	Periodic
Hydraulic oil	Hydraulic oil tank	—	—	1000
Return filter element kit (P/No.LC52V01004R120)	Hydraulic oil tank	50	250	250



Change the hydraulic oil earlier than the specified interval according to the site condition.

8.7.2 REINFORCEMENT OF ATTACHMENT

When this machine is used with a proper breaker or nibbler (crusher), the factory standard arm does not basically require reinforcement. However, when using the machine for a special purpose, contact your KOBELCO authorized dealer.

8.8 PRECAUTIONS FROM BREAKER MANUFACTURERS

When installing the breaker, first fully read the precautions for using the breaker and precautions for each breaker.

Installing an accumulator is sometimes required.

Consult your KOBELCO authorized dealer for details before starting installation.

8.9 MULTI-CONTROL VALVE



SWITCHING THE MULTI-CONTROL VALVE

When switching the multi-control valve, be sure to stop the engine.

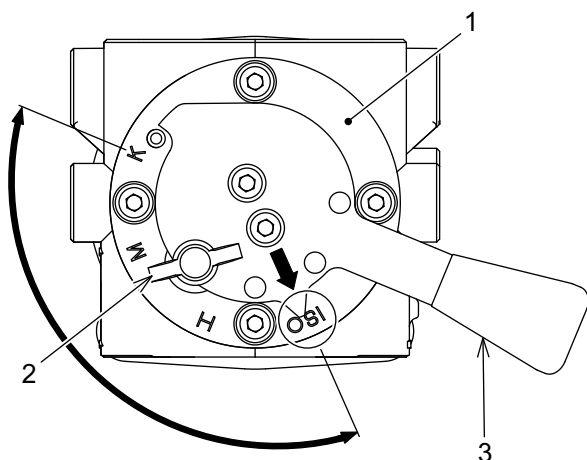


CHECKING THE CONTROL LEVER PATTERN

- If you do not check the control lever pattern before operation, it is dangerous because it may cause an unexpected machine movement. Be sure to check the movement of the machine at each control lever position before operation.
- If you operate the machine while the control pattern label does not match the actual machine movement, it could cause severe personal injury.
- Replace the control pattern label with a one matching the actual machine movement, or change the lever pattern of the rotary multi-control valve to match the control pattern label.

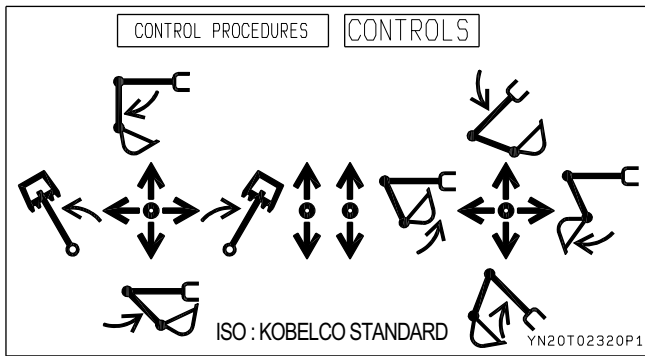


During engine stop, turn the lever to each control pattern position and then be sure to return it to the original control pattern position, at least once in 500 hours.

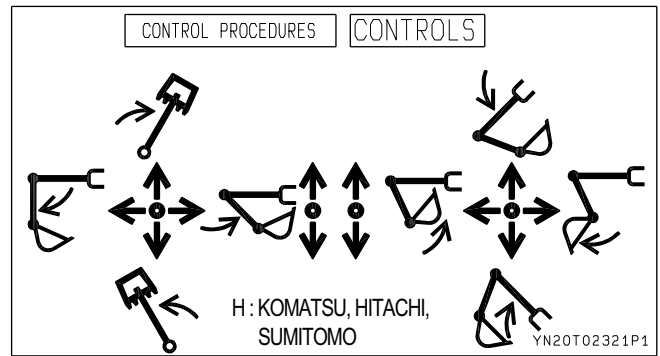


CONTROL PATTERN

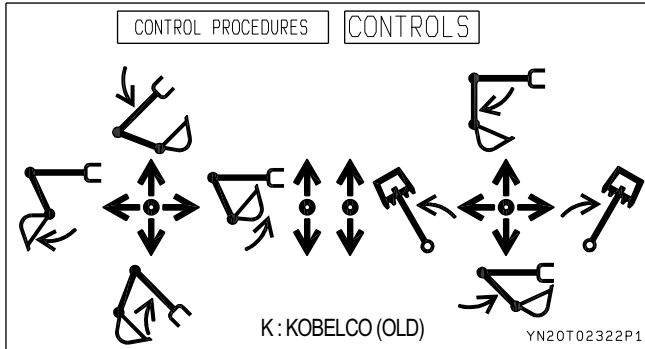
ISO (JIS)....KOBELCO, KAWASAKI, KATOU, IHI
H.....KOMATSU, HITACHI, SUMITOMO
M.....MITSUBISHI
K.....KOBELCO (OLD)



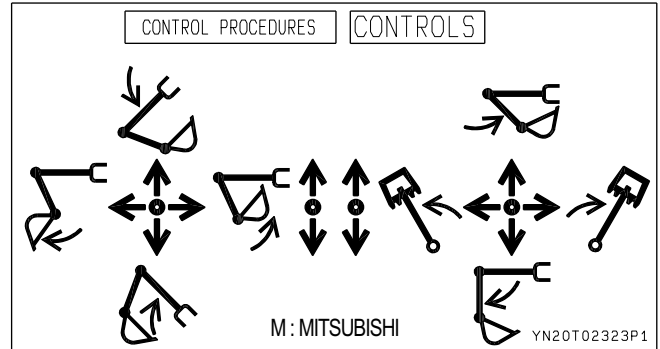
Left swing lever left & right pattern ISO pattern



Left swing lever front & rear pattern H pattern



Right swing lever left & right pattern K pattern



Right swing lever left & right pattern M pattern

The control pattern of this machine can easily be switched between four types (ISO·K·H·M) by the lever of the rotary multi-control valve.

1. Set the machine in the parking position, stop the engine, and move the pilot control shut-off lever to the "LOCKED" position.
2. Use the starter key to open the side door in front of the fuel tank and hold it with the stay.
3. Remove wing bolt (2), and switch lever (3) to the position of the desired control pattern.
4. Tighten wing bolt (2) to fix lever (3) after setting the control pattern. Firmly tighten wing bolt (2) by your fingers without tools.
5. Remove the stay and close the side door. Lock the door with the key.
6. Operate the attachment to make sure that the desired control lever pattern is selected.

8.10 QUICK HITCH



HANDLING QUICK HITCH

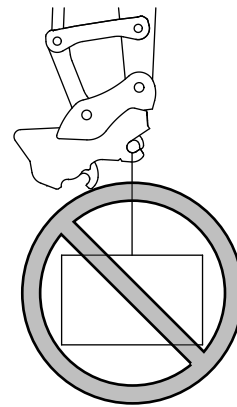
Regarding a quick hitch to be installed, use the quick hitch having an automatic mechanical locking mechanism such as a lock pin that will ensure the lock.

Because when the hydraulic pipes or electric wires are damaged, the hydraulic holding power will be lost, resulting in falling off of the front attachment.

8.10.1 PROHIBITED WORKS

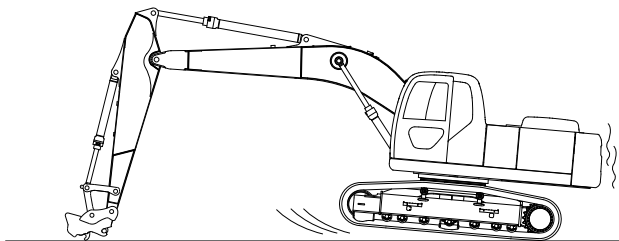
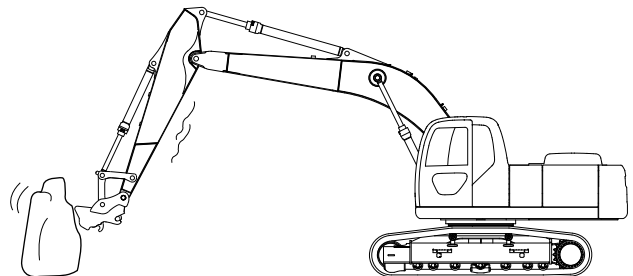
DO NOT PERFORM LIFTING WORK

Never perform any lifting work using the quick hitch. A lifted load may fall and cause serious accidents.



DO NOT WORK WITHOUT FRONT ATTACHMENT

Do not lift a load or the machine, when the front attachment is not installed. It may cause damage to the quick hitch.



DO NOT LIFT OR MOVE PERSONNEL

Never lift or move personnel by using the quick hitch.
The lifted personnel may fall off, causing severe accidents.

**8.10.2 PRECAUTIONS FOR USE****CHECK OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL OF QUICK HITCH**

Before installing the quick hitch, carefully read the operation & maintenance manual of the quick hitch.

CHECK EFFECTS TO OPERATING RANGE AND LIFTING CAPACITIES

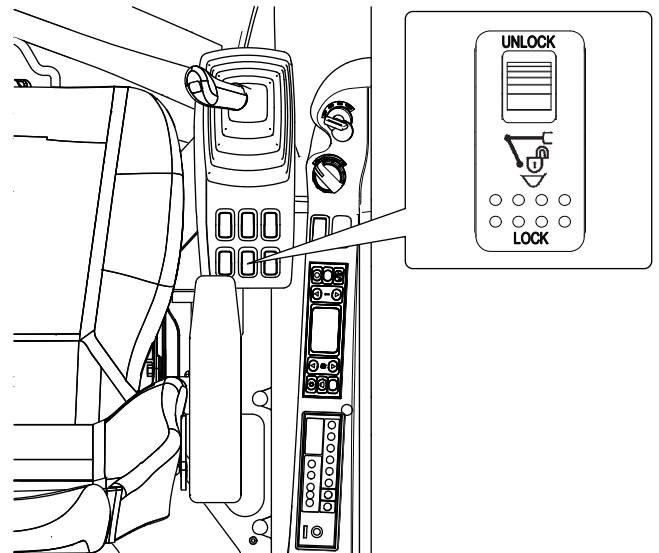
When the quick hitch is installed, the operating range and the lifting capacities will be changed. Also, according to the installed quick hitch or front attachment, it may interfere with the attachment/equipment or the base machine. Before starting work, check the operating range, and make sure that the total loads including the weight of the quick hitch, the front attachment, and a load to be handled do not exceed the maximum load described in the rated lift capacity chart inside the cab.

CHECK QUICK HITCH OPERATION SWITCH

When the front attachment is installed, check that the operation switch is in the neutral position before starting the engine.

(See "QUICK HITCH OPERATION SWITCH" in Chapter 2.)

The table below shows that when the switch is slid left or right, which side of the front attachment the high pressure oil flows when seeing it from the inside of the cab.



Operation procedures	Oil flow
LOCK side	R.H
UNLOCK side	L.H

INSPECTION BEFORE OPERATION

Before operating the machine, check the installation part for engagement and looseness, and the pipes for oil leakage.

8.10.3 REMOVING FRONT ATTACHMENT



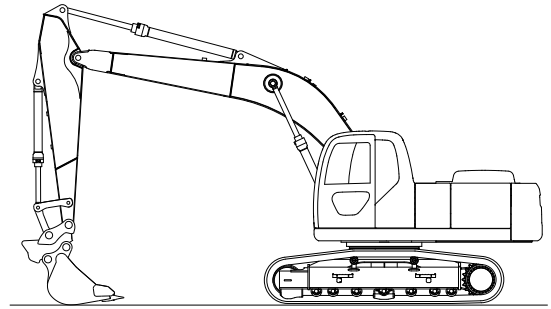
REMOVING FRONT ATTACHMENT

- Work on a stable and level ground to prevent the front attachment from falling down.
- Be sure to lower the front attachment to the ground before operating the quick hitch.

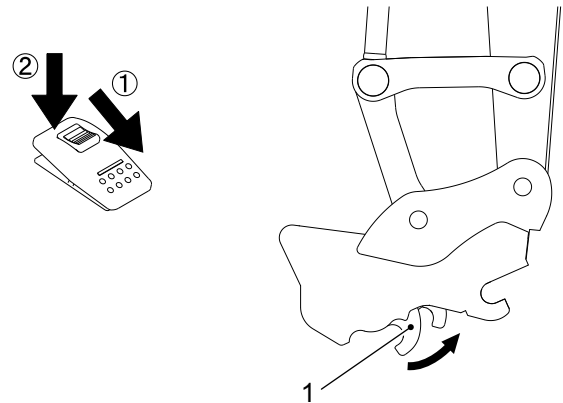
The quick hitch shown in the explanation figures is an example.

Before performing this work, carefully read the operation & maintenance manual of the installed quick hitch.

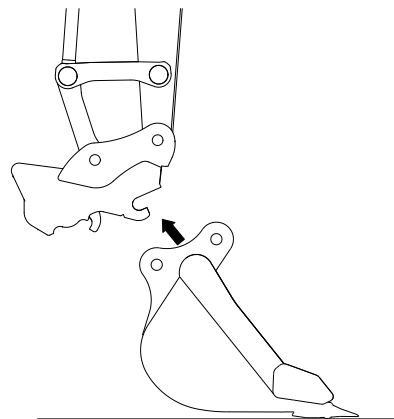
1. Move the machine to a level ground and lower the front attachment to the ground.



2. Push the "UNLOCK" side of the quick hitch operation switch to move movable hook (1) to release the front attachment.
(See "QUICK HITCH OPERATION SWITCH" in Chapter 2.)



3. Move the attachment/equipment of the machine side to remove the front attachment.



Notice

Some kinds of quick hitch may be difficult to remove from the front attachment. In that case, operate the pressure reducing valve to make the removal work easier.

(See "MANUAL SWITCHING OF PRESSURE REDUCING VALVE FOR QUICK HITCH" in Chapter 8.)

8.10.4 INSTALLING FRONT ATTACHMENT



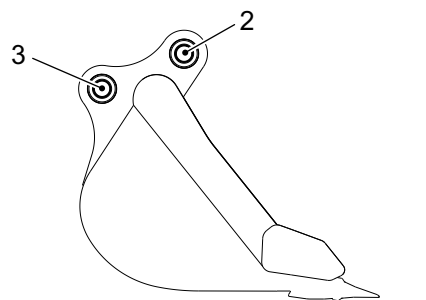
INSTALLING FRONT ATTACHMENT

- Work on a stable and level ground to prevent the front attachment from falling down.
- After installing the front attachment, make sure that the quick hitch holds the front attachment securely.

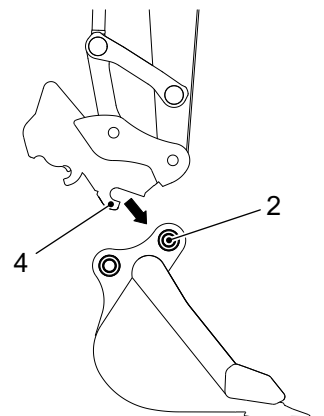
The quick hitch shown in the explanation figures is an example.

Before performing this work, carefully read the operation & maintenance manual of the installed quick hitch.

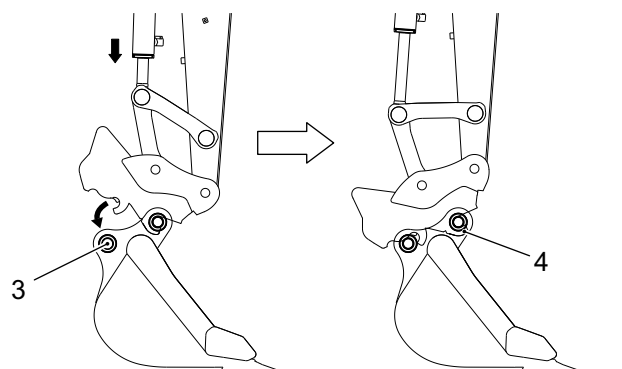
1. Place the front attachment on a level ground.
Attach pins (2) and (3) to the front attachment.



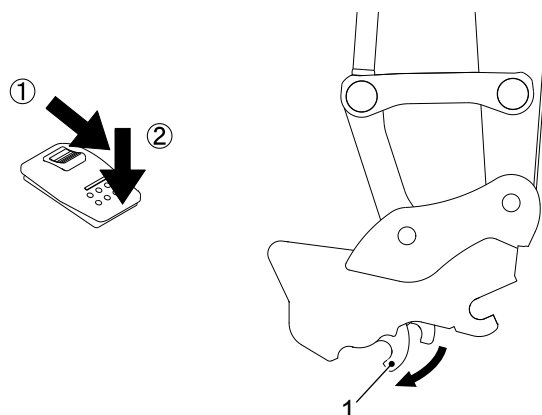
2. Operate the machine to lower the quick hitch and engage fixed hook (4) with pin (2).



3. Extend the bucket cylinder so that the quick hitch comes in contact with pin (3).
At that time, make sure that fixed hook (4) engages with pin (2).



4. Push the "LOCK" side of the quick hitch operation switch to engage movable hook (1) with pin (3).
(See "QUICK HITCH OPERATION SWITCH" in Chapter 2).
5. Check that the front attachment is securely installed, according to the operation & maintenance manual of the installed front attachment.



Notice

If the engagement of the quick hitch cannot be fully checked from the operator's seat, get off the machine and check the engagement at a place close to the quick hitch.

8.10.5 MANUAL SWITCHING OF PRESSURE REDUCING VALVE FOR QUICK HITCH

Some kinds of quick hitch may be difficult to remove from the front attachment.

In that case, switch the pressure reducing valve manually to apply a high pressure on the "UNLOCK" side of the quick hitch to make it easier to remove.

- Turn valve switch knob (1) to direction A to increase the pressure at the unlock side (rod side) of the quick hitch.

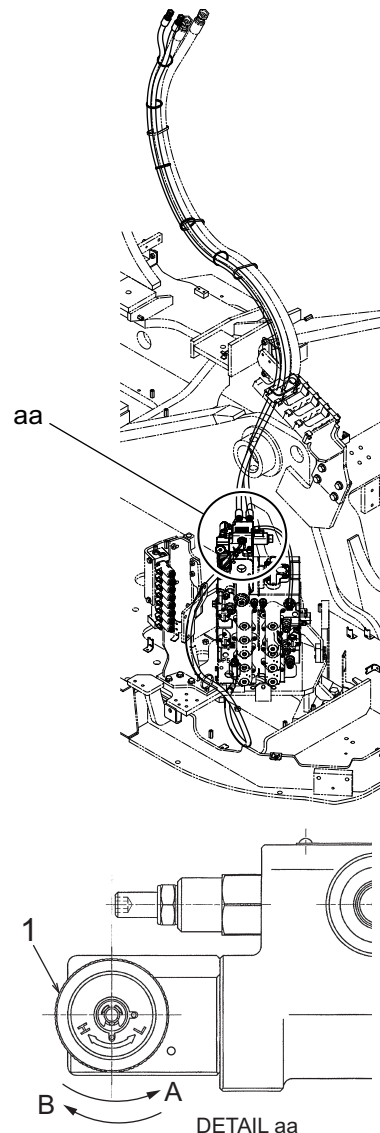
With this condition, remove the front attachment.

(See "REMOVING FRONT ATTACHMENT" in Chapter 8.)

- Except when removing the front attachment, turn switch knob (1) to direction B until it reaches the stop position.

The pressure of the quick hitch at the unlock side (rod side) will be decreased.

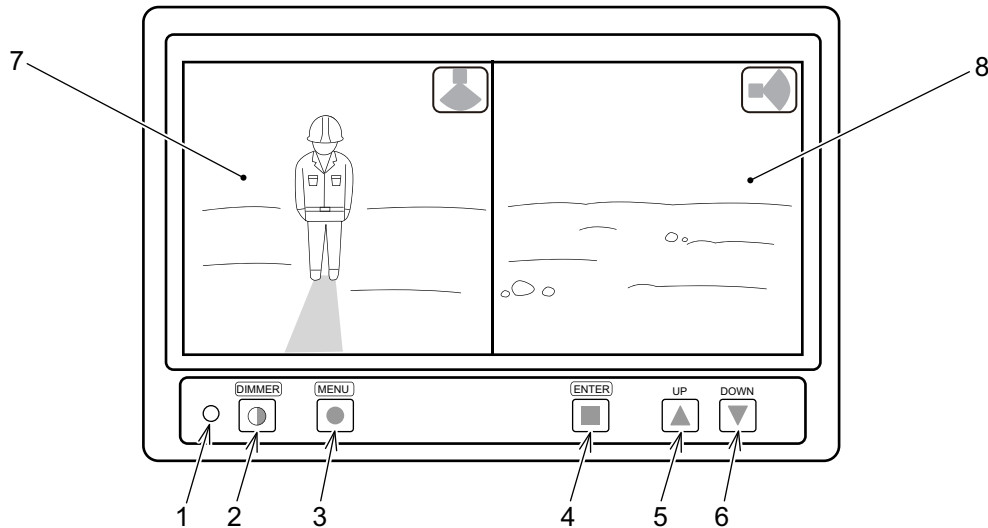
When operating the switch knob, do not stop it halfway but be sure to turn it until it reaches the stop position.



8.11 DUAL MONITOR

The dual monitor is installed at the front right side of the operator's seat.
This is used for monitoring and checking the machine right side during operation.

8.11.1 NAME OF EACH PART



	NAME	NORMAL SCREEN	MENU SCREEN
1	POWER LAMP	-	-
2	DIMMER	Switching of ON and OFF of the dimmer	-
3	MENU	Switching to the menu screen	Switching to the normal screen
4	ENTER	-	Selection and decision of an item
5	UP	-	Selection of an item
6	DOWN	-	Selection of an item
7	REAR SIDE PICTURE	REAR SIDE PICTURE	-
8	RIGHT SIDE PICTURE	RIGHT SIDE PICTURE	-

8.11.2 MENU SCREEN

When the engine is running, press the "MENU" button to enter the menu mode.

The display of the menu mode is basically a blue-background display (pictures of the cameras are not displayed). However, when the picture adjustment item ("PICTURE" menu) is selected, pictures of the cameras are displayed. The color of selected item changes to green.

CAUTION

Do not operate the machine with the menu screen displayed.

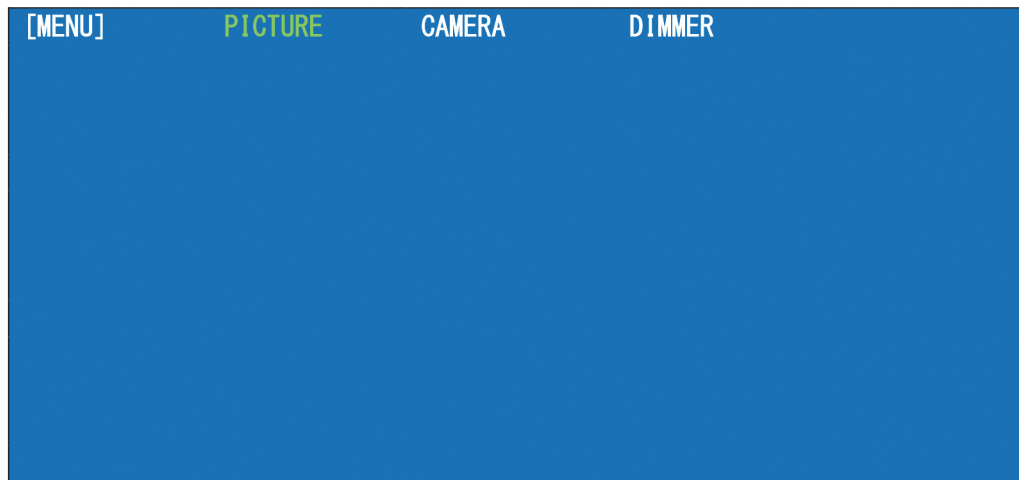
Notice

- If the "MENU" key is pressed, or the switches are not operated for approximately 10 seconds, the menu mode is released and the screen returns to the normal screen.
- Change of setting is reflected each time.
(However, if the ACC power is turned OFF before the menu mode is released, change of setting is not reflected.)

8.11.3 MAIN MENU

This menu is a center of divergence to enter the screen of each setting item.

If the "MENU" key is pressed with this screen displayed, the screen returns to the normal screen.



MENU ITEM	CONTENTS
PICTURE	Adjustment of pictures.
CAMERA	Setting of camera related items.
DIMMER	Setting of dimmer related items.

8.11.4 PICTURE ADJUSTMENT (PICTURE)

Picture related items can be adjusted.

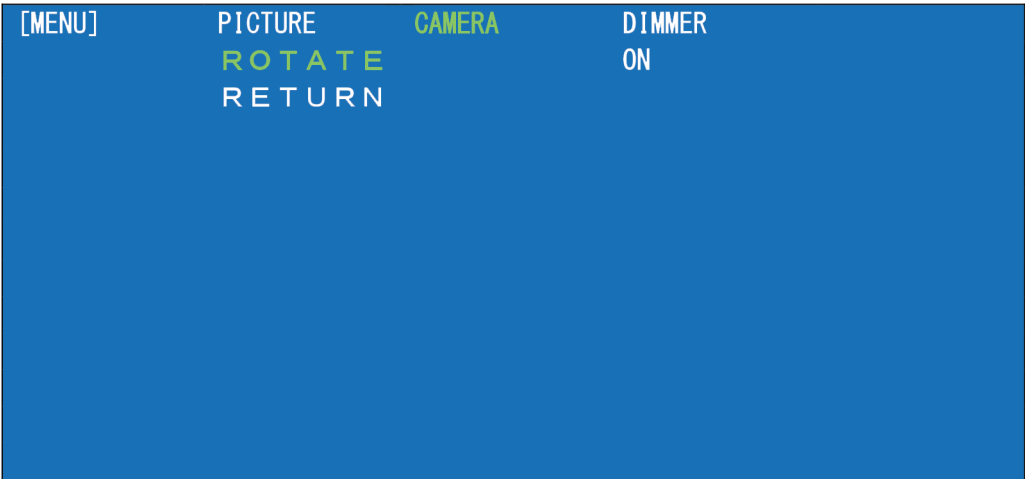


MENU ITEM	CONTENTS	RANGE
BRIGHTNESS	Adjustment of brightness of pictures.	0(=min) to 5(center) to 10(=max)
COLOR	Adjustment of color strength of pictures.	0(=min) to 5(center) to 10(=max)
CONTRAST	Adjustment of contrast of pictures.	0(=min) to 5(center) to 10(=max)
TINT	Adjustment of hue of pictures.	0(=min) to 5(center) to 10(=max)
RETURN	Returning to the main menu.	

- During adjustment, pictures of the cameras are displayed.
- The default values are center values.

8.11.5 SETTING OF CAMERA RELATED ITEMS (CAMERA)

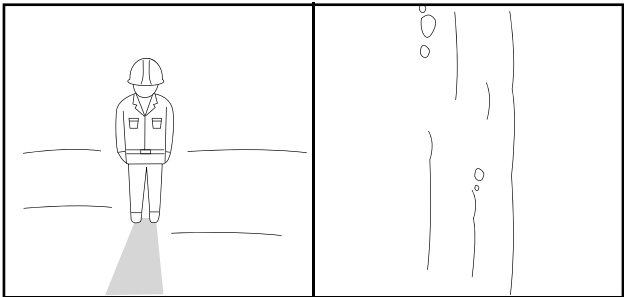
Camera related items can be adjusted.



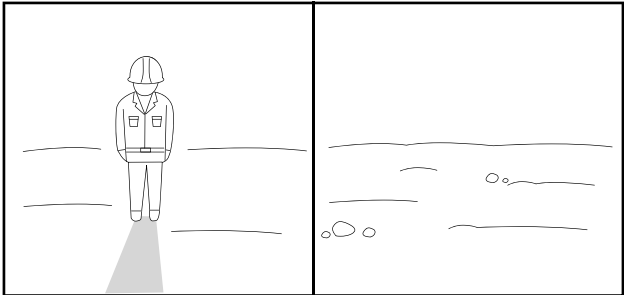
MENU ITEM	CONTENTS	RANGE
ROTATE	Switching of ON and OFF for 90 degrees rotation of the right side picture	ON/OFF Default: ON
RETURN	Returning to the main menu.	

DETAILS OF ROTATE MENU

- Ninety degrees rotation function for the right side picture
- ON and OFF can be switched by the “UP/DOWN” buttons.
- The default setting is ON.



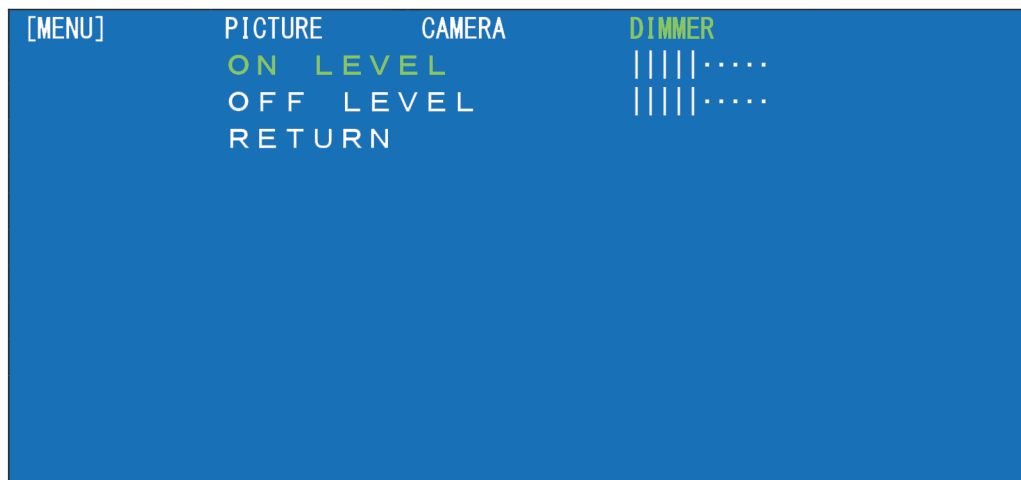
Rotation ON



Rotation OFF

8.11.6 SWITCHING OF DIMMER (LIGHT ADJUSTMENT) (DIMMER)

The level of the dimmer can be switched. The values for when the dimmer is ON (light reduction) and OFF can be set.



MENU ITEM	CONTENTS	RANGE
ON LEVEL	Adjustment of the dimmer level for when the dimmer is ON (light reduction).	0(=min) to 5(center) to 10(=max) Default: 3
OFF LEVEL	Adjustment of the dimmer level for when the dimmer is OFF.	0(=min) to 5(center) to 10(=max) Default: 10
RETURN	Returning to the main menu.	